

## **REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS (BA)**

*These regulations apply to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic year 2007-08 and thereafter.*

*(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)*

### **Definitions**

**A 1<sup>1</sup>** For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BA degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

An 'academic year' comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence normally in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence normally in January and end in June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. A 'summer semester' may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters.

'Major' means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 48 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, in the same disciplinary field, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

'Minor' means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 24 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

'School' means Teaching Department in the Faculty of Arts, i.e. the School of Chinese, School of English, School of Humanities and the School of Modern Languages and Cultures; and units offering courses or programmes outside the Faculty.

### **Admission to the BA degree**

**A 2** To be eligible for admission to the BA degree, candidates shall:

- (a) comply with the General Regulations;
- (b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
- (c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.

### **Length of study**

**A 3** The curriculum for the BA degree shall normally require six semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than three academic years, and shall include any assessment to be held during and/or at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to extend the normal period of study by more than two additional semesters.

<sup>1</sup> This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG 1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

## Selection of courses

**A 4** Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Changes to the selection of courses may be made only during the add/drop period of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the designated add/drop period of the semester shall not normally be considered.

**A 5** Candidates in any semester shall select courses only after obtaining approval from the Heads of the Schools concerned, and the selection shall be subject to compliance with these regulations. Withdrawal from courses beyond the designated add/drop period will not be permitted, except for medical reasons approved by the Board of the Faculty.

## Curriculum requirements

**A 6** To complete the curriculum, candidates shall

- (a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG 3 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula, and
- (b) take not fewer than 180 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

**A 7** Candidates shall not normally take fewer than 30, nor more than 36 credits in each semester, except for the last semester of study or studies continuing beyond the sixth semester, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

**A 8** To complete the first and second semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall follow instruction and satisfy the examiners in 60 credits designated as First Year courses, including:

- (a) four 3-credit courses: Academic English for Arts Students; Chinese Language Enhancement; Information Technology; and one 3-credit course in Science and Technology studies for non-science students;

[Some candidates, e.g. those who are non-Cantonese speaking or have no knowledge of the language, may be exempted from attending the Chinese language enhancement course and permitted to substitute another 3-credit course for it. Candidates may be exempted from attending the Information Technology course on the basis of the results obtained from an aptitude test in IT, or by satisfying the examiners in an approved course which incorporates an IT element as specified in the syllabuses.]

- (b) at least 6 credits each in three out of the following four groupings:  
 Group 1 - Schools of Chinese and English  
 Group 2 - School of Humanities I (History, Linguistics, Philosophy)  
 Group 3 - School of Humanities II (Comparative Literature, Fine Arts, Music)  
 Group 4 - School of Modern Languages and Cultures; and
- (c) if necessary, additional courses to make up a total of 60 credits in the first and second semesters from courses within or outside the Faculty provided that candidates shall not, within their normal study load of 60 credits in the first and second semesters, select more than 30 credits from any one programme within the Faculty, nor shall candidates select more than 12 credits outside the Faculty.

**A 9** To complete the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall normally follow instruction in a selection of courses which must include one major in the Faculty and which

may include a second major or up to two minors, as prescribed in the syllabuses, and shall satisfy the examiners in coursework and in any examinations for at least 120 credits as selected in accordance with Regulation A10.

**A 10** Candidates shall select courses designated as Second Year courses in the third and fourth semesters of the curriculum and courses designated as Third Year courses in the fifth and sixth semesters. Courses designated as Second/Third Year may be taken in the third to the sixth semesters. Candidates who have failed to attain 60 First Year credits by the end of their second semester of study or 60 Second Year credits by the end of their fourth semester shall be allowed to make up the missing credits/courses in the two subsequent semesters of study, subject to the provisions of Regulation A14. Candidates shall take:

- (a) Professional English for Arts Students (3 credits) in either the third or the fourth semester;
- (b) for the purpose of inter-Faculty broadening, at least 12 but not more than 48 credits offered outside the Faculty; and
- (c) the remaining credits in the Faculty.

A candidate's selection of major(s) and minor(s) shall be made only with the approval of the Heads of the Schools concerned, and a candidate's choice shall normally be confined to those combinations which are possible under the published timetable. Candidates who wish to exceed the normal load of 30 credits in any of the third to the sixth semesters shall be allowed to take up to 6 additional credits in a course or courses in the Faculty.

### **Assessment and grades**

**A 11** Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of coursework and/or written examinations. Only satisfactorily completed courses will earn credits. Grades shall be awarded in accordance with UG 5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

**A 12** Courses in which a candidate is given an F grade shall be recorded on the transcript, together with the new grade obtained if the candidate chooses to repeat the failed course. Any failed grade(s) shall be included in calculating the Semester GPA and shall be taken into account for the purposes of determining eligibility for award of the BA degree, honours classification and whether a candidate be discontinued from studies in the Faculty.

**A 13** Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for upgrading purposes.

**A 14** Candidates shall be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty if they have:

- (a) failed to pass at least 18 credits in each of the first and second semesters or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 for the two semesters combined; or
- (b) failed to pass at least 21 credits in the third semester or at least 24 credits in the fourth semester or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 for the two semesters combined; or
- (c) failed to pass at least 21 credits in the fifth semester or at least 24 credits in the sixth semester or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 for the two semesters combined, except when all the requirements stipulated in these regulations for the award of the BA degree are satisfied; or
- (d) achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of each of the subsequent semesters of study; or
- (e) exceeded the maximum period of registration as specified in A3.

**A 15** Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a re-examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate's absence from any examination. Any re-examination shall be part of that academic year's examinations, and the provisions made in these regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

### **Credit transfer**

**A 16** Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, credits may be transferred in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere. Transferred credits may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but shall not be included in the calculation of the Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

### **Degree classification**

**A 17** To be eligible for the award of the BA degree, candidates shall have:

- (a) satisfied the requirements in the UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;
- (b) passed not fewer than 180 credits, comprising 60 credits of First Year courses, 60 credits of Second Year courses and 60 credits of Third Year courses; and
- (c) achieved an overall GPA of 1.00 or above.

**A 18** The BA degree shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its absolute discretion, taking into account the standard attained by candidates in the written examinations and coursework, as well as other relevant factors. Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate's Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

## **REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS (BA)**

*These regulations apply to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic years 2002-03 up to 2006-07.*

*(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)*

### **Definitions**

**A 1<sup>1</sup>** For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BA degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

‘Major’ means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 48 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, in the same disciplinary field, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

<sup>1</sup> This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG 1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

‘Double major’ means two majors, with each such major as defined above, where the two majors concerned may be offered by the same department or by two different departments.

‘Minor’ means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 24 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

An ‘academic year’ comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence normally in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence normally in January and end in June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. A ‘summer semester’ may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters.

### **Admission to the BA degree**

**A 2** To be eligible for admission to the BA degree, candidates shall:

- (a) comply with the General Regulations;
- (b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
- (c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.

### **Length of Study**

**A 3** The curriculum for the BA degree shall require six semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than three academic years, and shall include examinations to be held at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to complete the curriculum in more than **four** academic years, which being the maximum period of registration.

**A 4** The number and length of written examinations shall be as laid down in the syllabuses. Dissertations, field-work, class tests, oral, aural and practical tests may also be prescribed. Coursework assessment shall be taken into account as prescribed in the syllabuses.

### **Selection of courses**

**A 5** Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Changes to the selection of courses may be made only during the first two weeks of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the first two weeks of the semester shall not normally be considered.

**A 6** Candidates in any semester shall select courses only after obtaining approval from the Heads of the Departments concerned, and the selection shall be subject to confirmation by the Board of the Faculty. Withdrawal beyond the two-week deadline will not be permitted, except for medical reasons approved by the Board of the Faculty, and the course concerned will be given a failed grade.

### **Curriculum requirements**

**A 7** To complete the curriculum, candidates shall

- (a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG 3 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula, and

- (b) take not fewer than 180 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

**A 8** Candidates shall not normally take fewer than 30, nor more than 36 credits in each semester, except for the last semester of study or studies continuing beyond the sixth semester, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

**A 9** To complete the first and second semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall follow instruction and satisfy the examiners in 60 credits designated as First Year or Level 100 courses, including:

- (a) four 3-credit courses: Academic English for Arts Students; Chinese Language Enhancement; Information Technology; and one 3-credit course in Science and Technology studies for non-science students;

[Some candidates, e.g. those who are non-Cantonese speaking or have no knowledge of the language, may be exempted from attending the Chinese language enhancement course and permitted to substitute another 3-credit course for it. Candidates may be exempted from attending the Information Technology course on the basis of the results obtained from an aptitude test in IT, or by satisfying the examiners in an approved course which incorporates an IT element as specified in the syllabuses.]

- (b) at least 6 credits from a single department/programme/centre in each of any three out of the following four groupings:

Group 1 - American Studies, Chinese, English, European Studies, Japanese Studies, Language and Communication, Language Centre

Group 2 - Geography, History

Group 3 - Comparative Literature, Linguistics, Philosophy

Group 4 - Fine Arts, Music; and

- (c) if necessary, additional courses to make up a total of 60 credits in the first and second semesters from:
  - (i) any departments/programmes/centre listed in (b) above; and/or
  - (ii) departments/schools/centres/programmes outside the Faculty;

provided that candidates shall not, within their normal study load of 60 credits in the first and second semesters, select more than 30 credits from any one department/programme/centre listed in (b) above, nor shall candidates select more than 12 credits from those offered by departments/schools/centres/programmes outside the Faculty.

Candidates who are willing to take an additional study load shall be allowed to take up to 6 credits over and above the normal load of 30 credits in each of the first and second semesters.

**A 10** To complete the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall normally follow instruction in a selection of courses which must include one major and which may include a second major or up to two minors, with the combination of courses for each major and minor being as prescribed in the syllabuses, and shall satisfy the examiners in coursework and in any examinations for 120 credits as selected in accordance with Regulation A11.

**A 11** Candidates shall select courses designated as Second Year or Level 200 courses in the third and fourth semesters of the curriculum and shall select courses designated as Third Year or Level 300 courses in the fifth and sixth semesters, except that candidates who have failed to attain 60 First Year or Level 100 credits by the end of their second semester of study or failed to attain 60 Second Year or Level 200 credits by the end of their fourth semester of study shall be allowed to make up the missing

credits by including the outstanding credits in the two subsequent semesters of study, subject to the provisions of Regulation A16. Courses designated as Second/Third Year or Level 200/300 may be taken in the third to the sixth semesters. Each semester shall normally consist of 30 credits and shall include:

- (a) Professional English for Arts Students (3 credits) to be taken in either the third or the fourth semester; and 12 credits offered outside the Faculty of Arts for the purpose of inter-Faculty broadening; and

either

- (b) other credits, of which at least 48 shall be in a major, together with any oral examination required by the examiners, in any one of the following departments/centre/programmes:

- American Studies
- Chinese
- Comparative Literature
- English
- European Studies
- Fine Arts
- Geography
- History
- Japanese Studies
- Language and Communication
- Language Centre
- Linguistics
- Music
- Philosophy;

or

- (c) other credits, of which at least 48 shall be in a major taken in one of the departments/programmes listed in (b) above, together with any oral examination required by the examiners, in combinations of courses offered by the following departments/centres/school/programmes teaching in the Faculty of Arts:

- American Studies
- Buddhist Studies
- Chinese
- Comparative Literature
- Computer Science
- Earth Sciences
- Economics and Finance
- English
- European Studies
- Fine Arts
- Geography
- History
- Japanese Studies
- Journalism and Media Studies Centre
- Language and Communication
- Language Centre
- Linguistics

- Mathematics
- Music
- Philosophy
- Physics
- Politics and Public Administration
- Psychology
- Social Work and Social Administration
- Sociology
- Statistics and Actuarial Science

A candidate's selection of major(s), minor(s) and of cross-departmental course combinations shall be made only with the approval of the Heads of the Departments/Centre/School concerned, and a candidate's choice shall normally be confined to those combinations which are possible under the published timetable. Candidates shall not be permitted to take, within their normal study load of 120 credits, more than 48 credits outside the Faculty. Candidates who wish to exceed the normal load of 30 credits in any of the third to the sixth semesters shall be allowed to take up to 6 additional credits in a course or courses from the departments/programmes listed in Regulation A9(b) in the major.

### **Assessment and grades**

**A 12** Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of: coursework, written examinations or tests, continuous assessment of class performance, field work, research or project reports, or in any other manner as specified in the syllabuses. Only those satisfactorily completed courses will earn credits. Grades shall be awarded in accordance with UG 5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

**A 13** Written examinations or tests shall normally be held at the end of the semester in which it is taught unless otherwise provided for in the syllabuses. Candidates may be required to sit written examinations or tests for more than one course on any particular date.

**A 14** Courses in which a candidate is given an F grade shall be recorded on the transcript, together with the new grade obtained if the candidate chooses to repeat the failed course. Any failed grade(s) shall be included in calculating the Semester GPA and shall be taken into account for the purposes of determining eligibility for award of the BA degree, honours classification and whether a candidate be discontinued from studies in the Faculty.

**A 15** Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for upgrading purposes.

**A 16** Candidates shall be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty if they have:

- (a) failed to pass at least 18 credits in each of the first and second semesters or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of the second semester; or
- (b) failed to pass at least 21 credits in the third semester and at least 24 credits in the fourth semester or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of the fourth semester; or
- (c) failed to pass at least 21 credits in the fifth semester and at least 24 credits in the sixth semester or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of the sixth semester, except when all the requirements stipulated in these regulations for the award of the BA degree are satisfied; or
- (d) achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of each of the subsequent semesters of study; or
- (e) exceeded the maximum period of registration.



**A 17** Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present for any paper of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a re-examination in the paper to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate's absence from any examination. Any re-examination shall be part of that academic year's examinations, and the provisions made in these regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

---

### **Advanced standing**

**A 18** Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere in accordance with UG 2 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. Advanced credits granted may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but shall not be included in the calculation of the Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

---

### **Degree classification**

**A 19** To be eligible for the award of the BA degree, candidates shall have:

- (a) satisfied the requirements in the UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;
- (b) passed not fewer than 180 credits, comprising 60 credits of First Year or Level 100 courses, 60 credits of Second Year or Level 200 courses and 60 credits of Third Year or Level 300 courses; and
- (c) achieved a GPA of 1.00 or above.

**A 20** The BA degree shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its absolute discretion, taking into account the standard attained by candidates in the written examinations and in coursework, as well as other relevant factors. Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate's Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

---

## **SYLLABUSES FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS**

- (N.B. 1. These syllabuses should be read in conjunction with the BA degree regulations.  
2. On application to the various departments undergraduates may obtain further details of courses and lists of books recommended for further study.)

### **CHINESE LANGUAGE ENHANCEMENT**

#### **CART1001. Practical Chinese language course for Arts students (3 credits)**

1. Practical Chinese Writing Skills 實用中文寫作技巧 (3 lectures)
  - a. *Pai-hua* or literary Chinese
  - b. some characteristics of the Chinese language and communication skills in Chinese 漢語特性和語文運用
  - c. special characteristics of the language of practical Chinese 實用中文的寫作特點

2. Chinese Characters 漢字 (3 lectures)
    - a. standardized form 規範漢字
    - b. simplified Chinese characters 簡化字
    - c. different scripts 異體字
  3. Letter-writing 書信 (3 lectures)
    - a. characteristics of personal, business and official letters  
私人、事務、公務信件的特點
    - b. business letters for Arts students: objectives and techniques  
事務信件的撰寫技巧 (2 lectures)
  4. Office Documents 辦公室文書 (3 lectures)
    - a. notices and announcements 啟事與通告
    - b. proposals 建議書
    - c. minutes and reports 會議文書
  5. Chinese for Special Purposes (Arts) 專業中文 (6 lectures)
    - a. Chinese culture: an introduction for Arts students 中國文化簡介
    - b. an introduction of contemporary Chinese fiction  
當代中國小說導讀 (2 lectures)
    - c. target-oriented writing: objectives and strategies 目標為本寫作 (2 lectures)
    - d. the art of persuasion 說服性文章的撰寫技巧
    - e. the art of rhetoric 修辭技巧
  6. Public Speaking 演說 (2 lectures)
- This course will be offered in the second semester.  
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.
- 

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE ENHANCEMENT

### ECEN1201. Academic English for Arts students (3 credits)

The purpose of this course is to prepare Arts students to pursue their university studies successfully through the medium of English. The primary focus of the course is on writing well-organized and well-written academic essays with appropriate citation and referencing. Students will also learn how to participate fluently and confidently in small group discussions and take greater responsibility for improving their English language skills both in and beyond the classroom. Use of information technology is an integral part of the course.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### ECEN2202. Professional English for Arts students (3 credits)

This course aims to prepare students to present themselves in a professional manner in English in the workplace environment in Hong Kong. Students will develop oral skills essential to business communication, as used in telephoning, interviews and oral presentations. They will also learn and practice principles of effective written communication by writing, for example, a resume and letters. Throughout the course, students will explore and experience the use of English in the workplace through direct contact with employers. Use of information technology is an integral part of the course.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

## MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF ARTS

### SCHOOL OF CHINESE

The mission of the School of Chinese is to promote the understanding of Chinese language, literature and history; to further the ability of the students in the use of the Chinese language; to enhance the students' competence in translation between Chinese and English; and to advance the study of the development of the Chinese culture and strengthen its place in the modern world.

The degree courses in the School of Chinese are normally taught in Chinese. Course design is based on the assumption that the students have attained facility in the use of the Chinese language before entering the University, and that they have also acquired sufficient mastery of the English language to enable them to use freely references and relevant works published in English. Provision may be made from time to time for elective courses on various aspects of the Chinese culture.

The School offers four majors and four minors in the second and third years. The four majors are as follows:

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature:** Group A.
- (ii) **Chinese History and Culture:** Group B.
- (iii) **Translation:** Group C (please refer to Group C for other requirements).
- (iv) **Chinese Studies:** Groups A and B.

Students are required to take not less than a total of 48 credits of second and third year courses in the specified group(s), and to meet other specified requirements, if any. For the Chinese History and Culture major, students may take one or more of the following: HIST2003, HIST2004 and HIST2018 to fulfil the credit requirements.

Students who intend to major in Chinese Language and Literature or in Translation are required to take the following first year courses as prerequisites unless the Head of School approves otherwise:

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature majors:** CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language and a total of not less than 6 credits of other first year courses in Group A.
- (ii) **Translation majors:** CHIN1311. Introduction to translation and CHIN1312. Language studies for translation I.

There are no first-year prerequisites for the majors in Chinese History and Culture and Chinese Studies.

The four minors are as follows:

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature:** Group A.
- (ii) **Chinese History and Culture:** Group B.
- (iii) **Translation:** limited to List 2 of Group C.
- (iv) **Chinese Studies:** Groups A and B.

Students are required to take not less than 24 credits of second and third year courses in the specified group(s).

There are no first-year prerequisites for the minors.

Not all the courses listed below will be offered every year. Students should refer to the School undergraduate handbook, published yearly and usually in the summer, for the courses on offer in the next academic year.

## GROUP A: CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

### First Year Courses

#### **CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the various aspects of the Chinese language: etymology, phonology, lexicology and grammar, with special reference to the cultural context and its developments in the twentieth century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

#### **CHIN1102. An introduction to standard works in classical Chinese literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A fundamental study of standard works and selected writings in the classical Chinese literature.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

#### **CHIN1103. An introduction to standard works in modern Chinese literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A fundamental study of standard works and selected writings in the modern and contemporary Chinese literature.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

#### **CHIN1105. History of Chinese literature: a general survey (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at a study of the general characteristics and the development of Chinese literature from the pre-Qin period to the nineteenth century. This course is suitable for students without A-level Chinese literature attainments.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN1106. Poetry and the couplet: composition and appreciation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to enhance students' ability to appreciate and to write *shi* and *ci* poems as well as couplets.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN1108. Contrastive phonology of Putonghua and Cantonese (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to help students gain knowledge of the phonological differences and correspondences between Putonghua and Cantonese and thus improve students' language abilities in spoken Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN1109. An Introduction to Chinese women's literature (3 Credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese women's literature in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known writers. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese women's literature from the Han period to contemporary China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1110. Creative writing I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to foster interest in the great works of modern Chinese literature and to help students develop and sharpen their writing skills. It examines how writers and readers interact with literary works in general and considers how meanings and effects are generated in prose and fiction in particular.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1111. Creative writing II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA Students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A continuation of CHIN1110, this course aims to foster interest in the great works of modern Chinese literature and to help students develop and sharpen their writing skills. It examines how writers and readers interact with literary works in general and considers how meanings and effects are generated in modern poems and free verse in particular.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second and Third Year Courses**

**CHIN2121. Prose up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese prose in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese prose from the pre-Qin period to the end of the Qing period.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2122. Prose: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the prose of one or two of the following: Han Yu, Liu Zongyuan, Ouyang Xiu, Wang Anshi and Su Shi. Students taking this course are expected to demonstrate a sound knowledge of the prose works covered and a general ability to describe and analyse prose styles.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2123. Shi poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese *shi* poetry in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese *shi* poetry from earliest times to the nineteenth century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**CHIN2124. Shi poetry: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the *shi* poetry of one or two of the following: Cao Zhi, Tao Qian, Xie Lingyun, Wang Wei, Li Bai, Du Fu, Han Yu, Li Shangyin, Su Shi, and Huang Tingjian. Students taking this course are expected to show in the examination a sound knowledge of the *shi* poetry covered and a general ability to describe and analyse poetic styles.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2125. Ci poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A general survey of the *ci* poetry from its beginning in the Tang period to the Qing period, with special emphasis on the Song period, which is considered the golden age in the history of this literary genre. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development of the *ci* poetry from the eighth century to the nineteenth century. Its various forms and styles are examined through specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2126. Ci poetry: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the *ci* poetry of one or two of the following: Su Shi, Zhou Bangyan, Xin Qiji and Jiang Kui - the Four Great Masters of the *ci* poetry of the Song period. The course will consider the individual achievements and influences of the poets; their contemporaries will also be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2127. Classical Chinese fiction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of classical Chinese fiction through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative compositions. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of classical Chinese fiction from the Tang to the Qing period.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2128. Xiqu of the Yuan and Ming periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of *xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative compositions. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of *xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2129. Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the trends of literary thought in China from 1917 to 1949 and how they affected modern Chinese poetry, essays and novels.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2130. Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of modern Chinese fiction from 1917 to 1949. Attention will be centered on selected works of representative authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2131. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the trends of literary thought in the Mainland since 1949 and how they have affected poetry, essays and novels.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2132. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese fiction in the Mainland since 1949. Attention will be centered on selected works of representative authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2133. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese literature in Taiwan since 1949.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2134. Prescribed texts for detailed study I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or more of the following, engaging various techniques of scholarship and criticism:

- (i) Shijing
- (ii) Chuci
- (iii) Zhaoming wenxuan

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2135. Prescribed texts for detailed study II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or both of the following, engaging various techniques of scholarship and criticism:

- (i) Zuo zhuan
- (ii) Zhuangzi

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2136. Classical Chinese literary criticism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course includes a general survey of classical Chinese literary criticism with special reference to the *Wenxin diaolong*.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**CHIN2138. Chinese etymology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the essential features of the Chinese characters, principles underlying their construction, and the process of evolution behind them.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2139. Chinese Phonology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course includes an introduction to general phonetics, a survey of the history of Chinese phonology, and an introduction to 'rhyme books' and 'rhyme tables'.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the structure, the general characteristics and the development of the modern Chinese language; two or more of the following topics will be covered:

- (i) Phonology
- (ii) Lexicology and semantics
- (iii) Philology

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the structure, the general characteristics and the development of the modern Chinese language; two or more of the following topics will be covered:

- (i) Grammar
- (ii) Rhetoric
- (iii) Logic

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the general characteristics and the development of Functional Chinese with special reference to the use of language in Hong Kong. Students taking this course are expected to acquire sufficient language skills for general communication purposes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GROUP B: CHINESE HISTORY AND CULTURE****First Year Courses****CHIN1201. Topical studies of Chinese history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines some of the major topics in Chinese political, social, economic and institutional history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**CHIN1202. An introduction to the study of Chinese history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A foundation course in the development of Chinese history and historiography.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1203. Chinese history of the twentieth century (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A brief survey of the transformation and reformation of China since 1900.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1204. Chinese culture in the twentieth century (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the major cultural changes since 1900.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1205. Chinese history: a general survey (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the Chinese political, social, and economic history from the early times to the present century. The course is especially suitable for students from non-Arts backgrounds.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1206. An introduction to Chinese thought (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A broad overview of the teachings of Confucianism, Daoism and Buddhism, with a view to introducing students to the foundations of Chinese thought. This course is suitable for both students with or without Arts backgrounds.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1207. Traditional Chinese culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the general characteristics of traditional Chinese culture. The course is especially suitable for students from non-Arts backgrounds.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1208. Ruling strategies and governance culture in Chinese history: a general survey (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the ruling methods and the governing strategies employed by rulers in different periods of Chinese history. This course is especially suitable for students from non-Arts backgrounds.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN1209. An introduction to Chinese religions (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the main Chinese religious traditions and practices, and their impacts on the Chinese society and culture. This course is suitable for students with or without Arts background.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second Year and Third Year Courses****CHIN2221. History of the Qin and Han Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the third century B.C. to the third century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2222. History of the Wei, Jin and the Northern-and-Southern Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the third century to the sixth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2223. History of the Sui and Tang Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the sixth century to the tenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2224. History of the Song and Yuan Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the tenth century to the fourteenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2225. History of the Ming Period (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the fourteenth century to the seventeenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2226. History of the Qing Period (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the seventeenth century to the twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2231. Religious Daoism and popular religions in China (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course gives an overview of the development of religious Daoism and Chinese popular religions.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2233. History of the Chinese legal system (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main features and development of the Chinese legal system from the early times to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2234. History of Chinese political institutions (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main features and the development of Chinese political institutions from the early times to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2235. Sources and methodology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course intends to provide a thorough training in research methodology related to the study of Chinese history. The ideas of noted ancient and contemporary Chinese historians will be drawn on. Particular emphasis is placed on the use of reference works and information search through internet.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2241. History of Chinese civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with Chinese civilization in general including ethnic cultures and problems in pre-twentieth century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2243. History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to give an in-depth investigation of Chinese scientific thought and culture from the pre-Qin period to the early twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2244. History of *Guanxue* and *Sixue* (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the development of educational theories and institutions in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2245. History of Chinese examination system (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the theories and means of selecting men of talent, as well as the development of the examination system in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2246. Historical writings: texts and styles (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or more of the following:

- (i) *Shiji*.
- (ii) *Hanshu*.
- (iii) *Hou Hanshu*.
- (iv) *Sanguozhi*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2247. Local histories (*fangzhi*) and genealogical records (*zupu*) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the general characteristics and the compilation problems of local histories (*fangzhi*) and genealogical records (*zupu*) in pre-twentieth century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2251. Chinese philosophy I: Confucianism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the major philosophical texts and ideas of the Confucian tradition.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2252. Chinese philosophy II: Daoism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the major philosophical texts and ideas of the Daoist tradition.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2253. Chinese philosophy III: Buddhism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main streams of Indian Buddhist thought and their development in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the history of Christianity in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2255. Chinese intellectual history (Part I) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the main intellectual trends in China from the Qin-Han to the Sui-Tang period.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2256. Chinese intellectual history (Part II) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the main intellectual trends in China from the Song period to the Qing period.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2257. The development of Confucianism in late imperial China (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the development of Confucianism in China from late fourteenth century to early twentieth century.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2258. The mentality of literati in Ming-Qing transition (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the milieu of the cataclysmic change of Heaven's Mandate in mid-seventeenth-century China and literati's feelings and responses to the change.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2259. Historical writing and historiography in traditional China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores some important issues of historical writing and historiography in traditional China with reference to the development of historical writing, the organization of historiography institutes, and the influence of emperors on historiography.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2261. Buddha and Bodhisattva worship in Chinese Buddhism (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The worship of buddhas and bodhisattvas is a central feature of Mahayana Buddhism, and a pivotal factor in the formation and development of Chinese Buddhism. The course examines the origin of the practice, its transformation in China, and its impact on Chinese religious thought and life. The course aims at providing students with comprehensive knowledge and understanding of a Buddhist practice which has dominated Chinese religious life and shaped the popular image of the Buddhist religion.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2262. Daoist ritual and religious culture in China (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the ritual practices of the Daoist faith and their cultural significance in China from the Medieval times to the present.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2263. Workshop in Chinese biographical studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the characteristic traits of key historical figures in all classes and professions in Chinese society from the pre-Qin period to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2264. Chinese eroticism (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the rise of eroticism in traditional China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2265. Childhood in late imperial China (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides a historical survey of childhood in late imperial China. It examines the provision of family caring, education and recreational activities for children in the larger context of social and cultural development.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2266. History education and Chinese culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the development of history education in China and its relationship with Chinese culture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2267. Jews in China (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores the history and culture of the Jewish People in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GROUP C: TRANSLATION****First Year Courses****CHIN1311. Introduction to translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an introduction to the theoretical and technical issues of translation, with guided practice in translating material of common occurrence.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN1312. Language studies for translation I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This introductory course considers the distinctive characteristics of Chinese and English and aims at highlighting the mechanics of translation as a process of linguistic transfer. Emphasis will be placed on developing in the students a sensitivity towards the particular manners of behaviour of the two languages being reviewed.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

## Second and Third Year Courses

All courses listed below, if not otherwise specified, may be taken in either the second or the third year. Students opting for the Major are however required to take all the courses in List 1 in the years indicated, unless the Head of School approves otherwise,

Second Year: CHIN2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316 (totalling 21 credits)

Third Year: CHIN2317, 2318, 2319, 2320 (totalling 18 credits),

and their remaining courses from List 2 in either the Second or the Third Year to make up at least 48 credits in two years.

Some of the courses require CHIN2335 or CHIN2336 as a prerequisite. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived by the Head of the School.

### List 1

Courses in List 1 are offered to Translation majors only. Non-majors who wish to take any of the courses should first apply for permission from the Head of School.

#### **CHIN2311. Translation criticism I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

In this course, texts in different literary genres (poetry, the essay, the novel, drama) will be selected from English and American literature and discussed alongside their Chinese translations. Students will be trained to develop a critical approach in evaluating the translator's competence and the merits of the selected translations.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

#### **CHIN2312. Translation criticism II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

Selected literary translations in English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different translations of the same original text will be examined concurrently.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

#### **CHIN2313. Language studies for translation II (6 credits)**

This course considers the differences in grammar, semantics and pragmatics between Chinese and English, paying special attention to problems of translating in these areas.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

#### **CHIN2314. Translation in practice I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

This course provides practical training in English-Chinese translation. Materials selected include both the literary and the non-literary. The weekly lectures will be accompanied by written exercises and tutorials.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

#### **CHIN2315. Translation in practice II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

This course contains a critical element as well as a number of exercises in translation from Chinese into English. Texts of different stylistic types will be analysed, and the use of translation strategies for rendering such texts will be explored.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**CHIN2316. Translation theory (3 credits)**

This course introduces leading theories in translation studies. Through studying on-going debates in the field, students will acquire a theoretical and methodological knowledge indispensable to the procedure and evaluation of translation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2317. Translation criticism III (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

This is a sequel to Translation Criticism I. In this course, texts in different literary genres (poetry, the essay, the novel, drama) will be selected from English and American literature and discussed alongside their Chinese translations. Students will be trained to develop a critical approach in evaluating the translator's competence and the merits of the selected translations.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2318. Translation criticism IV (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

This is a sequel to Translation Criticism II. Selected literary translations in English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different translations of the same original text will be examined concurrently.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2319. Language studies for translation III: comparative stylistics (6 credits)**

This course investigates the resources that lead to effective writing and serviceable translation. The objective is two-fold: to identify the variety of figures of speech such as metaphor, personification, parallelism and hyperbole commonly used in novels, prose, poetry and lyrics; and to consider the effects of these literary devices on the translation between English and Chinese.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2320. Long translation (6 credits)**

The Long Translation project is an important part of the Translation degree. Its commencement is as early as the summer vacation between Years Two and Three when students are expected to find and decide on the texts for their translation. Close study of the chosen texts on the part of the students should occur in the vacation. From the beginning of the Third Year to about the end of March of the graduation year, the actual translation will be done by the student under the supervision of a teacher, in each case assigned by the teachers of Translation. The length of the translation should be about twenty pages; the nature of the writing, as literary or practical as the individual student prefers.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**List 2****CHIN2331. Choice of words in translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a course specially planned for students who aspire to carve out for themselves a career in administration, publishing, advertising and journalism. Assuming no specific prior knowledge of linguistics, this course takes a new semantic approach to the analysis of different types of word meaning in a text. It addresses some key issues of a functional grammar pertaining to translation studies in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**CHIN2332. Translation in Hong Kong society (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The basic aim of this course is to provide students who intend to become professional translators in Hong Kong with an overall view of translation as a communicative activity. The translators' work demands specialised knowledge of the ways translation functions in specific social contexts. The principal concern of this course is the practical information about the various circumstances in which translation serves its purpose as a communicative activity, either in the Government or in the private sector. This course will be assessed on the basis of a written seminar paper presented orally and participation in discussion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the cross-cultural dimension of translation. It examines the most complex cultural barriers faced by the translator – such as differences in the expression of emotions (for instance - love, anger, fear), codes of behaviour (for instance intimacy, privacy, politeness), values and world views, notions of gender, aesthetic taste, humour and forms of symbolism and metaphor. These issues arising from translation practice will be discussed in light of current theories on culture and translation from multiple disciplines.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2334. Power of speech in written translation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a course designed to teach both Translation and non-Translation students specific communication skills required for social interaction in a cosmopolitan city such as Hong Kong. 'Good communication behaviour' exhibited in bilingual texts is studied within the general framework of an Interpersonal Rhetoric model.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2335. Introduction to interpretation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to introduce to students the different forms of interpreting, i.e., sight translation, consecutive interpreting, and simultaneous interpreting, and to familiarise them with the basic skills and techniques essential for interpreting. Training will be focused on sight translation and consecutive interpreting between English and Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2336. Interpretation workshop I (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a continuation of Introduction to Interpretation. Students will be trained in sight translation and consecutive interpreting between English and Chinese on general and more specialised topics.

Apart from training in note-taking skills, students will also be introduced to different environments for interpretation and the professional ethics of the interpreter.

Prerequisite: CHIN2335. Introduction to interpretation

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **CHIN2337. Journalistic translation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The primary focus of this course is the linguistic features and stylistic conventions of press material. Texts of various types from the mass media will be examined, and their generic characteristics identified. Students will familiarize themselves in this course with the basic techniques of news reporting and the skills needed to render press material from one language into another.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **CHIN2338. Translation of promotional material (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Promotional material usually has a unique appeal that lies in the skilful manipulation of rhetorical devices. In this course their linguistic and stylistic characteristics will be studied, with emphasis on how best to translate the original into Chinese or English. Students will be provided with opportunities to examine the creative use of language and to improve their ability through training and regular practice to deal with different kinds of writing for advertizing products and services.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the role of translation in Hong Kong's public administration procedures, and how it is used by Hong Kong and Chinese business concerns in conducting international business. Students will practise translating papers related to negotiation, administration and the law arising from such contexts, and explore suitable translation techniques in the process.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Film-making today is becoming increasingly international, rendering translation almost indispensable to the industry. Translating films for dubbing and subtitling requires special skills distinct from those outside the field. This course concentrates on such skills, emphasizing audio-visual awareness and cinematic elements such as drama, dialogue, vernacular, and pacing. Critical theories on media and on cultural production and consumption will be introduced. Students learn through group projects, the hands-on translation of feature films, and critiques of film translation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIN2341. Translating writings on art (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course students will have the opportunity to practise translating from Chinese to English and vice-versa within the field of art history, art appreciation and art criticism. Writings on Chinese and western art, such as those published by museums and art galleries, will be used as study texts, and translation skills and strategies will be discussed to enable students to build up bilingual vocabulary and linguistic expressions for describing Chinese and western works of art in specific historical, social, cultural and aesthetic contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2342. Interpretation workshop II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a continuation of Interpretation Workshop I. It aims at providing students with training in consecutive interpreting on specialised topics ranging from political speeches and addresses at meetings on a variety of topics to court proceedings. This course will also provide training in the essential skills and techniques for simultaneous interpreting, including shadowing, rephrasing, memory retention, abstraction and the cultivation of split attention.

Prerequisite: CHIN2336. Interpretation Workshop I

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GROUP D: DISSERTATION****Third Year Course****CHIN3401. Dissertation (12 credits)**

A dissertation will be written on a subject approved by the supervisor and the School. This course is only open to students majoring in the School of Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ASSESSMENT**

Coursework assessment will be based on performance in tutorials and seminars, and on the strength of essays and such other exercises as can be assessed continually.

Each course will be examined by a written paper of not more than 2-hour duration except those courses which are assessed by 100% coursework.

---

**SCHOOL OF ENGLISH****INTRODUCTION**

The School of English gives teaching and supervision in English and American literatures, world literature and cross-cultural studies in English, sociolinguistics, critical linguistics, English language and linguistics, and is the home of the Programme in Language and Communication. The School of English also contributes to the teaching of the BA/BEd programme, and offers a minor in English Literature exclusively to BA/BEd students.

The School offers three majors in the second and third years:

- (1) **English Studies;**
- (2) **Cross-Cultural Studies in English;**
- (3) **Language and Communication.**

**English Studies** offers a broad curriculum of literary and linguistic studies in English. **Cross-Cultural Studies in English** focuses on the English language and literature in English as the site of encounters, fusions, conflicts and transformations between people and ideas of different cultures. The focus of **Language and Communication** is on the study and use of language and language in society.

Admission to the School is strictly on the basis of academic record including at least a minimum C grade in the Use of English AS exam and good AL results, GPAs or their equivalent. Students intending to enrol in courses in English Studies and/or Cross-Cultural Studies in English in Year 2 and Year 3 must normally have completed **ENGL1009** and **LCOM1001** and achieved a satisfactory result. Students who intend to enrol in Language and Communication must pass **LCOM1001**.

Students who fail to achieve a C grade (53%) in both **ENGL1009** and **LCOM1001**, or with an unsatisfactory report from their tutor, will not normally be permitted to major in English Studies or Cross-Cultural Studies in English. Students who fail to achieve a C grade (53%) in **LCOM1001** will not normally be permitted to major in Language and Communication. Both **ENGL1009** and **LCOM1001** are subject to a quota. Students must select a minimum of eight six-credit courses (or equivalent) in their major.

At the end of the students' first or second year, the School will invite a small number of students to be **Special Honours majors**. Special Honours students may be Majors in English Studies, Cross-Cultural Studies in English, or Language and Communication. Selected on the basis of their academic record and tutors' recommendations, these students will take at least 6 credits annually in their Major beyond the normal requirement, and will be guaranteed admission to the courses of their choice. Special Honours students majoring in English Studies will register for the 12 credit tutorial course, Advanced Topics in English Studies (**ENGL3032**), or for any two of the following 6 credit Research Seminars: **ENGL3033**, **ENGL3034**, **ENGL3035**, **ENGL3036**, **ENGL3037**. Special Honours students majoring in Cross-Cultural Studies in English will register for the 12 credit tutorial course, Advanced Topics in English Studies (**ENGL3032**), or for **ENGL3039** plus one of the following 6 credit Research Seminars: **ENGL3033**, **ENGL3034**, **ENGL3035**, **ENGL3036**, **ENGL3037**. Special Honours students in Language and Communication must take either the dissertation course (**LCOM3002**) or **LCOM3003** (LCOM Papers) or both of the following 6 credit Research Seminars: **ENGL3036**, **ENGL3037**. Upon completing their programme and meeting the Special Honours requirements, these students will be given special recognition by the School.

Choice of courses and options is subject to the approval of the School. Students must ensure that their choice of courses conforms to any prerequisites laid down by the School. MAJORS in English Studies and in Cross-Cultural Studies in English are given priority entry into senior courses in their respective major. MAJORS in Language and Communication are given priority entry into Language and Communication courses.

Prescribed reading, specifications for each course, recommended course combinations, and information about prerequisites are available at the website <http://www.hku.hk/english>. Regular attendance at tutorials and other classes and the punctual completion of work prescribed by the student's tutor or supervisor are expected.

## **ENGLISH STUDIES AND CROSS-CULTURAL STUDIES IN ENGLISH**

The list of courses which follows indicates whether a course may be selected as part of the English Studies Major (*ES*) and/or the Cross-Cultural Studies in English Major (*CCSE*). Please note that students may also take LCOM2001, LCOM3001, LCOM2002 and LCOM2003 as part of the English Studies major. LCOM3001 may also be counted towards the major in Cross-Cultural Studies in English. Courses that can be counted towards the major in Language and Communication are also indicated (*L&C*).

## First Year

---

### **ENGL1009. Introduction to English studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the study of English writing. Students will be introduced to the basic elements of literary analysis and theory in English, and to intellectual issues relevant to the study of the language and its culture. No previous experience of literary studies or linguistics is assumed, but at the end of this introductory course students will have a grasp of the basic concepts and skills needed to make advanced studies in English interesting and enjoyable. The course will also offer guidance and practice in reading, discussion, group work, writing and basic research, including the use of the library and the internet.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework and 40% written examination.

Coursework assessment marks are based on tutorial participation (10%) and a research essay (50%). The examination (40%) will consist of a two-hour written paper.

ES

## Second and Third Year

---

All courses beyond the first year may be taken in either the second or third year, unless otherwise indicated. These courses consist of: (a) English, American, and postcolonial writing, including individual authors and genres, as well as literary and cultural topics; (b) English language studies and linguistics, including the linguistic analysis of English, sociolinguistics, the history of linguistics, critical linguistics, and the politics of language; and (c) the English language at work in a range of contexts and genres, including creative writing and drama.

The School also offers a 12 credit tutorial course, Advanced Topics in English Studies (ENGL3032) and a number of 6 credit research seminar courses, which allow students to follow a programme designed to suit their individual interests. There are no formal lectures and students are assessed on the basis of their written work. Admission to these courses is subject to satisfactory academic results and tutors' recommendations (see the special section below).

---

### **Mode of assessment**

Modes of assessment vary from course to course. Please check the course description for details of how each course is assessed.

If staffing arrangements permit, the following second- and third-year courses will be offered:

---

### **ENGL2002. Language in society (6 credits)**

This course will provide an introduction to the study of 'sociolinguistics', which deals with the relationship between language and society. Topics will vary, but may include the following: multilingualism, language varieties, language planning, language change, English in contact with other languages.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE, L&C

**ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)**

This is a course about language origins and language change. It investigates the social, political and linguistic reasons that English has developed into the global superpower language of today, and introduces basic tools and methodologies for studying language change in English.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2004. English syntax (6 credits)**

This course introduces the structure of English by investigating approaches to grammar, models of grammatical analysis, and the grammar of contemporary English. It is interested in the relationship between morphology and syntax, and grammar and linguistics.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)**

This course uses linguistic techniques to analyse literary texts by examining both the devices that literary authors employ and the literary effects they create in different styles and genres. It employs methods of structural linguistic analysis (looking at the syntax and phonology of texts) as well as socio-historical and pragmatic methods.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2010. English novel I (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its development in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2011. English novel II (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its development in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2012. Contemporary literary theory (6 credits)**

In the late 20th century, developments in critical thought had a major impact on literature and criticism. Relations between literary production and language, politics and history were radically re-examined by and through what has become known as 'theory'. As a body of thought, theory includes such diverse and conflicting schools and movements as Marxism, poststructuralism, feminism and gender theory, new historicism, postcolonialism and postmodernism. As well as exploring the institution of theory in the academy, students will put theory into practice in readings of selected literary texts.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

**ENGL2022. Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)**

This course will explore questions of identity and difference as expressed in women's writing. It will provide a general introduction to feminist literary theory and the on-going range of feminist interventions in literary and cultural studies.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE*

---

**ENGL2027. Text and discourse in contemporary English (6 credits)**

This course will examine how writers exploit the resources of English for creative and communicational purposes in contemporary writing in different genres.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE*

---

**ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)**

This course will survey the English language throughout the world, with reference to the use of English in Britain, Asia, and Hong Kong. This course will focus particularly on the development of 'new Englishes' in Asia and Hong Kong.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE, L&C*

---

**ENGL2031. The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)**

This course introduces the study of meaning in the English language. We will examine semantic meanings – meanings encoded in the language system itself – and also pragmatic meanings – meanings inferred from the communicative context of language use.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2033. English novel III (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its developments in the twentieth century.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2035. Reading poetry (6 credits)**

An advanced reading course for students interested in specializing in poetry.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2037. Science fiction (6 credits)**

This is a survey of the genre of science fiction from late 19th century literature by H.G. Wells through to recent movies such as *Blade Runner* and *The Matrix*. As well as formal and historical study of the SF genre, the course will be concerned with fictional presentations of scientific possibility and the moral and political strategies that underlie representations of utopia and dystopia.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

**ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)**

This course examines the relationship between cultural attitudes and language, how gender socialization is reflected in the structure and use of language, and the effectiveness of political and social forces in “legislated” linguistic change. Stereotypes and biases about the sexes, standard and vernacular norms will also be examined in the course.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE, L&C*

---

**ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)**

This course presents a survey of Asian American literature through literary texts from Asian American communities, including Japanese, Chinese, Korean, Filipino, and Southeast Asian Americans. We will touch on major themes explored in these texts, such as concepts of dislocation and relocation as well as finding and/or inventing a usable past. The readings span a range of genres and historical periods. The course will attempt to contextualize these texts both historically and culturally.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)**

This is a survey of European travel writing as a literary genre from the medieval period to the present day. The writings of travelers and explorers such as Marco Polo, Christopher Columbus and James Cook are examined, as well as those of modern travel writers such as Freya Stark, Graham Greene, D.H. Lawrence, Paul Theroux and Jan Morris. European travel writing is explored formally and thematically with the aim of introducing students to its many strategies and subtexts, and especially its historical role in articulating ‘otherness’ for the European imagination.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE*

---

**ENGL2046. English words (6 credits)**

This course explores the structure, meaning, history, and usage of English words from a linguistic point of view.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2047. English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)**

This course will provide an introduction to the analysis of English discourse from a linguistic perspective. Students will learn rhetorical methodologies and examine their effects on readers and listeners. Units include: spoken and written English discourse, global organization and cohesion, discourse markers, information structure, narrative, and non-verbal structures and strategies.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2048. Language and jargon (6 credits)**

This course focuses on specialized sub-group languages or jargons, and uses texts from a range of historical period to examine the socio-cultural dynamics behind the creation, maintenance and



disappearance of such jargons. Particular attention will be paid to the history of criminal jargon, prison jargon and other speech varieties associated with other marginal or criminalized sub-groups (e.g. drug addicts, “tramps”, etc.), as well as to the history of the study of such jargons and the inclusion of jargon and slang items in mainstream dictionaries. Students will read texts from different periods in the history of English, as well as considering the role of jargons in modern societies such as the United States, Britain and Hong Kong, as well as in “cyber-space”.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

#### **ENGL2049. The history of English: sociolinguistic perspectives (6 credits)**

This course will have a specific focus on the history of the English language from a sociolinguistic perspective. The course will discuss issues related to language contact, standardisation, variation, and varieties of English. Particular reference will be made to the role of attitudes and ideologies in the development of the language.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

#### **ENGL2050. English corpus linguistics (6 credits)**

Corpus linguistics is a rapidly-developing methodology in the study of language. It exploits the power of modern computer technology to manipulate and analyse large collections of naturally-occurring language (“corpora”). This course will introduce students to the use of computers and computerized corpora as tools for exploring the English language.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

#### **ENGL2054. Race, language and identity (6 credits)**

This course looks at different notions of identity and the origins of modern understandings of ethnicity. It focusses on the contribution made by ideas about language to theories of group identity, including nationalism, and the tensions between linguistic, racial, religious and cultural notions of identity.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE, L&C*

---

#### **ENGL2055. American Gothic: Haunted Homes (6 credits)**

In this course we will examine the gothic as an important genre in American literature and trace its tradition across two centuries. As a response to dominant ideas and conventions that shaped American literature, the gothic offers us a challenging perspective on the mainstream as well as on what it excludes. Beginning with some classic examples of the genre, we will seek to identify the elements and the rhetoric of the gothic text in order to appreciate the specific use that later writers have made of the gothic form.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

#### **ENGL2057. Text and image (6 credits)**

This interdisciplinary course explores relations between literature and various forms of image-based representation. It begins with ‘painterly’ descriptions in novels and poetry, and common strands in art

and literary criticism, and proceeds to discussion of relations between film and literature, such as the presence of cinematographic form in modern literature. In the concluding module, we consider the shift in emphasis from text-based to image-based culture and its impact on postmodern society. Course material consists of critical essays, and examples from literature, the pictorial arts and the moving image.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

---

### **ENGL2058. Narrative prose: a linguistic investigation (6 credits)**

This course examines the linguistic techniques by which narrative writing in English works. With a focus on literary texts, the course will consider topics such as co-reference and cohesion, syntactic style and patterning, place and time deixis, the handling of conversation, modality and point of view, and more generally, the linguistics of 'realism', and the linguistic basis of irony.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, L&C

---

### **ENGL2059. American drama and American film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce American drama and American film: developing stories of America in performance. We will emphasize performance, as well as analysis: casting, acting, directing, staging, special effects, and audience. As centers of industry, education, and culture moved across the country, form and innovation shifted accordingly. Looking at competing histories and narrative strategies, we will see how American plays and American films participate separately and together in remaking American myths and literary patterns, while assimilating and rejecting inherited models. Considerations of American English, silence, the loner's staged resistances, and audience participation will be included. We will read plays such as: Eugene O'Neill's *The Hairy Ape*, Tennessee Williams's *The Glass Menagerie*, Arthur Miller's *All My Sons*, Sam Shepard's *True West*, and Ishmael Reed's *Hubba City*. We will see films such as *Casablanca*, *High Noon*, *The Way We Were*, *Hair*, and *Boyz n the Hood*.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

---

### **ENGL2061. British and American literary culture (6 credits)**

This course will focus on representative American or British literary and cultural texts. After attending lectures and workshops in the department, students will have an opportunity to travel to relevant places in the United States or Britain, and will be given related background tuition or lectures at a North American University or a British university. Students will be required to present portfolios including essays, presentations, and field-trip reports to the department.

This course will only be offered to students majoring in English.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

---

### **ENGL2062. The history of Western linguistics (6 credits)**

This course will trace the history of ideas about language and its relationship to the mind and the world, from ancient to modern times.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

**ENGL2064. Advanced English syntax (6 credits)**

Prerequisite: ENGL2004 English syntax or EDUC2201 or LING2050

Building on from “ENGL2004 English syntax” this course will introduce students to two burgeoning paradigms in present-day linguistics: construction grammar and grammaticalization theory. The first of these is a general semantico-syntactic language theory; the second a (historical) linguistic discipline that focuses on how grammatical constructions come into being. The compatibility and complementarity of both approaches will be looked at through a detailed case study of English clausal complement constructions.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2065. Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)**

This course will introduce students to a number of questions about linguistic meaning and examine various definitions of metaphor. Among the questions considered are: What role does metaphor play in human language? In what way (if at all) do languages create or embody particular culturally-specific world-views?

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)**

This course studies linguistics as a branch of what Edward Said has termed ‘Orientalism’, i.e. western models of Asian language, literature, culture and society created within European colonialism. It looks at the ways western linguists of the 19th and 20th century have ‘imagined’ or categorized Asian languages, relating those categories to debates within western linguistics.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE, L&C*

---

**ENGL2069. Form and meaning (6 credits)**

An investigation into the relationship between English structure and meaning (semantics and pragmatics), considering how meanings are encoded and inferred.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2074. Postcolonial readings (6 credits)**

This course examines important works of literature in English from perspectives opened up by recent debates on ‘nation’, ‘narration’, and ‘hybridity’.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE*

---

**ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)**

An examination of English representations and interpretations of China in a selection of writings from the 18th century to the early 20th century.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE*

**ENGL2076. Romanticism (6 credits)**

The course studies the Romantic era, and traces its history through a selection of its main texts. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE*

---

**ENGL2078. The novel today (6 credits)**

This course examines developments in the novel by studying a representative sample of recently published fiction in English. Innovations in narrative technique, such as metafiction and postmodern poetics, will be one strand of enquiry. Thematic strands will depend on the novels selected for study but are likely to include, gender, representation, globalism, postmodernism, race and ethnicity, and identity.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2079. Shakespeare (6 credits)**

This course will explore some of the themes and form of Shakespeare's drama, and will consider how his work has been interpreted in modern times.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)**

This course will explore the often difficult relationship between women and what has been traditionally known as the 'feminine sphere'. Women have commonly been associated with the feminine sphere of love, marriage and family and this course will consider how modernity and feminism have challenged and disrupted this assumption.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2082. Modern literary criticism (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to a selection of major texts in literary criticism from the early 19th century to the 1960s. It examines principal critical concepts and methodological principles formulated in these texts and traces the developments of critical thought within this period.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2084. Modernism and short fiction (6 credits)**

This course studies the re-invention of traditional forms of writing in the modernist revolution that ushered in the twentieth century in Europe and beyond. Concentrating on short fiction, it investigates how modernist writers found ways to 'make it new'.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE*

**ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)**

This is a course about rhetoric, in which students will explore ways in which language can be used to convey, reinforce or change ideas. The objective is to help students to understand, analyse, and develop the arts of discourse in English, and the critical skills on which they depend.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

---

**ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will be an introduction to American literature primarily through fictional and non-fictional accounts of exemplary lives. Our focus will be on how successive generations of immigrants and settlers have constructed and transformed a vision of “America” as process and promise. The course aims to introduce students to the diversity of writing that constitutes American literature, to guide them in the development of critical reading and writing skills and to provide them with opportunities to build, present and respond to arguments about the texts and topics under discussion.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

---

**ENGL2090. The moving production of America: reading recent films (6 credits)**

In this course we will look at recent American movies and examine the ways in which they generate visions of American reality. Our inquiries will be guided by three focuses: 1) looking at movies, we will ask where they locate American life and how they represent it; 2) looking through movies, we will ask how they feel the pulse of an American public, what assumptions they make about their audience and how they seek to move it; 3) looking into movies, we will try to understand how they review and reconfigure the world of American movies itself.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

---

**ENGL2091. Comedy and Asian American drama (6 credits)**

In this course we will look at Asian-American drama in two ways: through humor and an abbreviated history of drama in America. Topics to be addressed include Asian-American humor, oral and written developments of “character” in America, American tall tales, questions of youth and tradition, American story-telling on stage. The course involves students in several ways: as readers, as writers, as voluntary participants in short stage pieces, as collectors of data on humor in popular and literary settings.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

---

**ENGL2092. Postcolonial English (6 credits)**

For many creative writers - writers of poetry, fiction, drama - from outside the Anglo-American world, English has a complex history and often an uneasy relationship, with native languages. The decision, or the choice, to write and publish in English, is an issue they have reflected upon and debated, nationally and internationally, with other writers. Such reflections and debates constitute one of the dynamic contours of “Global English” as a discourse. Critical questions often raised in the debate concern the English language as the bearer of cultures. They include the changing roles of English as a colonial or postcolonial language, as the language of the unitary or pluralistic nations, as a dominant

or minority language, as the language of 'English literature' or 'Literature in English'. In this course, students will be introduced to these questions through discussions of essays by writers who have considerable practical experience using English as the language of creativity, and who are active contributors to debates about English in their own locations.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

---

**ENGL2093. Literary islands: English poetry and prose from the South Pacific and the Caribbean (6 credits)**

In this course we will read and discuss literary texts mainly poems and short stories from two cultural regions that received the English language as colonial cargo between the 17th and 19th centuries. Looking at the different histories of the insular cultures of the South Pacific and the Caribbean, we will consider how these histories have shaped the emergence of Anglophone literatures, and how these literatures in turn challenge our expectations of English literature. We will pay special attention to the forms of communication these texts represent and establish as they construct a sense of place, and parallels will perhaps be drawn to the case of Hong Kong. Topics: history and politics of English in the South Pacific and the Caribbean, the emergence of English-language literatures and the development of indigenous traditions, the relationship between writing and place, distance and insularity, the relationship between literature and vernacular culture (conversation, song, storytelling, oratory)

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

---

**ENGL2094. Cultural approaches to second language varieties of English (6 credits)**

In this course, we will look at second language varieties of English and what they can tell us about the cultural background of their speakers. After an introduction to the relation of language and culture in general (*Linguistic Relativity Principle*), and some modern adaptations of this principle with respect to the role of English in the world, the students will be acquainted with specific methodologies from cognitive linguistics/cognitive anthropology and computer corpus analysis, which allow them to systematically analyze language from a cultural perspective. The students are required to conduct independent research, utilizing these methods of investigation.

Some prior knowledge about varieties of English (World Englishes) is of help, but is no requirement. Due to the restricted number of workstations in the computer lab, not more than 40 students can be admitted to this class.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE, L&C

---

**ENGL2095. The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)**

Interpretations of the Orient in modern western writings, from the colonial to the postcolonial period.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

---

**ENGL2096. Creative Writing (12 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

In this year-long seminar, students will study the craft of writing. As developing writers, they will find their attention directed toward elements of design in language. Practice will be offered in training the eye and ear for recognizing, developing, and editing elements of voice. In the first

semester, stories and poems will be the focus. The second term will introduce the writing of plays, along with editorial work on the journal *Yuan Yang*. Continuous practice is emphasized, as is reading. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

---

### **ENGL2097. Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course, students will read selections of fiction, poetry, essays, and journalism from earlier moments in the twentieth century to post-1997. Questions of modernity, urbanization and the urban subject, and cross-cultural identities will be discussed from perspectives opened up by postcolonial theories, and with reference to historical change both locally and in Hong Kong's geopolitical situation in the last fifty years.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

---

### **ENGL2098. Call and response: Southeast Asian literature written in English (6 credits)**

This course considers a range of South East Asian texts by focusing on authors from India, Malaysia and Singapore. Discussions will centre on issues raised by the literature, such as: the effects of colonialism, post-colonialism and neo-colonialism over the last century, the construction of "nation" and the problematic relationship between individual, religious, cultural and national identities, the effects of exile and peripheral existence on identity, the role of the author as myth-maker and canonical revisionist, regional forms of feminism, and the consequences of globalization and transculturalism.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

---

### **ENGL2099. Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)**

This interdisciplinary course explores the relationship between language and identity with a special focus on Asian Americans and linguistic issues relevant to Asian Americans. With particular attention to the linguistic practices of Asian Americans, we will examine such questions as: What attitudes are associated with being bilingual? Do Asian Americans speak with an accent? Does accent determine whether Asian Americans are perceived of as 'white'? Do any Asian Americans speak 'black'? We will also explore the position of Asian Americans in social, political, and educational discourses in order to understand how an 'Asian American' identity can be constructed through language practices. Although the course focuses on Asian American identities and experiences, students will be encouraged to discuss issues of social identity and language in general.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE, L&C

---

### **ENGL2100. Language and social interaction (6 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to the analysis of social interaction (in English) and explores the relationships between macro- and micro-level approaches to the study of language and social interaction. We will examine how language both reflects and contributes to the organization of social order by close analyses of naturally occurring interactions. Students will learn the fundamentals of data collection and transcription, explore ways of interpreting talk as a form of social action, and conduct original research on the analysis of data that they will collect for the course.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE, L&C

**ENGL2101. Culture and society (6 credits)**

What is culture? What is Cultural Studies? Why should we consider cultural formations in literary studies? Focusing on the cultural critic Raymond Williams (1921 – 1988), this course introduces students to British Cultural Studies and discusses the importance of Cultural Studies in the changing landscape of literary studies. More specifically, we will discuss the historical transformation of literary studies from a text-based practice into a broad critical engagement with human experience and examine the critical energies within literary studies that have brought about such a transformation. Students in this course will read a selection of seminal writings by Williams with close reference to the literary examples he cites from prose fiction, poetry and drama.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2102. Theories of beauty (6 credits)**

The idea and experience of the beautiful are inseparable from literary art. This course provides an introduction to literary aesthetics. Focusing on British tradition of aesthetics, we will examine the disciplinary establishment of aesthetics as a historical formation in relation to literary, cultural, and intellectual modernity and discuss developments of major aesthetic concepts in history. There will be weekly lectures and workshops, in which we will read closely major aesthetic texts and discuss important debates in aesthetics with reference to our studies of literature and our everyday experience of the beautiful.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2103. Language and new media (6 credits)**

Language is strongly influenced by the medium through which it is presented. When the medium itself is in wide use, norms emerge which determine not only the form that language can take, but also the pragmatic effects of any language use that either exploits or deviates from these norms. The nature of public language--that is, language generated by or for the public at large through various media--in turn influences public discourse (i.e., what is being talked about large-scale, and how it is talked about). When the nature of the medium is expressly exploited linguistically, then this change can achieve overwhelming and widespread effects.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)**

This course addresses the problems (theoretical and practical) inherent in defining a variety of English as 'American'. Issues treated include the history of American English; dialectology; sociolinguistics; Black English; and the politics of American English.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2105. Contemporary North American novelists (6 credits)**

In this course we will explore developments and issues in contemporary North American fiction by focusing on the work of selected novelists active in the USA and Canada (the adjective 'contemporary' loosely locating this activity within the lifetime of the lecturer). The specific works to be examined and discussed will vary from year to year but we will typically read closely three or four novels by one (or two) novelist(s) each year. This will allow us to address questions regarding particular writers' evolving craft and concerns, as well as to situate their work in the context of recent currents in North American literature.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*



**ENGL2106. Childhood, reading and literature in the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

This course looks at ideas of childhood and reading in the nineteenth century through a detailed study of a number of representative texts. This course has both a historical and a practical aim. It studies a selection of literary texts from the 19th century, which can be broadly classified as 'children's literature'. Children's literature has become a flourishing field of academic enquiry, and although this course touches upon theoretical considerations about the genre, it is more interested in following the idea of childhood through the nineteenth century through a number of literary representations. The books created for children, whether as teaching tools or engrossing stories reflect both the ideas about childhood in circulation at any given moment, and the experience of being a child.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES

---

**ENGL2107. Literature, culture and gender at the *Fin de Siècle* (6 credits)**

This course locates the literature of the 1890s within the cultural and social context of the late nineteenth century through a detailed study of contemporary documents and pictorial material alongside the core texts. Some of the themes discussed in this context include: decadence and degeneration; sexual anarchy, new women and decadent men; the *fin de siècle* subject and the birth of psychoanalysis; civilisation and its discontents; old endings and new beginnings.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

---

**ENGL2108. Shakespeare's language (6 credits)**

This course focuses on diverse aspects of the language of Shakespeare's plays and poetry. It looks at Shakespeare's language in the context of the history of the English language and introduces its key grammatical and lexical features. Specific attention will be paid to linguistic variation relating to social class, occupation group and gender; the use of metaphor; ambiguity and punning; terms of address; rhetorical structure. Shakespeare's long term impact on the English language will be considered, along with an analysis of the place of his work in national and nationalist histories of the English language.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework

ES

---

**ENGL2109. Writing diaspora (6 credits)**

This course examines problems and issues in the literature and film produced by diasporic and migrant communities. Structured around several modules in which various texts are used to investigate such issues as identity and subjectivity, displacement, nostalgia, memory, second-generation conflicts, "passing" and diasporic transformation. Elaborates on the problematic nature of these issues and explains their significance in global diasporas.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

---

**ENGL2110. Writing back (6 credits)**

'Writing Back: Post-Colonial Re-writings of the Canon' is a course that examines the strategy employed by some post-colonial literary texts of re-writing 'canonical' literary texts to expose their literary, cultural and ideological assumptions. The course investigates the ways in which such texts resist the imposed cultural assumptions of English literature.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

ES, CCSE

**ENGL2111. Seeing Australia (6 credits)**

‘Seeing Australia’ is a course that examines the way Australia has been ‘seen’ over the last two centuries, in art and literature. In investigating the way Australia has historically been depicted and understood, students will discover how Australia has come to exist in the mind of its own people and those from other countries. Australia is therefore seen as the subject of many culturally disparate ‘ways of seeing’. We begin the process by analysing the concept of ‘seeing’ itself. ‘Seeing’ stands for many different ways of knowing and representing and these will be explored in a range of texts: written texts in poetic and narrative form, and visual texts of various kinds.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**ENGL2112. An introduction to the history of English (6 credits)**

This introductory seminar will acquaint students with the main historical periods of the English language (Old English, Middle English, Early Modern English) and theoretical and methodological problems and approaches in studying these varieties. Through the use of various media apart from academic literature (video, audio presentations, online sources, computer corpora), the seminar will offer students various modes of learning about the history of English, language change, and linguistic theory.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2113. Conrad and others (6 credits)**

Joseph Conrad (1857-1924) was a Pole who wrote fiction in English, after a career as a sailor which took him round a world largely dominated by expanding and competing European empires. He often focuses his stories on cross-cultural encounters. This course sets Conrad’s work in its cultural and historical context, and examines the way his fiction represents ‘alterity’, our sense of the otherness of other people, which also helps us define the self.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, CCSE*

---

**ENGL2114. Cross-Cultural issues and theories 1 (6 credits)**

This course, which is compulsory for students majoring in Cross-Cultural Studies in English, will familiarize students with the most important terms and ideas to be encountered in cross-cultural studies, and the debates about them, including: globalization, world literature, world languages, the local, cosmopolitanism, translation, ethnography and auto-ethnography, Orientalism, alterity. This course must be taken in the second year of study.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*CCSE*

---

**ENGL2115. Theories of Language Acquisition I (6 credits)**

NOT to be taken with: EDUC2203 First and second language acquisition, LING2036 Child language

This course offers an introduction to the central themes in language acquisition, covering first language acquisition, second/foreign language acquisition and bilingualism. Students are expected to gain from the course a broad understanding of how children acquire their first language, how second language learners learn a new language, and the potential differences in processing and outcome.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

**ENGL2116. Theories of Language Acquisition II (6 credits)**

Prerequisite: ENGL2115. Theories of Language Acquisition I or EDUC2203 or LING2036

This advanced course will deal with some of the critical issues addressed in Theories of Language Acquisition I in greater depth. It covers theoretical perspectives ranging from innateness, empiricism, to emergentism. We will study a survey of research on language acquisition and examine observational and experimental empirical data from various schools.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

**ENGL2117. English phonology and morphology (6 credits)**

This course provides a comprehensive study of the sounds (phonemes) and structure (morphemes) of English words. Students will examine the phonemes of English as they occur separately and in context and the processes involved in producing those sounds. The course includes problems that Cantonese speakers might have in mastering English phonemes (and why) and ways in which those problems can be overcome. Students will also develop an understanding of the building blocks of English words and how morphemes differ from syllables. In learning the various ways in which English words are formed, each student will be able to increase his/her own lexicon and develop an understanding of how and why words are constantly being added to or deleted from the English language and who is generally responsible for those changes.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES, L&C*

---

The following Language and Communication courses can also be taken towards the English Studies major:

**LCOM2001:** Theories of language and communication (6 credits)

**LCOM3001:** Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)

**LCOM2002:** Language in the workplace (6 credits)

**LCOM2003:** Language and politeness (6 credits)

In addition, LCOM3001 can be taken towards the Cross-Cultural Studies in English major.

The following course from the Faculty of Law may also be taken towards the English Studies major:

---

**ENGL2118. Law and literature (6 credits)**

Law and literature are cognate disciplines: legal themes and characters recur in fiction, and rhetoric and storytelling arguably form an integral part of legal argumentation. This course will explore the relationship between law and literature via an examination of the ways they respond to common issues and problems. We will look at how the law has been represented in a literary context, and will investigate the possibility of interpreting legal material as literary product. Readings will be drawn from fiction, drama, court cases, and critical theory.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*ES*

---

**Courses available for third year students only****ENGL3032. Advanced topics in English studies (12 credits)**

This is an advanced tutorial course which allows the student to follow an in-depth programme of research under the guidance of a member of staff. There are no lectures, and the course aims to encourage the student to pursue independent research. Students should choose a topic which falls

within the broad area of the English Department's curriculum. This should be done in consultation with a member of staff. The student and staff member should agree a programme of study, and the student can opt either to produce a single extended piece of work (a dissertation) or four essays on related topics. The student should have regular meetings with the tutor. Admission to this course is conditional on good academic performance, and the subject matter and scope of the course requires the approval of the department.

Assessment will be by dissertation or four written essays (100% coursework).

*ES, CCSE, L&C*

---

### **ENGL3033. Research seminar in English studies (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in a specialized area of English Studies. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment will be by written essay or project (100% coursework).

*ES, CCSE*

---

### **ENGL3034. Research seminar in English literary studies (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of literatures in English. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment will be by written essay or project (100% coursework).

*ES, CCSE*

---

### **ENGL3035. Research seminar in literary theory (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of literary theory and literary criticism. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment will be by written essay or project (100% coursework).

*ES, CCSE*

---

### **ENGL3036. Research seminar in English linguistics (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of English language and linguistics. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment will be by written essay or project (100% coursework).

*ES, L&C*

**ENGL3037. Research seminar in language & society (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of language and society. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment will be by written essay or project (100% coursework).

*ES, CCSE, L&C*

---

**ENGL3038. Cross-Cultural issues and theories 2 (6 credits)**

Prerequisite: ENGL2114 Cross-Cultural issues and theories 1

This course, which is compulsory for students majoring in Cross-Cultural Studies in English, builds on and completes the introduction to the chief theoretical issues and methodologies of this branch of study which began in Cross-Cultural Issues and Theories 2. This course is open to final year students only.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

*CCSE*

---

**ENGL3039. Research seminar in cross-cultural studies in English (6 credits)**

Prerequisite: ENGL2114 Cross-Cultural issues and theories 1

This course is designed for students majoring in Cross-Cultural Studies in English who wish to pursue advanced work. This course is open to third year students only, and students should consult the co-ordinator of the major before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment will be by written essay or project (100% coursework).

*CCSE*

---

**LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION**

The Undergraduate Interdisciplinary Studies Programme in Language and Communication focuses on the study and use of language and languages in society. It is an interdisciplinary programme and therefore reflects different approaches among the departments that contribute to the programme. The programme aims to produce graduates who are broadly skilled in the areas of language and communication and will fulfill a need in the community for linguistically versatile and intellectually fluent leaders. Admission is on the basis of academic record including at least a minimum C grade in the Use of English AS-level exam.

Prospective majors in Language and Communication must, as a co-requisite, be accepted to take a major in either Chinese, English, French, German, Japanese Studies, Linguistics, Linguistics and Philosophy, or Spanish, or a minor in a language programme for which a major is not available. Prospective majors must also pass the prerequisite course LCOM1001 in their first year, and the required courses for enrolment in the co-requisite major. Prospective minors are also required to pass LCOM1001 in their first year.

**The Major**

A major in Language and Communication consists of 48 credits taken in the second and third years of the programme, consisting of 24 credits of 'core' courses, and a further 24 credits of 'elective' courses,

as listed below. Students should note that any courses taken for the co-requisite major may not be counted towards the major in Language and Communication. Students are also asked to note that departmental pre-requisites for both 'core' and 'elective' courses must be met unless otherwise waived.

#### The Minor

A minor in Language and Communication consists of second- and third-year courses totaling 24 credits from the Language and Communication syllabus. LCOM2001 and LCOM3001 are compulsory courses; for the 12 remaining credits, one course (6 credits) from the list of core courses has to be chosen, and one course (6 credits) from the list of electives.

#### Special Honours

Students in Language and Communication must take either the dissertation course (**LCOM3002**) or **LCOM3003** (LCOM Papers) or both of the following 6 credit Research Seminars (**ENGL3036**, **ENGL3037**). Upon completing their programme and meeting the Special Honours requirements, these students will be given special recognition by the School (for further details, see "Introduction" of the School syllabus).

### Language and Communication courses

#### First Year course

#### **LCOM1001. Introduction to language and communication (6 credits)**

In this course, students will be acquainted with two central concepts of language and communication, the concept of a "linguistic situation" and the concept of a "communicative situation." The former relates language(s) to broader social factors in a given geographical unit and touches upon a number of fields of sociolinguistic investigation (e.g., language and power, bi- and multilingualism, contact languages, language policy and language planning, language and culture, language attitudes, language and ethnicity/identity). Students will research one specific area of a particular linguistic situation and present their findings in class. In turn, the concept of a communicative situation applies to actual linguistic encounters. It is constituted by numerous interrelated variables, as, among other things, the type of communicative situation, the social organizations, the location, the 'players' involved, their roles, etc. Students will explore different kinds of communicative situations. They will learn to evaluate the corresponding linguistic behavior and to identify potential sources of conflict, for example in intercultural encounters, where different expectations and conventions regarding a specific kind of communicative situation may collide.

Assessment: 50% final 2-hour exam and 50% coursework

#### Second and Third Year courses

#### **LCOM2001. Theories of language and communication (6 credits)**

The core course following LCOM1001 widens the scope to include theoretical discussions of language and communication. First, we will look at assumptions about language and the philosophical positions they are based on, their merits and shortcomings, as well as possible points of contact between them. Here, students or groups of students will look closer into any one of the assumptions, find exemplary linguistic studies which are based on this particular assumption, and present and discuss them critically in class. Then, we will turn to models/metaphors of communication, for example, the conduit metaphor, the toolmaker model, and the notion of 'language game'. Students will investigate how these models of communication are expressed in the languages they study. An examination of these different models of communication will also enable the students to understand the difference between subjectivist, objectivist, and constructionist conceptions of communication.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**LCOM2002. Language in the workplace (6 credits)**

Prerequisites: LCOM1001

People spend a considerable amount of time at work. The workplace thus provides a useful site for investigating various aspects of language and communication. This course will discuss a range of features of workplace discourse and illustrate the impact social factors may have on the ways in which language is used in this context. We will also discuss and compare different methodological approaches and a variety of theoretical frameworks used for an analysis of workplace discourse. These tools will then be used by the students to analyse naturalistic data.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**LCOM2003. Language and politeness (6 credits)**

Prerequisites: LCOM1001

This course will discuss various approaches to linguistic politeness. Students will be introduced to a number of theoretical frameworks that have been developed in order to capture and assess this complex concept. A particular focus will be on the question of universality and culturally influenced perceptions of politeness. Moreover, the impact of various social factors (including power, gender and ethnicity) on the performance and perception of linguistic politeness is discussed, and the topic of impoliteness is covered.

Assessment: 60% examination and 40% in-class presentation

**LCOM3001. Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)**

This course will look at the interrelatedness of culture and language. First, some influential ideas in the history of linguistics (by Humboldt and Whorf) concerning this topic will be discussed. Then, students will be acquainted with the latest developments in Cultural Linguistics and Cognitive Sociolinguistics, new branches of Cognitive Linguistics that specifically deal with culture-specific realizations in language and language varieties. These methods, which allow for a better understanding of cultural *meaning*, will be carried over to the field of intercultural communication, where functionalist approaches have dominated so far. In their final project, students will be required to apply some of the methods introduced in the seminar to elicit culture-specific realizations in linguistic varieties of their choice.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**LCOM3002. Dissertation elective (12 credits)****LCOM3003. LCOM Papers: writing for, editing, and producing an academic e-journal (12 credits)**

This course is designed for students majoring in Language and Communication who wish to pursue advanced work in a specialized area, while at the same time gaining practical experience of the editing and production process of an academic e-journal (LCOM Papers) in the form of a 'mini-internship'. Students should consult the course co-ordinator before registering for the course. Students will meet regularly with the course co-ordinator for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials and are expected to produce a paper of sufficient standard for inclusion in the journal. This should reflect the results of original research into a relevant area. Students will also participate in the management and editorial processes involved in bringing out the journal. This course is open to final year students only. This course will serve both as a mentorship programme for potential MPhil students, and as training in skills relevant to the workplace, including cooperation and team-work, IT, drafting, editing and the presentation and organization of ideas, time-management and logistics.

Assessment: 100% coursework

***First Year***

Students intending to declare a major in Language and Communication in their second and third years must complete the following course in their first year of study:

LCOM1001. Introduction to language and communication (6 credits)

Students are also reminded that they must complete either the prerequisite courses for a major in one of the following areas:

Chinese (major in Chinese Language and Literature or Translation only)

English

French

German

Japanese Studies

Linguistics

Linguistics and Philosophy

Spanish

OR

the prerequisites for a minor in one of the following areas:

Arabic

Italian

Portuguese

Swedish

Thai

Students are also strongly advised to take LING1001 Introduction to Linguistics, because this course is a prerequisite for all courses taught in the Linguistics department in the second and third years of study

***Second and Third Years***

Students declaring a major in Language and Communication must, as a co-requisite, declare either a second major from List A or a minor from List B (below)

List A	List B
Chinese	Arabic
English	Italian
French	Portuguese
German	Swedish
Japanese Studies	Thai
Linguistics	
Linguistics and Philosophy	
Spanish	

The major in Language and Communication consists of courses totaling 48 credits from the following lists, of which 24 credits must be from the 'core' courses (including LCOM2001 and LCOM3001) and 24 credits from the 'elective' courses to be chosen from courses offered by at least two different departments.

***The Minor***

A minor in Language and Communication consists of second- and third-year courses totaling 24 credits from the Language and Communication syllabus. LCOM2001 and LCOM3001 are compulsory courses; for the 12 remaining credits, one course (6 credits) from the list of core courses has to be chosen, and one course (6 credits) from the list of electives.



## Core courses

The two following courses are compulsory for all students taking the major:

- LCOM2001. Theories of language and communication (6 credits)
- LCOM3001. Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)

The remaining 12 credits may be selected from the following list, but for non-LCOM courses, only one course (6 credits) may be chosen from among the courses offered by any individual department:

- CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)
- CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)
- CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory (6 credits)
- CLIT2072. Deconstruction (6 credits)
- LCOM2002. Language in the workplace (6 credits)
- LCOM2003. Language and politeness (6 credits)
- JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I - Comparative phonology (6 credits)
- JAPN3021. Communication and society (6 credits)
- JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)
- LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds (6 credits)
- LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)
- LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)
- LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)
- PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese (6 credits)
- PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)

## Electives

Majors must select courses totaling 24 credits from the following list of electives, ensuring that the courses selected are from at least two different departments.

- CHIN2138. Chinese etymology (6 credits)
- CHIN2139. Chinese phonology (6 credits)
- CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)
- CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)
- CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)
- CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)
- CHIN2334. Power of speech in written translation (3 credits)
- CHIN2337. Journalistic translation (3 credits)
- CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)
- CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (3 credits)
- CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory (6 credits)
- CLIT2007. Film culture I (6 credits)
- CLIT2026. Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)
- CLIT2064. Hong Kong culture: Popular culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2065. Hong Kong culture: Representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)
- CLIT2072. Deconstruction (6 credits)
- CLIT2088. Critical approaches to film studies (6 credits)
- ENGL2002. Language in society (6 credits)
- ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)
- ENGL2004. English syntax (6 credits)
- ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)

- ENGL2031. The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)  
 ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)  
 ENGL2046. English words (6 credits)  
 ENGL2047. English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)  
 ENGL2048. Language and jargon (6 credits)  
 ENGL2049. The history of English: sociolinguistic perspectives (6 credits)  
 ENGL2050. English corpus linguistics (6 credits)  
 ENGL2054. Race, language and identity (6 credits)  
 ENGL2058. Narrative prose: a linguistic investigation (6 credits)  
 ENGL2062. The history of Western linguistics (6 credits)  
 ENGL2064. Advanced English syntax (6 credits)  
 ENGL2065. Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)  
 ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)  
 ENGL2069. Form and meaning (6 credits)  
 ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)  
 ENGL2094. Cultural approaches to second language varieties of English (6 credits)  
 ENGL2099. Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)  
 ENGL2100. Language and social interaction (6 credits)  
 ENGL2103. Language and new media (6 credits)  
 ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)  
 ENGL2112. An introduction to the history of English (6 credits)  
 ENGL2115. Theories of Language Acquisition I (6 credits)  
 ENGL2116. Theories of Language Acquisition II (6 credits)  
 ENGL3036. Research seminar in English linguistics (6 credits)  
 ENGL3037. Research seminar in language & society (6 credits)  
 EUST2010. European identity (6 credits)
- JAPN3021. Communication and society (6 credits)  
 JAPN2027. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II - Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)  
 JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)
- LCOM2002. Language in the workplace (6 credits)  
 LCOM2003. Language and politeness (6 credits)  
 LCOM3002. Dissertation elective (12 credits)  
 LCOM3003. LCOM Papers: writing for, editing, and producing an academic e-journal (12 credits)
- LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)  
 LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)  
 LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds (6 credits)  
 LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)  
 LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)  
 LING2022. Pragmatics (6 credits)  
 LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)  
 LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)  
 LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)  
 LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)  
 LING2048. Language and cognition (6 credits)  
 LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)  
 LING2054. Language and social interaction (6 credits)
- MUSI2048. Music, language, and meaning (6 credits)
- PHIL2060. Wittgenstein (6 credits)  
 PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction (6 credits)

- PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)  
PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese (6 credits)  
PHIL2510. Logic (6 credits)  
PHIL2511. Paradoxes (6 credits)  
PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)
- PSYC0038. Psychology of language and bilingualism (6 credits)
- 

## SCHOOL OF HUMANITIES

### COMPARATIVE LITERATURE

If we do not study other cultures, we cannot even understand our own. In the department, we study literature from a broad range of international and interdisciplinary perspectives, and in relation to other forms of cultural expression.

The department offers courses in literary, theoretical and cultural studies using cross-cultural materials and interdisciplinary approaches. Some of the main areas covered include Visual Cultures and Film Studies, Literature and Theory, Feminism and Gender Studies, Postcolonial/Hong Kong/China Studies, and New Media and Global Studies.

Our courses study a wide range of texts in terms of both form and content. Students learn to read culture in the broadest sense – analyzing literary texts, films, fashion magazines, cyber texts, advertisements, comics, popular music, and other relevant cultural productions and practices.

Such an approach provides a focus for significant interdisciplinary study in the Humanities and a training in thinking about the nature of the relationship between culture and society. The direction of interest is indicated in the description of each course.

Texts are studied in English, though texts in Chinese are used in Cross-Cultural studies and Hong Kong/Chinese cultural studies.

Courses are open to students who have fulfilled the University's entrance requirements, though priority will usually be given to students with a Grade C or above in the Use of English examination, or who otherwise show special aptitude.

In order to major in Comparative Literature first year students must normally take at least two of the 6-credit first year courses offered by the department. In the second and third years, students must select not less than eight 6-credit courses or equivalent from among those offered by the department. There are no particular requirements in terms of core courses and course combinations.

A minor shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year courses from the Comparative Literature syllabus. No prerequisites are required in the First Year.

All courses offered in the department will be examined by 100% continuous assessment. Course organisers will provide details of assessment at the beginning of their course. **All specific course descriptions will be provided in the departmental handbook and can be downloaded from our website: [www.hku.hk/complit/courses.htm](http://www.hku.hk/complit/courses.htm).**

## Syllabus

### *First-year Courses*

The department's first year programme consists of courses introducing the students to cross-cultural and trans-disciplinary perspectives on comparative literary, cultural and visual studies. There will normally be at least one 6-credit course offered in each semester.

#### **CLIT1001. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies I: Film studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will introduce students to the techniques and practice of film through the study of a historically and culturally varied range of cinematic productions. Both international and local cinema will be studied. The aim of the course is to enable students to read the language of film.

---

#### **CLIT1002. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies II: Gender studies (6 credits)**

Feminism, gender and sexuality, masculinity and femininity – indeed, even what we mean by ‘men’ and ‘women’ – are all areas of contemporary debate and always topical. This course introduces you to the subject of Comparative Literature by introducing the issues, which will remain important throughout your three years of study. We will look at what is meant by ‘gender’ through critical readings of some crucial texts, and we will support examination of these texts by reference to some critical theories.

---

#### **CLIT1003. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies III: Digital culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Information technology nowadays has become such an encompassing cultural phenomenon that no one, not even the avowed technophobe, can ignore it. For a university student, competency in computer technology does not guarantee that she/he can comprehend the theoretical implications of the new technology. Against this backdrop, the present course aims at providing students with an up-to-date overview of the technology-imbuend society that we live in. Although the course is based upon literary and cultural approaches, it is also designed to be beneficial to students majoring in other disciplines. Advanced knowledge of computer technology is not a prerequisite for this course. Instead, students can take advantage of the workshop sessions to learn or refine skills in web surfing, web-related research, and the design of simple web-sites.

***This course meets the University's IT requirement.***

---

#### **CLIT1004. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies IV: Colonial and postcolonial culture – Hong Kong and beyond (6 credits)**

The course explores the importance of the cultural representations of colonizer and colonized in forming the way we imagine the world today. Through film, fiction and other texts, students will study colonial practices, and the responses of the colonized. Hong Kong, China and Chinese people will form an integral part of the course.

**CLIT1005. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies V: Disney and global capital (6 credits)**

Disney is the name of an American business, and a world-wide phenomenon which is now coming to Hong Kong. Disney's animated feature films, starting with *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs* (1937) and *Pinocchio* (1940) and *Fantasia* (1940) through to *The Lion King* (1994), *Pocahontas* (1995) and *Mulan* (1998) have dominated cinema through their spectacle and visual pleasure as well as through the songs and the soundtrack. The trend in the latest Disney films has been to deal with subjects from outside America - Africa, China, or America's Amerindian population. Disney theme-parks, whether in Los Angeles or Florida, or Paris or Tokyo (and now Hong Kong) raise the question of how much Disney has been responsible for globalization, and for making globalization the same as Americanization.

In this course, we will look at Disney films and cartoon characters as examples of American ideology and of the presentation of the American way of life; we will analyse how the pleasure that they give works; we will look at Walt Disney as the originator of a business corporation and at the politics of global capitalism; we will ask how to read a Disney film, and examine what globalization means in the context of different Disney theme-parks.

**CLIT1006. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies VI: Cultural studies (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to some of the fundamental issues which are raised when we ask what "culture" is and how it forms us and creates our ways of thinking, talking and creating. To study a text or a film, a painting, or a piece of music, is not just to attend to the individual work, but to think about its context, and what permits its existence in that culture. To begin to read a text may mean to read a culture. There are three emphases in this course. The first thinks about the relation of culture to ideology. How do the narratives that we read, the films we see, present us with an unconscious ideology? And why is the study of culture as ideology so important? The second is the plurality of different cultural voices that we are surrounded by: "high" and "low," "elitist" and "popular." Is it useful to distinguish these? How can "cultural studies" read both types of cultural products adequately? The third emphasis is on how different cultural forms or expressions contest and perhaps subvert official cultures, and ideological positions.

**CLIT1008. Ways of Reading: film, literature, and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The objective of this course is to introduce to students different approaches and techniques to read a wide range of texts such as short stories, poems, films, photographs, fashion statements, architecture, the city and urban spaces. Drawing on Nietzsche's view that "slow reading" is important, the course will initiate students to close and critical reading as well as the psychoanalytical practice of "reading otherwise." The topics that we will explore include the following: What is the relation between a text and its social and cultural context? How do we read an event which generates multiple interpretations? How do we analyze a film-within-a-film structure? Can we decipher the meaning of what is absent in a text? How can the city be read? As Roland Barthes says, "those who fail to re-read are doomed to read the same text everywhere." The aim of the course is to learn the art of reading through different textual strategies. Students will also be introduced to a number of foundational concepts of critical and cultural theory.

**CLIT1009. Questioning difference: gender, postcolonialism and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Through film and literature, this course introduces theoretical approaches to 3 main clusters of issues that cultures with colonial experiences need to deal with. Firstly, we will analyze cultural

representations and issues of identity politics, such as the orientalist imagination and the nationalist imagination of culture, history and gender, as well as challenges to such imaginaries. We will also learn how to analyze the traumatic experience of racial and sexual discrimination under conditions of colonialism, slavery, exile and poverty, and the possibilities of survival and resistance. Texts from cultures that have undergone multiple colonial experiences will allow students to think also the issue of inter-racial relations not just between the West and the rest, but also among peoples of colour.

---

### ***Second- and Third-year Courses***

Students taking eight or more 6-credit courses in the department must normally have taken at least two of the First-year courses. The following courses - or from time to time other courses - will be offered, as teaching arrangements permit. Students who major or minor in the department can also choose from the History Department courses (with course codes "HIST") cross-listed in our syllabus to fulfill the requirements.

---

## **SECOND OR THIRD YEAR**

### **CLIT2001. Comparative studies in narratives (6 credits)**

"The narratives of the world are numberless" – so Roland Barthes begins a crucial essay which argues that we can study different narratives and find underlying assumptions at work in them. These assumptions tie different stories back to culture and ideology and to history. This course will look at a variety of different narratives, novels, short stories and films both to discover what is of value in them, and how they may be best analyzed.

---

### **CLIT2003. Modern European drama (6 credits)**

Questions about identity and "the self" are most urgently raised during periods of social, political and intellectual crises. This course studies in some depth the work of selected seminal European playwrights in relation to the crises of their time. Included may also be discussions of changing dramatic concepts, and the relevance to drama of other media (photography, cinema, television, video). Plays by Ibsen, Strindberg, Beckett, Brecht may be included to look at the way in which drama explores the history of the modern subject.

---

### **CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory (6 credits)**

This course is aimed at introducing some basic concepts of contemporary Western literary and cultural theory. We will examine the postmodern polemics against truth and objectivity, and see how this is related to our reading of literary and cultural texts. Students who intend to major in Comparative Literature are strongly encouraged to take this course.

---

### **CLIT2007. Film culture I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the construction of meaning in cinema and the development of film language. It first investigates the major structural components of the narrative film text, such as narrative structure, *mise-en-scène*, the camera eye, editing and sound, then proceeds to introduce the major cinematic movements in film history and discuss some film classics in relation to the topics covered.

**CLIT2008. Film culture II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course seeks to investigate critical methodologies for reading film texts with a particular emphasis on psychoanalytic, feminist, and postcolonial theories. The approach will be cross-cultural and inter-disciplinary. Film texts will be examined in relation to questions of gender, sexual difference, sexuality, and subjectivity. The films to be examined may include films from Hollywood and Asian cinemas.

---

**CLIT2014. Feminist cultural studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the complex and often contradictory ways women and modern femininity are represented in popular culture. It will introduce you to some of the key concepts in feminist cultural studies and use them to critique cultural productions and practices associated with women such as romance narratives, film melodrama, soap operas, fashion, and shopping.

---

**CLIT2016. The body in culture (6 credits)**

This course will explore various theoretical approaches as we attempt to develop discourses to address the notion of 'the body'. There will be an emphasis on issues of corporeal identity, movement, and performance. We will present and discuss texts from the fields of philosophy, critical theory, psychoanalysis, architecture, literature, dance, theatre, film/media studies, gender studies, anthropology, technology, science, performance art, and cultural studies.

---

**CLIT2017. A new introduction to modernism (6 credits)**

This course attempts to rethink the concept of modernism by looking at many different forms that it took (literary, filmic, musical and artistic), and interrogating its politics, its relationship to bourgeois culture, its gender-bias, its view of past and traditional and non-traditional texts, and its place in critical theory. In the light of what remains of 'postmodernism,' it asks how the term 'modernism' is now to be read.

---

**CLIT2018. Critiques of modernity (6 credits)**

This course will examine cultural critiques of, and reflections upon, modernity and its consequences in 'the West' and the non-West (primarily China) over the past century or so. While the course will be informed by theoretical consideration of capitalist modernity and 'alternative' modernities, the central texts discussed will be primary cultural texts that are foregrounded within their specific cultural contexts by the acuity and consciousness of their critique of modernity. Texts will be read as a metacommentary on modernity's contradictions.

---

**CLIT2021. Reading the nineteenth-century: revolution, romanticism and realism (6 credits)**

This course is one of two looking at the nineteenth-century in Europe and America through a reading of its texts: novels, poetry, painting, music, philosophical speculation, and psychoanalysis. Both courses are complete in themselves, but make most sense taken together. The first part looks at texts from the time of the French Revolution (1789) on to the Great Exhibition of 1851 - the triumph of bourgeois culture and of consumption over revolutionary aspiration.

**CLIT2022. Reading the nineteenth-century: reaction and modernity (6 credits)**

This is the second of two courses reading texts from the nineteenth-century. Fastening on the three 'masters of suspicion' in the nineteenth-century - Marx, Nietzsche, Freud - it reads the triumph of realism and of bourgeois culture, and examines ways in which this culture was critiqued. Teaching will look at literary texts drawn from European cultures - Russia, France, Germany, Britain, and America.

---

**CLIT2023. Heterologies: the discourse of the other (6 credits)**

'Heterology' is 'the science of what is completely other'. It, and the course, looks at a range of ways in which the 'other' appears in literary texts - as the colonial savage, as mad, as mystic, as criminal, as sexually deviant, or in relation to fascism.

---

**CLIT2024. Reading comedy: Dante and Boccaccio (6 credits)**

There are two texts derived from the Italian Renaissance to be used for this course: Dante's *Comedy*, which divides into three - *Inferno*, *Purgatory* and *Paradise*, and Boccaccio's *Decameron*. These are crucially important and formative texts, the second a response to the first, which deserve re-reading both in order to confront texts of the past, and in the light of contemporary theoretical approaches from new historicism, from feminism, from work on the body and on sexuality and the city. We will examine the new forms of narrative that emerged with the urban and bourgeois culture of fourteenth-century Florence, with its new attention to the subject as individual and as communal. Above all, we will be considering what is meant by 'comedy' and why both Dante and Boccaccio work within its terms.

---

**CLIT2025. Visual cultures (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

It has often been said that ours is pre-eminently a culture of the visual, a 'Society of the Spectacle'. This course introduces students to one of the key developments in cultural theory today: a study of how visual cultures are formed, and how they inform the ways we see, feel and think. There is indeed 'an optical unconscious' made up of the criss-crossings of desire, ideology and reproductive technologies (or Freud, Marx and SONY), which manifests itself from ephemeral fashions to the permanencies of architecture. What the course will focus on, however, are specific examples of changes and innovations in visual culture found in art, photography, cinema, architecture, video, and urban life; and in particular, all the examples of visual material that problematize visibility. We will also attempt to draw out the implications of such problematic visualities for critical and cultural theory.

---

**CLIT2026. Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the interactions between contemporary critical and cultural theory and digital culture. We will discuss theoretical and compositional approaches in the work of international new media artists (via World Wide Web, CD-ROM, video, exhibition and slide formats as available), and create new media projects ourselves, in order to expose possible modes of critical interpretation and creation for these media. Issues of identity construction, gender, corporeal vs. psychic presence, interactivity, bodily motion and motion capture, community, interface, performativity, and representation will be discussed.



**CLIT2027. Digital culture and new media technologies II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a continuation of Digital Culture I.

---

**CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

If contemporary cities are becoming more ‘invisible’, it is because the effects they have upon us are indirect and displaced. Our experience of cities becomes more problematic as cities themselves become more complex. This course explores the changing cultural space of cities mainly through major works of fiction and of cinema, though it will include other forms like painting and architecture as well as theoretical texts. Topics for discussion include: How is urban experience transformed by colonialism/imperialism, technology, information? What are the different ways of reading the city? Is Hong Kong a ‘Chinese city’? How can the city be read as a cultural text? Students are advised to take this course in their third year of study.

---

**CLIT2031. Fashion theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Fashion lies somewhere between ‘art’ and ‘consumption’, and for mysterious reasons (according to historian Eric Hobsbawm) often anticipates future cultural tendencies better than both. We will discuss the relation of fashion to art, media, spectacles, and marketing; to questions of identity and self-fashioning; to images of the body and ideas of femininity and masculinity; to notions of style and anti-style (e.g. jeans as degree zero fashion); to looking and having ‘the look’. Throughout, the focus will be on the surprising impact of fashion on culture, particularly contemporary culture.

---

**CLIT2035. Writing madness (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Drawing on recent critical theory, the course will use both texts which have been described as mad, including those by Sylvia Plath, Charlotte Gilman, Holderlin, Blake, and Artaud; as well as look at representations of madness, e.g. in the writings of Gogol, Lu Xun, Dostoyevsky, and Henry James, or in films like *Psycho* or *Seven*. It will ask whether it is possible to think of writing a history of madness, without misrepresenting madness as ‘other.’ It will also distinguish between melancholia and manic states, hysteria and schizophrenia, while recognising that these terms themselves, instrumental in the construction of madness, are part of the problem.

---

**CLIT2037. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of the course is twofold: to serve as an introduction to some representative works in contemporary Chinese literature and film, and to analyze the representation of women in contemporary Chinese culture through these works. A key characteristic of contemporary Chinese literature and film is its obsession with gender and sexuality. Since the end of the Mao era and the beginning of the market reforms in the late 70s, “sex” has replaced “class” as one of the most frequently circulated motifs in the mass media and a new trend has thus emerged in contemporary

Chinese literature and film with exclusive focus on issues of gender and sexuality. We will discuss this new phenomenon through two groups of writings: patriarchal representation of women and women's self-representation.

---

**CLIT2042. Reading confessing (6 credits)**

The objective of this course is to examine the relationship between literature and confession by examining some important works of literature produced in the West and the East. The nature and significance of the discourse of confession and how it inflects literary textuality is central to the purpose of this course.

---

**CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)**

This course studies a number of topics central to colonial/postcolonial studies such as Orientalism and Occidentalism, colonial and postcolonial identities, sexuality and colonial discourse, and gender and imperialism. These issues will be examined from a cross-disciplinary and comparative perspective and the primary sources used include travel narratives, novels, films, advertisements, and tourist brochures.

---

**CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

When Michael Jordan becomes the most popular sports figure in Mainland China and South Africa, does this mean that we are all becoming more alike? Or are we splitting apart, as the rise of new nationalisms in Yugoslavia and India would seem to indicate? Why has rap music become globally popular? This course will look at a variety of contemporary phenomena from pop culture to nationalism in terms of the global processes of circulation and transformation that are changing the world we live in. Special attention will be paid to Hong Kong culture and its changing role in Asia and the world.

---

**CLIT2051. Jane Austen and popular culture (6 credits)**

This course will read Jane Austen's novels through the visual medium of television series, film adaptations and the internet. It will consider the successful translation of Austen from high to popular and to global cultural form. It will study the ways in which her novels have been re-invented to reflect issues of contemporary importance such as feminism with its critique of marriage and masculinity and its call for more open expression of desire and sexuality. It will historicize this revision by analyzing the status of women, the role of the family and the importance of courtship in Austen's original novels.

---

**CLIT2052. Chinese urban culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

With specific reference to major Chinese cities, for example Beijing, Shanghai, Taipei, and Hong Kong, the course is designed to examine how forces of modernization, colonialism and globalization have drastically transformed these cities. It explores problems of urban culture and the changing meaning of 'Chineseness' through major works of fiction, cinema, architecture and other relevant cultural texts. Although no prerequisites are required, students are advised to study CLIT2028 'The City as Cultural Text' before taking this course.

**CLIT2057. Carnival versus tragedy: Reading renaissance culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course looks at how we can read the 'early modern' period in Europe – from the fifteenth century (the period of planning the ideal city and designing the ideal body, of the development of the printed book and of the colonization of America) to the seventeenth centuries. It uses the twin concepts of carnival and tragedy to look at the theatre, at representations of the body, monstrous and grotesque, and for an examination of state power and resistances to it. Texts include works by Machiavelli, Rabelais, Shakespeare and Racine.

---

**CLIT2058. Histories of sexuality (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course compares the theoretical approaches of Freud and Foucault to sexuality – a history of repression versus a history of the production of the subject – by looking at a number of literary and cultural texts whose interest for us is how they make problematic and fascinating either theory of the subject. Included will also be discussions of other critics and theorists (e.g. Judith Butler, Julia Kristeva, Eve Sedgwick) who refine or critique these two major theoretical approaches to the study of sexuality.

---

**CLIT2060. Fiction and film in contemporary Chinese societies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies modern Chinese culture as it is expressed and understood in contemporary stories and films. It aims to explore relationships between narrative arts and society. It also examines literature and film in relation to each other, as well as literary and aesthetic theories, themes, genres and expressive modes.

---

**CLIT2061. Narratives of the past in contemporary culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Organized around different kinds of narratives of the past in contemporary culture, this course raises basic questions about historical representation: What is 'history'? How is it differentiated from 'memory' and 'nostalgia'? In what way is a spatial critique of culture pertinent to the study of historical representation? With reference to a range of texts such as literature, film, museum narratives, architecture and music from different cultures, the course explores the politics and poetics of historical representation in contemporary societies. Topics for discussion may include: tensions between official history and personal memory, different styles and forms of imagining and narrating history, and the role of the media and other cultural means such as oral narratives in the mediation of 'history'.

---

**CLIT2064. Hong Kong culture: Popular culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores the various aspects of popular culture in Hong Kong from the perspective of Cultural Studies. Major media and other popular forms of expression to be discussed include: television, radio, newspapers and popular magazines, popular music, popular literature, cartoons, youth, and fan culture. Theories of Cultural Studies will be introduced and discussed in relation to critical readings of such texts in order to expand the students' horizons in understanding and interpreting Hong Kong popular culture.

**CLIT2065. Hong Kong culture: Representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course traces the formation of identities in Hong Kong history and analyzes different perspectives in understanding these identities. It focuses on various forms of colonization and their influences on the construction of cultural artifacts and relationships. Various theoretical approaches and debates on postcolonialism, capitalism, and urban culture will be adopted to examine selected texts of literature and film.

---

**CLIT2066. Postmodernism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We are constantly bombarded with images by the media day and night. MTV is equally popular in the developed as well as in the developing countries. The old distinction between high culture and popular culture is breaking down. Literary and cinematic genres are being constantly mixed, resulting in composite and hybrid works. More and more Hong Kong Chinese live in Toronto, Melbourne, London and San Francisco while more and more Filipinos come to Hong Kong as housemaids. The postmodern world is full of fascinating phenomena. In this course we plan to study postmodernism by focusing on literature, cinema, art, and other cultural productions. The aim of the course is not to define postmodernism but rather to evoke and question it as we seek to make sense of the radical changes taking place in ideas and experiences related to technology, entertainment, art, everyday life and the problems of representation.

---

**CLIT2067. Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)**

This course 'replaces' Shakespeare not by removing his work from the agenda, but by reconsidering his place in contemporary criticism and popular cultural practice. Some of the topics the course may deal with are: feminist, psychoanalytic and literary historicist re-readings of Shakespeare's texts; comparisons of how international film directors, with their differing multi-cultural perspectives, have handled the problems of filming Shakespeare; and the way that Shakespeare has been adapted and re-imagined by innovative and influential modern artists.

---

**CLIT2069. The making of modern masculinities (6 credits)**

Using cross-cultural materials taken from a wide range of media such as films, fiction, magazines, paintings, TV and advertising, this course engages in a multidisciplinary study of the formation of different types of masculinities in the modern world.

---

**CLIT2070. Heidegger and everydayness (6 credits)**

As one of the most important Western thinkers of the 20th century, Heidegger addresses fundamental questions of human existence in ways that speak directly to our everyday experiences. For instance, why do we sometimes feel that life is meaningless, and how do we try to avoid this feeling? This course will introduce you to some of Heidegger's core ideas through a study of his masterpiece *Being and Time*, which has had a profound impact not only on philosophy but also on literary theory. Students will learn both about Heidegger and the intellectual traditions he challenged.

**CLIT2072. Deconstruction (6 credits)**

This course examines the method of deconstruction around such issues as truth, power, subjectivity, modernity, postmodernity, and so on. Readings include texts by Derrida himself and by some other thinkers (e.g. Nietzsche, J. L. Austin, Habermas).

---

**CLIT2073. Deleuze on cinema (6 credits)**

Though not a film-maker or theorist, Deleuze's writings on cinema (which combine film theory and analyses, philosophy and cultural criticism) may prove to be as seminal as Eisenstein's or Bazin's. The course will introduce students to what is innovative about Deleuze's two books on cinema. This includes his radical manner of analysing films: instead of focusing on 'film language', he focuses on the kind of cinematic image each film constructs. Thus the books offer at one level a classification of different types of cinematic images. However, underlying the analyses is also a very provocative thesis about the 'history' of cinema, which Deleuze argues has undergone a crucial mutation: from different forms of 'the movement-image' pioneered by the classic cinema, to the much more elusive forms of 'the time-image' which characterize the contemporary cinema - with Hitchcock as the fulcrum around which the history of cinema turns. Finally, and most significantly, Deleuze relates both the 'movement-image' and the 'time-image' to developments in thought and culture; and this enables him to formulate, through the analyses of cinema, ideas like 'any-space-whatever', 'the crystals of time', 'the powers of the false', and 'the thought of the outside' - which take us way beyond the limits of film criticism. The great directors, Deleuze says, have to be compared to thinkers. The implication is that understanding cinema is understanding modern thought itself - its crises, ruptures and possibilities.

---

**CLIT2074. Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)**

This course offers (a) a survey of contemporary Chinese film, especially the most recent productions of mainstream cinema, and (b) a critical examination of post-Mao ideology in the context of market reforms. Topics include the following. (1) The meaning of wealth: We will look at how wealth is represented in post-Mao film, and whether this representation coheres with the Party's political program and serves the purpose of interpellating the general public. (2) The identity of the post-Mao hero. In post-Mao China, there is no longer any cinematic representation of the working class as hero and thus no more ideological interpellation of the working class as the central constituent of the Party. The entrepreneur has replaced the proletarian as the new hero of the reform era. (3) The re-sexualization of the population. The practice of Marxism in China after 1949 led to the disavowal of gender and sexuality as a suitable object of cultural representation. The population was de-sexualized, in the sense that no cultural 'signifiers' were available in the Maoist discourse to inscribe men and women as sexual beings. In post-Mao China, 'sex' has come back with a vengeance through the re-discovery of patriarchal sexual conventions, and 'woman' of a particular class has become the signifier of sexual difference.

The course will pay special attention to film language. Films will be treated as a collection of cinematic signifiers that contribute to the meaning of the texts rather than serving as transparent vehicles for plots.

---

**CLIT2075. Reading modern poetry (6 credits)**

This course will do two things: it will study some fine examples of poetry, asking the following questions: what is poetry? How does it work? Why should we read it, and how? Where should we start? What is the good of poetry?

Its time-span is the moment when Europe and America defined themselves as modern, as part of the modern world. So, it will begin with two examples of Romanticism, will continue with the urban

poetry of Paris and the modernism it produced; it will look at three very different examples of American poetry, some of it obsessed with the question of how this poetry should relate to anything traditional and European; it will conclude with the Europe of the political crisis of two world wars, after which, as Adorno said - 'Auschwitz made lyric poetry impossible.' Adorno is not necessarily to be agreed with, and much poetry would question his formulation, but his voice is important in a debate over the functions of poetry, and where it comes from.

There will be then, a mixture of English, French, American, German and Russian poetry: all of it will be looked at in English.

---

**CLIT2076. Fashioning Femininities (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the writings of some major contemporary feminists and their critical analysis of the construction of the images and roles of women. Cross-cultural materials taken from both print and non-print media will be used to illustrate feminist issues.

---

**CLIT2078. Childhood, feminine roles and cultural myths (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will begin with 'liminal' works which chart a traumatic rite of passage for women from childhood to adulthood or suggest that there might be a dynamic interplay between the two states. It will focus, in particular, on texts in which women directly challenge prevailing social myths of human development, family organization, and sexual relations. It will be especially interested in texts which proceed to deconstruct the social codes governing women, their relationships, and their scope for defining and expressing themselves.

---

**CLIT2079. Traumatic events (6 credits)**

This course will observe the workings of trauma (the enactment and working-through of collective and individual symptoms of trauma), memory, and witnessing in various modes of everyday life. We will examine notions of catastrophe, disaster, accident, and violence, and explore the possibilities and impossibilities of bearing witness in many forms of cultural production. We will examine the representation of traumatic events in fiction, poetry, architecture, critical theory, visual art, philosophy, science, cartoons, film, video, television reportage, newspaper documentation, and performance, on the internet and World Wide Web, and in the public and domestic spaces of Hong Kong.

---

**CLIT2080. Walter Benjamin as writer and cultural critic (6 credits)**

The course is an introduction to the seminal work of Walter Benjamin. His essays - on literature, translation, photography and film, culture and politics, the experience of cities - develop a theory of reading and a style of argument that are indispensable to the understanding of contemporary cultural debates.

---

**CLIT2081. Becoming post-human: animal bodies and virtual bodies (6 credits)**

We study 'Humanities', but is there a relationship between humanist values and the global crises currently being experienced in environmental damage? What differences have cinema and even more,

digital technologies made to perceptions of space, time, embodiment and human presence? That our cinematic and electronic lives have transformed us as subjects is apparent, but how they have altered consciousness and identity is for discussion. These changes have redefined the human, and 'nature' and 'human nature' and the course assumes a current overthrowing of the human within critical theory and within digitalization, and the appearance of the 'non-species' (Derrida). It looks at 'ecocriticism' and explores the posthuman body as this has come into question in relation to new technologies.

---

**CLIT2083. Film art, language and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines key ways of analyzing film art and culture. How films create meaning and how viewers make sense of the cinema frame this exploration of film as visual language and culture. The course places emphasis on learning basic film terminology and the rudiments of film form. The student becomes acquainted with classical Hollywood cinema, other national cinemas, transnational cinemas, as well as hybrid, experimental and documentary film modes. At the conclusion of the course, the student should be able to look at motion pictures critically, understand films as formal constructs, and place films within broader institutional, economic, ideological, and cultural contexts.

---

**CLIT2084. "New" cinemas across national boundaries (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to several prominent "new" cinemas after the Second World War. "The timing" [and spacing], are "something like: around 1948, Italy; about 1958, France; about 1968, Germany." They were moments and localities that gave rise to new cinematic images, "as if the cinema had to begin again from zero, questioning afresh all the accepted facts of the American tradition," wrote Gilles Deleuze in *Cinema 1*. And in his book *Hong Kong*, published in 1997, Ackbar Abbas added "about 1982, Hong Kong" to the Deleuzian timing and spacing.

As one of the losers in the Second World War, Italy escaped from fascism relatively successfully, and could point to a resistance and a popular life underlying oppression. This is favourable for the birth of a new type of narrative including the elliptical and the unorganised, questioning afresh the accepted and globalized American convention. The French, as victors delayed by being within the French dream, broke with its tradition rather belatedly and by a reflexive or intellectual detour which was that of the New Wave. And the Germans, confined by its late escape from fascism, even more belatedly dwell on the constantly variable spatio-temporal link. The case of Hong Kong, as a case beyond Deleuze's scope, illuminates a rethinking of his thesis in a global context. Between 1942 and 1997, Hong Kong was a British colony. It is in the 80s and 90s that the British and Chinese governments negotiated about the handover of Hong Kong in 1997, and thus ignited a new Hong Kong cinema as a responsive cinematic intervention.

The first part of the course examines the ways Italian neorealism, the French new wave, the new German cinema, and the new Hong Kong cinema react to their specific geo-historical situations. In the second part, the focus will be shifted to some very recent films and look back at the agendas of the "new" cinemas in the last few decades.

---

**CLIT2085. Hong Kong: Community and cultural policy in the global context (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Cultural production is becoming the new drive for the world's global and local economy. Dynamic cultural planning has been gaining currency worldwide as a way to integrate cultural demands, planning objectives, and socioeconomic goals. How does Hong Kong fare in this picture? New studies on global cultural policies show that "managerialism" and "entrepreneurialism" in planning

prioritize entertainment, tourism, and architecture, resulting in an unsustainable build-up of cultural hardware. Similarly, the West Kowloon Cultural District is an issue of competitive urban growth vs. sustainable cultural development. The heavy reliance on the hardware build-up exposes not only the lack of perspective on culture policy (the “cultural” infrastructure), but essentially, the absence of cultural planning and cultural policy. Other countries in recent years have stressed the importance of cultural policies that are sustainable, democratic and grounded in community needs. This is an intellectual and policy gap that we can, and ought to, fill. This course equips students with the capacity to understand and participate in Hong Kong cultural policy analysis and planning in the local condition and the global context.

#### **CLIT2086. Asia on global screens (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designed to acquaint the student with the diverse national cinemas of Asia and with the ways “Asia” as a continent has been depicted in films from around the world. The interconnections among various national cinemas of Asia, the visualization of Asia and its people in Hollywood and European film, and the transnational history of Asian global film culture are given serious consideration in this course. Drawing on an eclectic blend of popular and “art” films, documentaries and experimental works, we will explore Asia on world screens within political, national, economic, and cultural contexts. Special attention will be paid to film as a popular art (e.g., Hong Kong martial arts films), the representation of women (e.g., in Hollywood, European, and Asian melodramas), and alternative media practices (Asian American independent film). Although the emphasis in this course is on cinema, the relationship between film and other arts will also be examined.

#### **CLIT2087. Modern Chinese culture and society: Rebellions and revolutions (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the cultural, economic and other transformations of modern China, as reflected and variously represented in select literary, media, ethnographic, scholarly and “primary” documents from China and the West. We will study select moments of both late Qing and Post-Mao China, including the Opium Wars and Tiananmen, but the bulk of our efforts will be directed towards a neglected but crucial and still-living period: “Maoist” China, from roughly the 1930s through the 1970s. Put another way, this course will take a “cultural studies” or interdisciplinary approach to China’s quest to transform the world’s longest standing dynastic order into a revolutionary, egalitarian society. We will place the most stress on the rise, evolution, and impact of the revolution and of Chinese communism in particular, and we will ask what impacts this entailed both within China and the world at large, in terms of both Chinese development and the global Cold War.

#### **CLIT2088. Critical approaches to film studies (6 credits)**

This course is designed to acquaint the student with the principal critical methods and theoretical debates of film theory. In addition to providing a survey of film theories, this course focuses on the interconnections of theory with film criticism and production practices. A range of fiction and non-fiction films will be screened, including early Soviet, classical Hollywood, Third Cinema, French New Wave, and contemporary international productions. Theoretical perspectives include structuralism, semiology, Marxism, feminism, psychoanalysis, queer theory, post-structuralism, and cultural studies. Some of the theoretical issues covered include questions of narrative and narration, realism, formalism, modernism, postmodernism, post-colonialism, gender, sexuality, ideology, authorship, and genre.



**CLIT2089. Culture and 'queer' theory (6 credits)**

'Queer theory' has been developed over the past fifteen years in order to deal with the expanding subject of lesbian and gay writings and film, and the increasing representation of lesbian and gay writings and film, and the increasing representation of homosexuality within modern cultures. This course will discuss a number of the texts of 'queer theory' by Michel Foucault, Judith Butler and Eve Sedgwick, and will study a variety of texts, contemporary and historical, which in literature or in allegorical terms have represented male and female homosexuality, whether directly or indirectly. It will study how these changes of representation, and new critical theories have repositioned the subject of gender studies.

---

**HIST2082. Europe and its other (6 credits)**

This course is an interdisciplinary exploration of European perception and understanding of non-European peoples and cultures from the 18th – 20th centuries. The objective of the course is to show how Western representations of non-Europeans were shaped by the various political debates, scientific theories and colonial ideology that dominated European societies of the time. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze a wide range of primary materials that include visual documents, travel narratives, fiction, scientific texts, philosophical treatises, and documentaries.

---

**HIST2083. Gender, sexuality and empire (6 credits)**

This course investigates the ways in which concepts of gender and sexuality have been used in British and French imperial discourse during the 19th and 20th centuries to manage their relationships with the colonized peoples and to showcase the superiority of European civilization. Part one of the course examines how the male colonial identities were constructed through the sexualization of the colonized subjects while the second half of the course focuses on the multiple roles of European women in the colonies. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze different types of historical narratives ranging from archival documents, personal memoirs and correspondence, travel accounts to autobiographical texts.

---

**HIST2084. Sexing the spirit: the history of the modern feminist challenge to Christianity (6 credits)**

Surveys of mainstream feminism have generally omitted the subject of faith. They have taken as a given wholesale feminist hostility to Christianity and have concluded that religion has little importance in the life of modern women. Recent global events are a reminder however that religion remains a passionate if volatile force in contemporary culture and politics. This course will consider a history that has been overlooked – the critical engagement of modern feminism with Christianity. The course will begin with two mid-twentieth century events that have proved to be crucial catalysts in the active feminist response to Christian religion. The first was the ordination of Florence Li Tim Oi as the first Anglican woman priest in Hong Kong in 1944. The second was Simone de Beauvoir's publication of the *The Second Sex* in 1949. Li's courageous war-time decision to pioneer female entrance into the all-male clerical establishment constitutes a reformist engagement with Christianity, while de Beauvoir's rejection of Christianity as a patriarchal institution oppressive to women reflects a more radical and uncompromising stance. Their two positions can be read as representational of the compatibility/incompatibility, reform/revolutionist debate that feminists have had with Christianity since the rise of second wave feminism in the 1960s.

---

**HIST2085. The history of modern sexual identity and discourse (6 credits)**

This course will focus on two 'new sciences' arising in the late nineteenth century that have shaped the modern understanding of sexual behaviour – sexology and psychoanalysis. It will look at some of

the key thinkers who pioneered sexology – such as Havelock Ellis, Edmund Carpenter, Richard von Krafft-Ebing, and Maria Stopes – alongside the acknowledged founder of psychoanalysis Sigmund Freud. It will investigate primary sources in sexual science that have subject to censorship and not generally unavailable, until recently, for comparative study with Freudian discourse. Though the texts of sexology and psychoanalysis often start from different premises, all have been instrumental in the development of modern sexual language, assumptions and practices. It will contextualize their collective thinking by considering the impact of the emergent women's movement, of Darwin's evolutionary theory, of urban culture, and of secular modernity. It will study the historiographical debate (particularly among gay and feminist theorists) as to whether these early investigators of sexology and psychoanalysis formulated progressive or repressive, revolutionary or conservative definitions of sexuality. It will explore the far-reaching consequences that these thinkers have had on attitudes to the body and people in the form of reproductive control, eugenics, race, homosexuality, the 'woman question,' and the politics of sexual identity.

## FINE ARTS

The Department of Fine Arts teaches the history and theory of art. European, American, Chinese, Japanese and Indian artistic traditions are all examined in depth, and the broader international context of art making is also considered. An introduction to museum studies is also offered. Students may major in Fine Arts, or take a disciplinary minor, but will also discover many fruitful combinations between Fine Arts courses and those of other Arts and Social Science disciplines.

Students wishing to major in Fine Arts must normally pass **FINE1001** or **FINE1004** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** in their first year and must choose not less than 48 credits from among those courses offered by the department in the second and third years. Of these 48 credits, at least 6 credits must be in Western art and at least 6 credits must be in Asian art.

There are no other specific requirements as to core courses or course combinations for majors, but prospective students are asked to note that individual second and third year courses in the Fine Arts Department may require **FINE1001** or **FINE1004** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** as a prerequisite. Other prerequisites for second- and third-year courses are listed in the course descriptions. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived. All major and other course selections are subject to the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

A disciplinary minor in Fine Arts shall consist of 24 credit units of Second and Third Year courses from the Fine Arts syllabus taken in the third to sixth semesters. As a pre-requisite, students must normally pass **FINE1001** or **FINE1004** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** in their first year. Students are asked to note that certain Second and Third year courses have specific prerequisites. Otherwise, all Second and Third year Fine Arts courses may be taken to fulfill the minor requirement.

The form of assessment (i.e. percentage weighting of coursework and/or examination) for each course is specified in the course descriptions. Coursework assessment will be based on the student's performance in tutorials, seminars, written work and other practical work as specified by the course instructor.

## FIRST YEAR

### **FINE1001. Introduction to western art history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce students to the art of Europe from the periods of ancient Greek and Roman civilization to the art of the twentieth century. Major developments in painting and sculpture will be studied, with the aim of giving students an understanding of the main characteristics of the art

produced, and the relationship of art to the culture in which it was created. No previous knowledge of art history is assumed.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

---

#### **FINE1004. Introduction to Chinese art history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course gives an overview of the development of different forms of Chinese art in history. Students are introduced to the concept of visual analysis and art appreciation. Discussions are based on several generic themes, such as the nature of the pieces, the effects of ideology, and the influence of the ruling dynasties. In the course of the study, the social context under which the art pieces were made is constantly highlighted. No previous knowledge of art history is expected.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

#### **FINE1006. Art and society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces visual and critical skills for interpreting the art of different cultures from both the past and the present. We examine a variety of themes related to the techniques and functions of art, and we study the way art expresses various moral, social, political, and religious ideas. Students will gain a better understanding of cross-cultural communication and will learn how to analyze the powerful visual culture of the contemporary world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **FINE1007. Introduction to photography theory and practice (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to introduce students to principles of contemporary photography theory and a critical practice of the photographic medium. In addition to the teaching of basic photographic techniques, the course will also discuss how we can assess photographs with critical tools such as aesthetics and cultural theories.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **FINE1008. Introduction to Asian art history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey course introduces major themes in art from early formations of Asian civilizations to the twenty-first century. Students investigate the various forms of art production in China, Japan, India and Southeast Asia with an emphasis on the means by which art creates meaning in diverse Asian cultures. Themes include issues such as patronage, personal style, artistic autonomy, art institutions and collecting practices.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **SECOND AND THIRD YEARS**

The following courses are open to both second and third year students. Prerequisites, if required, are stated in the course descriptions. If staffing arrangements permit, the following courses will be offered:

**FINE2012. Italian Renaissance art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the painting and sculpture of Italy from about 1300 to 1550. Beginning with Giotto's new approach to painting, the course will explore artistic developments in Italy throughout this period, concluding with a study of the art of the High Renaissance. The impact of the Antique and the interest in mathematics, characteristic of the Italian Renaissance, will be among the topics discussed.

Assessment: 65% coursework, 35% examination.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE 1008.

---

**FINE2013. Northern Renaissance art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the art produced in Flanders, France, and Germany between about 1300 and 1550, focusing primarily on painting and printmaking. It will begin with early 14th century illuminated manuscripts and the subsequent development of the International Style. It will then consider Flemish 15th century painting in some detail, concluding with a study of Flemish and German art of the 16th century.

Assessment: 65% coursework, 35% examination.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**FINE2020. American art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys painting, sculpture, photography, and architecture in the United States from European settlement to 1945. The underlying theme will be the ways in which art in the United States has helped project various new ideologies and values associated with this young and unique nation. Issues to be considered in relation to art will include Protestant values, democracy, wilderness, racial conflict, capitalism, popular culture, and America's gradual rise to power.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2025. The art of the Baroque (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the art of the 17th century in Italy, Flanders, Spain, the Netherlands and France. The emphasis will be on painting, although sculpture will be studied as well. Particular attention will be given to the impact of the Counter Reformation, the features of Baroque naturalism, the use of allegory, and attitudes towards the antique by artists of this period.

Assessment: 65% coursework, 35% examination.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**FINE2026. The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)**

This course examines the radical transformation in European art from the age of kings to the age of revolutions, c.1750-1840. Painting, sculpture, and printmaking will be discussed in relation to various historical developments, including the decline of aristocratic culture and Christianity; the rise of science, industry, and democracy; and new, Romantic notions of nature, individuality, nationalism, and primitivism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

**FINE2027. The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)**

This course examines the early formation of modern European visual culture, from Realism to Impressionism. The underlying historical theme will be the rise of bourgeois society. Painting, sculpture, printmaking, and photography will be discussed in the context of related ideological issues such as industrial capitalism, mass media, urban leisure, tourism, new gender roles, and European imperialism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**FINE2028. Vision in crisis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In art, as in other fields of knowledge, the late 19th century and the early 20th century was a time when pre-existing assumptions were challenged in a radical way. To certain artists in Europe, for instance, illusionistic realism or the conventions of perspective no longer seemed adequate tools for representing the world and our experience of it. Amongst the factors provoking this crisis of vision was an increasing awareness of other cultures and their differing modes of visual representation, and many non-Western artists shared with their Western counterparts this new sense of the relativity of cultural knowledge, although they tended to respond to it in different ways. *Vision in Crisis* will examine this moment of great artistic change, focusing primarily on European examples, with Chinese art being taken as the main non-Western case for study. Artists whose work may be discussed in depth include Van Gogh, Gauguin, Cézanne, Picasso and Matisse.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Although certain 20th century artists can be taken as celebrating the modern, many artists offered instead a critical engagement with the newly-emerging forms of experience they were encountering, or sought various forms of escape from them. While the response of European artists to the modern condition is most well known, artists from other parts of the world were equally engaged with the task of creating an art adequate to the new environment in which they found themselves. Both will be considered in this course, which will focus primarily on European art of the first half of the 20th century. Chinese art will provide the main non-Western case for study. Abstract art, Futurism, Expressionism, Dada and Surrealism may all be considered.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Paris has been described as the capital of the 19th century, and indeed one can talk of a European cultural hegemony that lasted until the outbreak of the Second World War. The postwar period, however, saw a migration of cultural authority across the Atlantic to the United States, and with the ending of the Cold War American cultural dominance seemed to become even more deeply entrenched. If the close of the colonial era did not then eliminate the asymmetry of power between Western and non-Western cultures, it did at least alter the conditions for artistic production in the latter. Furthermore, with an increasing pace of globalization at the end of the century, the opportunities for non-Western artists to reach new audiences have expanded enormously. This course will begin with a

consideration of Pollock and Abstract Expressionism, and later developments in American art will be a major focus of the course, which will also be concerned to document the contribution of non-Western artists. A thematic approach will be adopted, with tendencies such as Pop Art, Minimal and Post-Minimal art, Environmental and Installation Art, Performance Art, Conceptual and Neo-Conceptual Art being amongst those which may be considered. A wide variety of artworks dating from 1945 to the present day will be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

### **FINE2031. The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Tracing the development of Western architecture from ancient Greece onward, this course focuses on the 19th and 20th centuries, from Neoclassicism in Washington, D.C. and Haussman's renovation of Paris to the Bauhaus in Germany and the international spread of Modernism and Postmodernism. Emphasis is placed on the way buildings express institutional ideologies, as well as on construction technology and architectural theory. Hong Kong architecture figures prominently throughout.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FINE2032. Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will consider the representation of women in Western art. The approach will be thematic, and examples ranging from medieval to modern will be considered. Topics will include 'good' women (virgins, saints, mothers, wives) and 'bad' (fallen women, temptresses, witches), as well as the nude and the portrait. Both religious and secular images will be considered.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Tracing the rise of global visual cultures, this course examines artistic interactions between Western and non-Western cultures brought on by colonialism, war, trade, and scientific exploration in the period 1750-1900. We study how European and American artists viewed the cultures they encountered in China, Japan, India, the Near East and elsewhere, as well as how non-Westerners viewed the West. Emphasis is placed on the varied processes of cultural interaction and on the importance of such interaction for the development of modernity in different cultural contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FINE2034. Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce Hong Kong art and related aspects of Hong Kong visual culture. It will be taught in a workshop format, and will provide the opportunity for students to develop skills in art criticism as well as an understanding of Hong Kong art history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: At least one FINE2000 level course.

**FINE2035. Photography and the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies the history of photography in the nineteenth century: its invention and technological evolution, its various early practices, and its interactions with other cultural practices. In discussing these topics it also investigates the social, cultural and ideological problems to which the medium gave rise especially in the Western world and the era of modernity. Some introductory practical lessons and field trips are included so that students can have a better understanding of the actual photographic process.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course investigates the history of photography in the twentieth century. It charts how earlier photographic practices evolved and were transformed in the new era, and traces the workings of new practices such as photojournalism and fashion photography. As modernism and avant-gardism have pervaded twentieth century culture and arts, this course also focuses on how photography responded to these tendencies in different countries. Finally, it considers the medium's role in the age of global culture and digital imaging.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2042. Chinese material culture I: Neolithic to Tang (6 credits)**

China is considered to have at least five thousand years of continuous cultural development. This course will be a chronological survey of the material culture of China from the Neolithic period to the Tang dynasty. Students will explore the factors contributing to China's rich and unique visual culture through the study of early Chinese painted pottery, jades, bronzes, ceramics and sculptural works. The course will also address the impact of historical, philosophical and religious developments in China during this period on the production and uses of art. Students will be encouraged to consider how the relationship of art to personal and cultural identity has evolved from the development of archaeology in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**FINE2043. Chinese material culture II: Song to Qing (6 credits)**

This course will be a survey of the development of material culture in China from the Song dynasty to the fall of imperial China in 1911 and will focus in particular on the influence of imperial taste on art production. Ceramics in particular have reflected the aesthetics of the Court, from austere Buddhist-influenced expression to the highly decorative western-influenced wares of the Qing court, and so will feature prominently in the objects to be considered. Also included will be the iconography of tomb figurines and stone sculpture in imperial mausoleums as well as religious sculpture, bronzes, and carving in jade, wood, lacquer and bamboo.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

**FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the relationship between image-making and cultural encounters at regional and trans-national levels, and the role of visual artifacts in the making of real and imaginative geographies. The module will begin with 16th century Jesuit missionaries propagating their “universal history” with, amongst many things, world maps, and end with an investigation of modern Chinese artists’ visions of an “East” in the global context. Themes will be organized into two or three week classes, which are designed to stimulate students into making comparisons and parallels. This course will examine a range of visual artifacts including visual technologies, such as cartography and photography, and how these have changed the ways in which we look. Although the emphasis is on space and territory, the visual themes investigated will also include portraits and architecture, as well as landscapes. There will be a one hour lecture with a one hour seminar to discuss images, themes and readings held later during the week.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**FINE2045. Colour and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Colour is a fascinating topic. What do our favourite colours say about us? Why do we prefer one colour over another? Can we define colours as feminine and masculine? Why do we say we feel ‘blue’ when we are depressed? What colour best symbolizes your self-concept? Are the meanings of colours culturally constructed? We will explore the world of colour in visual culture, particularly Asian art, using a variety of texts from art, mythology, science, psychology, film, culture, gender, literature, and even fashion to help us examine the uses and meanings of colour. We will compare the theories and techniques relating to colour of various disciplines based on different theme. Students are encouraged to be creative in their approaches in investigating this controversial topic. The core texts will be mainly books but photographs, slides and materials from Internet searches will also be utilized in our discussions.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2046. Art and the human body (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The human body has become a central concern both in academic theory and in the wider culture. The body in art functions as a sign that transcends the physical body. It represents a range of metaphorical meanings, which artists delineate through the use of context, framing and style. This course will examine art that employs various methods of representing the human body. Throughout history, the metamorphosis ranges from the unified body of academic theory in classical proportion and the Christian body made in God’s image, to the standardised body of consumer culture. In examining the depiction of the body from Asian, Tribal, and Western cultures, we will explore social, political, religious, and cultural influences in the construction of corporal representation. Reading materials will be mainly books but photographs, popular magazines, TV programmes, films, and materials from Internet search will also be utilized in our discussions.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**FINE2047. Arts of India (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the painting and sculpture of the Indian subcontinent and considers the impact of religion, politics, and patronage on art. Through an interdisciplinary approach, we focus on Buddhist and Vedic/Hindu art in its religious context and the later art patronage of the Muslim and Mughal rulers. The course will conclude by investigating the art of colonized India through the twentieth century. The various styles of Indian art are discussed in their respective historical, religious, social, and cultural contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2048. Arts of Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys Japanese visual arts by looking at the historically changing role of the artist/producer. Lectures will proceed chronologically, beginning with the tomb figurines of prehistory and ending with prints and photography. We will mainly view painting, sculpture, and architecture, but also consider calligraphy, ceramics, and fashion. Rather than attempting to be completely comprehensive, our exploration will be selective, considering both famous and lesser-known artists and works. Broadly, we will consider the ways Japanese visual culture was transformed in different periods under the impact of shifting patterns of patronage, sociopolitical development, and foreign contact. We will also conduct close readings of individual artworks to decode and understand their symbolic, descriptive and expressive values. The aim is to establish a solid critical foundation on which to develop an understanding of Japanese art history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2049. Art and gender in China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This class will examine the role of gender in the production, consumption, and interpretation of Chinese art. Classes are chronologically organized into three broad time periods covering different themes each week. Topics will include the coding of landscapes and bird-and-flower paintings as gendered spaces, and the construction of male and female socio-political identities in portraits and figure paintings. The course is not intended to provide an overview of Chinese art, but a base that can challenge traditional perceptions of what constitutes masculinity and femininity. The broad historical frame will address how socio-cultural factors influencing gender roles in the arts, culture, and society changed over time. It will, more importantly, look at how these issues intersect with questions of ethnicity, social hierarchy, economic and cultural capital, and nationalism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisites: FINE1001, FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**FINE2050. Interpretations of Chinese landscape painting (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the history and significance of land and its depiction in China from the fifth to the twentieth century. Students will examine the cultural circumstances that promoted landscape as one of the most, if not the most, valued subjects in Chinese art. Emphasis is placed on historical and interpretive issues that are important to the analysis of artwork and meaning.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001, FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

**FINE2051. Art, politics, and society in modern China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will consider the techniques and materials of art produced in modern China during the late nineteenth and early twentieth century. Our fundamental concern will be to examine art and modernity in its context: not just the art works themselves but the construction of a cultural discourse around art and art history. Topics explored will range from artistic identities and the art market to inter-cultural relations and critical interpretations of the subject. We will identify chains of transmission, search for other echoes, encounters and exchanges between artistic trends, politics, and society. Through examining art works in different medias, including traditional ink and colour painting, oil painting, pictorial illustration, woodcut prints and printed advertising, along with theoretical writing, bibliographical and institutional data, the course will investigate the conflicts that underpinned Chinese artistic development and its negotiations with modernity.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2052. Architecture of South and Southeast Asia (6 credits)**

This course is a study of the developments in architecture in South and Southeast Asia. It will offer a selective overview of the styles, theories, and structures of architecture from antiquity to the twenty-first century. This course utilizes a thematic approach aimed at understanding the relationships between private property, public authority, and power as articulated in architecture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2053. Beauties and the Beasts: Song and Yuan Painting (6 credits)**

This course will examine the relationships between imagery and text from the late Tang to the Yuan dynasty. In addition, the rise of “genre painting” or paintings of the lives of the commoners in this time period will be explored. Various literary traditions associated with the appreciation of Chinese paintings will be central to our investigation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2054. Visual Culture of Modern Japan (6 credits)**

This course examines the visual culture of modern Japan beginning with the 17<sup>th</sup> century. Areas of discussion will include prints and paintings depicting the kabuki theater and the pleasure quarters; the modernization of the city as a Western-style capital when Edo becomes Tokyo; design and architecture in the 20<sup>th</sup> century; and gender-bender modern art.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2055. Crossing Cultures: China and the Outside World (6 credits)**

This course will begin with the 16<sup>th</sup> century and the arrival of the Jesuits and continue to the present. It will examine artists' responses to the outside world and investigate how cultural exchanges were formed, merged, and clashed. Topics covered will include western science and local culture in the Ming dynasty, Manchu identity and Qing expansionism, export trade art, western impact on prints, intra-Asian paintings, and visions of the “East” in the global art world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2056. Museum studies workshop (6 credits)**

This course aims to give students an introduction to the principles and practises of working in an art museum. The course will be conducted by curatorial staff of the University Museum and Art Gallery. Students majoring in Fine Arts will be given first preference, but other students fulfilling the prerequisite may apply. Any students wishing to apply for admission to FINE3004 in their third year should take this course in their second year.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

---

**THIRD YEAR**

The following courses are open only to third year students and will be taught in a seminar format except for FINE3007.

**FINE3004. Museum studies internship (6 credits)**

The internship will allow a limited number of students to work with senior staff of the University Museum and Art Gallery or other art institutions in Hong Kong on a project relating to professional museological or curatorial practice. Admission will be by interview.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE2056

---

**FINE3006. Art history methodology workshop (6 credits)**

This course is taught in the form of seminars. It requires active participation from students, and is intended for those in their third year who have already engaged seriously with art history during their previous study. It aims to deepen students' understanding of the methods used by art historians by introducing various debates about interpretation. Students are expected to write a paper concerning an area of art history or visual culture of their own choice, in which they demonstrate their sensitivity to questions of method.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: Students should have taken at least one first year Fine Arts course, and at least two Fine Arts courses (in any subject area) in their second year.

---

**FINE3007. Independent research project (6 credits)**

Students with a focus of interest and the approval of a teacher may undertake independent study to produce a research paper under the supervision of a teacher.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE3008. Perspectives in Asian art (6 credits)**

This seminar will focus in depth on one area of Asian art and visual culture, with an emphasis on art historical strategies. Students will prepare a seminar paper drawing on knowledge of a certain area, but will further be encouraged to demonstrate a critical approach to broader methodological and theoretical issues.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: Students should have taken at least one first year Fine Arts course, and at least two Fine Arts courses (in any subject area) in their second year.

**FINE3009. Perspectives in Western art (6 credits)**

This seminar will focus in depth on one area of Western art and visual culture, with an emphasis on art historical strategies. Students will prepare a seminar paper drawing on knowledge of a certain area, but will further be encouraged to demonstrate a critical approach to broader methodological and theoretical issues.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: Students should have taken at least one first year Fine Arts course, and at least two Fine Arts courses (in any subject area) in their second year.

**HISTORY**

Courses in the Department of History are open both to B.A. students who wish to major in History and to other students in the Faculty of Arts who are not taking, or intending to take, History as a major. Students from the Faculty of Social Sciences and other faculties are also welcome in most courses offered by the Department of History, and an A-Level examination result in History is **not** a prerequisite for any first-year course.

First-year students may enroll in any of the following courses. Students intending to declare a major in History in the Second Year must enroll in **HIST1013. Doing history** and one other six-credit course. **HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies** satisfies the University's IT requirement and is highly recommended for students intending to declare a major in History.

- HIST1003 Information technology for historical studies (3 credits) [must be taken concurrently with another History course]
- HIST1008 The world at war (6 credits)
- HIST1010 An introduction to European history and civilization (6 credits)
- HIST1012 From imperial to colonial: Nineteenth century Hong Kong (6 credits)
- HIST1013 Doing history (3 credits) [must be taken concurrently with another 6-credit History course]
- HIST1014 The early modern world (6 credits)
- HIST1015 Foundations of modern China: Dimensions of Qing history (6 credits)
- HIST1016 The modern world (6 credits)

**First-year Courses****HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies (3 credits)**

This course will satisfy the requirements for the Information Technology component of the first-year curriculum. Students will learn a range of information technology skills within the framework of the historical discipline and will consider how best to apply information technology developments both critically and creatively in the pursuit of their historical studies. Students will be exposed to a variety of learning situations, especially workshops in computer laboratories. Students enrolling in HIST1003 must also enroll in another history course in the same semester.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST1008. The world at war (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

By the end of 1941, the entire world was engulfed in war, a war from which the world would emerge in ruins and permanently altered. This course surveys the origins and the course of the Second World War. Here we will examine fascism, national socialism, and German and Japanese expansionism

policies. Much attention will focus on the military struggle between 1939 and 1945: tactics, strategy, and major battles. Then we will also examine the occupation policies of the New Order, collaboration and resistance, mass bombings, social change, the concentration camps and the Holocaust in some details. The course will conclude with an analysis of war-time diplomacy, which was the origins of the Cold War.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST1010. An introduction to European history and civilisation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the development of European civilization from its earliest beginnings in the Fertile Crescent through the classical age of Ancient Greece, and the Roman Empire, to the Middle Ages, the Renaissance, the Reformation, the Enlightenment and the French Revolution. Selected highlights from these topics will be treated in the lectures and seminars and coursework assignments will seek to establish linkages between modern western civilization and its historical foundations. This course is valuable for history students, but should also appeal to others studying literature, art, music or philosophy. It will be especially useful for European Studies Majors. All students are welcome.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST1012. From imperial to colonial: nineteenth century Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course starts with looking at Hong Kong under Qing rule. It then goes on to examine the impact of British colonialism on this tiny outlying Chinese territory. Attention will be given to the colonial administration, the social scene, and the economic development of the new British colony until the end of the nineteenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST1013. Doing history (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course teaches basic methods of historical research to students who intend to be history majors in their second and third years. Lectures will introduce the context in which have developed the methods that historians use to study documents, process information, organize information, and write historical papers. Seminars will investigate each of these topics in detail. Lectures and seminars will take place in the first 5 weeks of the semester. At the end of the semester, mentoring sessions focusing on the process and final production of a portfolio will guide students as they write an essay for any other 6-unit history course. Students enrolling in HIST1013 must also enroll in another 6-credit history course in the same semester.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST1014. The early modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course offers a broad historical survey which aims at introducing students to the various interactions between the major civilizations of the world from the time of the European Renaissance until the early phase of the Industrial Revolution. The geographical coverage of the course will include Europe, Asia, the Middle East, Africa and the Americas. The course will adopt a comparative approach where possible and will be particularly concerned with the theme of globalisation. This course does not aim to be a comprehensive survey of all aspects of the history of the early modern world, but it does range widely in attempting to acquaint students with important developments in the areas of culture, religion, politics, society, and the world economy.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST1015. Foundations of modern China: Dimensions of Qing history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course starts with a series of survey lectures that cover political, institutional, social, economic, intellectual, and diplomatic trends from 1644 and 1912. These survey lectures will be followed by an in-depth study of two particular themes of Qing history, to be decided each year by the teachers who lecture this course. The historical significance of early, mid, and late Qing will be highlighted.

Learning will be facilitated by the use of a web-based “electronic textbook”. Students will be required to write an essay, do a document study, and work as a team on a project related to Qing history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST1016. The modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses upon providing a broad, non-specialized introduction to the nineteenth and twentieth-century world, and assumes no previous historical training on the part of its clientele. It will be organized around such themes as: industrialization, liberalism, conservatism, socialism, communism, nationalism, the impact of major wars, revolutions, the rise and fall of fascism and communism, the decline of the Western empires, the growth of popular democracy, urbanization, globalization, the changing status of women, cultural and environmental change.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST1017. Modern Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a broad historical survey of Hong Kong from the late Qing Dynasty until recent times. It explores the history of this Chinese city and former British colony from several angles: Chinese history, British colonial history, world history, and as a place with its own identity. The goals of the course are to introduce you to the history of Hong Kong; to introduce you to the ways historians have approached this history; and to help you think, read, and write analytically and critically.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**Second and Third Years**

All candidates for the degree of B.A. or from any faculty who have successfully completed the First Year Examination in any department may enroll in the second- or third-year courses offered by the Department of History.

Second and third year courses in the Department of History are divided into Survey Courses and Seminar Courses. Survey Courses are intended to introduce the history of a geographic area in a specific period. These courses will normally involve two lectures per week. Seminar Courses involve more advanced study of special topics in History and a higher level of training in the use of primary documents or historiography. These courses will normally offer no more than one lecture per week, but will also include one hour of seminar, tutorial or workshop classes each week.

In the second and third years students may select from a large number of History courses. These courses are open to students who have declared either a History major or a History minor, but the Department of History also welcomes students from other programmes who wish to take one or more courses in History. History courses are also offered as a component of the various interdisciplinary programmes offered by the Faculty of Arts and the Faculty of Social Sciences. Visiting and exchange students are welcome to take any of the History courses listed in the Syllabus. We also welcome students from other faculties who wish to take History courses as part of the University’s broadening requirement.

## The History Major

The History Department offers both a major and a minor in History, but some of its courses are also included as part of the various interdisciplinary major and minor programmes. The major in History is open to all students in the Faculty of Arts and the Faculty of Social Sciences. Students enrolling in a History major are also able to declare a double major in one of the major programmes offered by the Faculty of Social Sciences.

To declare a major in History a student must first complete **HIST1013. Doing history** (3 credits) and one other six-credit first-year History course listed above. A major in History consists of 48 credit units selected from among the courses listed in the following Syllabus. Of these, at least 12 credit units must be in Asian History (China, Hong Kong or Japan) and at least 12 credits must be in Western History (America and Europe). This requirement may be met by taking either Survey or Seminar courses. The courses taken must also include at least 12 credit units of Seminar Courses, but students are encouraged to take more than the minimum number of Seminar Courses. Students declaring a major in History normally take 24 credit units in the second year and 24 credit units in the third year, but there is a great deal of flexibility in balancing credits between the two years of study.

History majors are encouraged to enroll in **HIST2065. Workshop in historical research** and **HIST3015. Theory and practice of history**, but these are not requirements for the major. Any student who is interested in pursuing postgraduate studies in History is also encouraged to take these two courses and either **HIST3017. Dissertation elective** (12 credits) or **HIST3023. History research project** (6 credits).

## The History Minor

A minor in History shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year courses from the History Syllabus. As a prerequisite, 6 credit units in a first-year course or courses are required. Prospective minors are recommended to take **HIST1013. Doing history** and **HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies** as a minimum.

## SECOND- AND THIRD-YEAR COURSES IN HISTORY

**SURVEY COURSES.** Survey courses will normally be offered by the Department of History in alternate academic years. Students should consult the Department of History Office to find out which surveys are to be offered each year.

### **CHIN2225. History of the Ming period (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the fourteenth century to the seventeenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework

### **CHIN2226. History of the Qing period (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the seventeenth century to the twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, Part I: from revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the political, social, economic, intellectual and diplomatic history of China from the last decade of Manchu rule to the Communist victory in 1949. Attention will be drawn to the historical forces of continuity and change, and to the themes of nationalism, modernization, militarism, democracy and revolution.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2004. Twentieth-century China, Part II: from revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the consolidation of Communist power, the dynamics and constraints of revolutionary ideology, and the PRC's quest for modernization and great-power status. Attention will be drawn to the Chinese Communists' methods of thought and work, and to the historical forces of continuity and change.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2005. History of Hong Kong, Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Beginning with the pre-British situation, the course proceeds to examine the establishment of colonial rule, the development of Chinese social institutions such as the Tung Wah Hospital, the emergence of Chinese revolutionaries led by Sun Yat-sen, the anti-colonial boycotts culminating in the general strike of 1925-26, and the events leading up to World War II. Throughout, emphasis is placed on thematic and interpretive concerns.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2006. History of Hong Kong, Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the extraordinary development of Hong Kong after World War II. Hong Kong's relations with China, rapid industrialization in the 1950's and post-industrialization in the 1980's, the interdependence of real estate and financial development, immigration and cultural identity, social problems and riotous disorders, contrasts between modernization and westernization are major thematic concerns. Emphasis will be placed on developing interpretive understanding of historical events.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2008. Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The Meiji leadership centralized Japan after centuries of decentralization. This course attempts to assess the quality of the leadership, identify the problems of centralization, analyze the effectiveness of the solutions, and appraise Japan's achievement at the end of the period especially in terms of its international standing.

Assessment: 100% coursework



**HIST2009. Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a general survey of the domestic political, economic, and social history of Japan since 1912. Some of the developments covered will be industrialization, changing systems of international relations (including World War II and the subsequent Allied Occupation), and rapid political change and economic growth in the postwar era.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2011. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part I: 1780-1850 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The modern Spanish philosopher Jorge Santayana once declared: 'Those who do not know the past are forever condemned to repeat its errors'. Many of the characteristics of contemporary Europe have their origins in the nineteenth century: urbanization and industrial change; rapid and misunderstood social development; the centrality of Germany; nationalism, which threatens to pull apart nations and the multi-national empire of Russia; new alliance patterns that are not so new; revolutionary political change; the development of a true civil society; and the threat from ultra-right-wing populist groups.

In this course we will cover European developments from the origins of the French Revolution through the Revolutions of 1848. Major topics discussed will include the Industrial Revolution, the 'isms' such as liberalism, conservatism, and nationalism, the Revolutions of 1848, and foreign affairs.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2012. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many of the characteristics of contemporary Europe have had their origins in the nineteenth century. Today Europe has to deal with several of the problems World War I either failed to resolve or in itself caused.

In this course we will cover European developments from the unifications that transformed Central Europe up to World War I. Major topics will include the second Industrial Revolution, socialism, social and cultural changes, reaction to those changes (anti-semitism and proto-fascism), imperialism, nationalism and liberation movements in Eastern Europe, *fin-de-siècle* Europe, the decline of the multi-national empires, and the origins of World War I.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2013. Twentieth-century Europe, Part I: The European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This period can be seen as a Thirty Years' War fought over the problem of Germany, beginning with the First World War, 1914-18, and climaxing with the total defeat of Germany at the end of the Second World War, 1939-45. Tensions between the Great Powers were exacerbated by new ideologies such as Fascism, Nazism and Communism, which appeared in Europe as part of a general crisis in Western Civilisation after the First World War. An attempt will be made to evaluate the debate between different schools of historians on what Fascism, Nazism and Communism signified. Finally one of the main aims of the course is to describe, and explain, the mass murders involving the deaths of millions carried out by a new breed of leaders such as Adolf Hitler and Joseph Stalin.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2014. Twentieth-century Europe, Part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

After the Second World War, Europe was divided into two camps, with Germany itself split into Western and Communist portions. The survey of the Western camp will focus on British, French and West German politics, social change, student revolts, and the growth of the consumer society and mass culture. In studying the 'Other Europe', the course will concentrate on the way Communism evolved and changed in the Soviet Union and its Eastern European empire, concluding with the dramatic popular revolutions that so suddenly toppled the Communist regimes in Eastern Europe in 1989 and the even more momentous collapse of Communism in the former Soviet Union in 1991. As the pace of change in the whole of Europe increased so dramatically in 1989, the course ends with a series of questions. What are the prospects for European unity, economically and politically? What role will the new unified Germany have in Europe? What are the prospects for Russia and the other republics that have emerged from the ruins of the Soviet Empire?

Students studying this course would find **Part I: The European Civil War, 1914-1945** very useful.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2015. The United States before 1900 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a general survey history of the United States from the colonial era up to 1900. Emphasis will be primarily on the nineteenth century. Key areas of focus include: industrialization and economic growth, urbanization, frontier communities, immigration, slavery, the Civil War, socio-political reform movements, and the Spanish-American War. This course is continued by **The United States in the twentieth century**, though the two courses can be taken separately.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2016. The United States in the twentieth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues the survey of United States history begun in **The United States before 1900**, though it can be taken separately. It traces the United States' response to its adjustment from an agrarian, small-scale society to a large-scale, urban, industrialized nation, characterised by large organizations. Concurrently, it covers the development into a global power with interests throughout the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2018. The foreign relations of China since 1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies the development of China's foreign relations after 1949 with reference to historical influences, ideological premises and practical political, strategic, and economic considerations. Special attention is given to the interaction between theory and practice in China's foreign relations, the evaluation of the impact of China's foreign policy on international politics and vice versa, and the assessment of the major approaches to the study of the topic.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2021. Nineteenth century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys developments within the Russian Empire from the duel between Alexander I and Napoleon through the Revolution of 1905, the dress rehearsal for the Revolution of 1917 which destroyed Tsarism. This course focuses on internal developments, rather than on foreign policy; and thus includes topics such as Slavophilism vs. Westernizers, the tsarist reaction, and then reform under Nicholas I and Alexander II, the revolutionary movement from the Decembrists to the Bolsheviks, industrialisation, the Nationalities Question, and the peasantry before and after Emancipation. This course requires no prior knowledge of European history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2024. A century of business in Hong Kong, 1842-1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course traces the business history of Hong Kong after it became a British colony until the Communist Takeover of China in 1949. The topics covered in the course include Hong Kong as a centre of opium trade, the development of Western businesses, the mode and practice of Chinese businesses such as the Nam Pak Hong, relations between Western and Chinese businesses, the impact of Chinese nationalism, the world wars, the Great Depression, and communist control in China on Hong Kong business.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2025. British Hong Kong and China 1895-1945 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course follows the development of the relations between British Hong Kong and China from 1895 to 1945. On the one hand, it was a relation of confrontation, with Chinese governments increasingly using the slogan of anti-imperialism as a political weapon against foreign powers. This affected China's policies towards Hong Kong. On the other hand, it was a relation with benefits for both sides. When China was in political turmoil, people from the mainland migrated to Hong Kong. This had significant effect on Hong Kong's economic and cultural developments. This course analyzes the interaction between these two seemingly contradictory relations, with special emphasis on the rise of the position of the Chinese in the colony.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2026. Interpreting Japanese history through movies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will view films, mainly Japanese and some Western, and study the interpretations of Japanese history and tradition present in the films. In addition to being a historiographic exercise, the course will examine popular attitudes toward the past.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The modern economic world of international trade and finance is the result of developments which took place in Europe from the early Renaissance through to the Industrial Revolution. This course will examine the foundations of these developments focusing particularly on the pre-modern industrial base of Europe, the change in European trading patterns from a Mediterranean to an Atlantic dominance during the Renaissance, the growth of banking and other financial institutions in the early modern period, and the role of urbanisation as a background to the major economic advances which took place during the Industrial Revolution. This course is open to students from all faculties.

Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination

---

**HIST2031. History through film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course looks at the manner in which film has portrayed events in history, considering the degree to which film can enhance or be detrimental to our understanding of history.

Students may expect to gain some appreciation, not just of the films themselves, but of the degree to which any movie is the product of a certain historical period and reflect its values and preoccupations. This course should be particularly enlightening to students who taking other United States history courses and American Studies majors.

Students are expected to produce one term paper, a comparative study of at least two films, to participate in class discussions, and to make at least one presentation in class.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2034. An Introduction to the history of education in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will provide students with the opportunity to relate educational developments in Hong Kong to contemporary opinion and other socio-economic pressures. It has been designed to introduce students to the perspectives, methods, and resources of history as they can be applied to educational matters and not merely to present a set of non-dispute-worthy “facts” about past Hong Kong schools. As such, it is essentially a form of social history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2035. The Bauhinia and the Lotus: Culture and history of the two SARs (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Prior to the Opium War, Macao was the major theatre for the first encounter between China and the West. After Hong Kong had been ceded to Great Britain by The Nanjing Treaty, Hong Kong soon replaced Macao as the centre for Sino-Western cultural and technical interchange.

Even though before 1997 and 1999 both Hong Kong and Macao were under the administration of Western countries, both have remained a predominantly Chinese society with their own unique heritage and history.

The aim of this course is to introduce to the student the development of Hong Kong and Macao's history and cultural heritage. It emphasizes the role and function of Hong Kong and Macao history in modern and contemporary Chinese history and its cultural interactions with the West.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2037. Germany between the two World Wars: The rise and fall of Adolf Hitler (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The inter-war years between 1918 and 1945 were a time of traumatic upheaval in the history of modern Germany. After World War I freedom and democracy in the Weimar Republic were threatened by nationalism, fascism, socialism and communism. These pressures were intensified by economic tensions and high unemployment rates. The miserable conditions contributed to the rise of the Nazis and Adolf Hitler, an extreme nationalist who wanted a reawakened, racially united Germany to expand eastward at the expense of the Slavs. After finally seizing power in 1933, Hitler installed a totalitarian state wiping out all democratic institutions. The Nazi persecution of the Jews and occupation, exploitation and domination of much of continental Europe in World War II became one of the blackest chapters in the history of Europe. With the fall of Berlin and the suicide of Hitler in 1945, the German people were able to gain freedom and democracy again. In our course we will not concentrate on Hitler alone but study the outcome of World War I and the revolution of 1918-19 on the mentality of the German people, consider the problems of the fledgling Weimar Republic, and discuss the era of fascism in Germany and Italy, the nazification of culture and society, the Holocaust, and German aggression against Europe in World War II.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2038. Germany, 1871-1990: From unification to reunification (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Germany, the largest country in Western Europe, needed a long time to build up a sovereign national state and to develop a common national identity. After the unification was achieved in 1871, internal and external political struggles led the country in two devastating wars in 1914 and 1939. Following the Second World War two independent German republics, controlled by their respective superpowers USA and USSR, developed into a capitalist and communist society. Reunification was finally achieved in 1989/90 by the collapse of the Soviet power in Central Europe. The course surveys the most important developments within the German Imperial Empire, the Weimar Republic, Nazi Germany, and the Federal Republic and German Democratic Republic. We will study topics such as conservatism, liberalism, nationalism, imperialism, and socialism, the two World Wars, and concentrate on the developments and changes of the different political and economic systems in modern German history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2039. War and peace: Conflicts and conflict resolutions since 1945 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

War is an extension of politics. True or false? The objective of the course is to understand a) the nature of military conflicts, war and warfare and b) the ways and means of maintaining and keeping peace without resorting to war. In-depth case studies of major conflicts and conflict resolutions will be provided.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2040. Life in Tokugawa Japan, 1603-1868 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Tokugawa society was colourful, interesting, multidimensional and full of energy. The period witnessed great urban expansion and advancement in rural technology. Students will enjoy looking at the ways of life of Tokugawa lords and merchants living in the great cities and castle towns, and that of the peasants in the countryside. The rich cultural life of the period also makes fascinating study.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2042. The history of sport (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will focus on the development of modern sport in Europe (with a strong British focus), and develop historical themes of class, gender, age, 'race' and locality. Particular emphasis will be given to the history of sport in relation to themes such as nationalism, empire and public health, in addition to the role of the state, the media and business in shaping and controlling the nature of contemporary sport. In brief, the course examines how and why sport has been located at the interstices of gender, race and class and has produced, and been generated by, multiple and contested social identities.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2046. The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Over the past century and a half, the majority of Europeans have become urban dwellers. On an individual, civic, national and international level, every aspect of social life has been influenced by this evolution. Consequently, the study of cities provides a powerful perspective upon European history. An essential part of the process of urbanisation involved the allocation of urban open spaces to specific social and cultural functions. A key focus for public and private life, the city's open spaces – parks, gardens, streets and squares – had a fundamental influence upon the nature of urban living. As those in positions of power influenced the provision and purpose of these areas important developments in European social, economic, cultural and political life were linked closely to the evolution of open spaces in cities.

In this course the changing use and allocation of urban open spaces and the evolution of meanings of public and private space will provide a lens through which the development of modern European cities will be analysed. The importance of open spaces will be addressed with recourse to a number of key themes, including the 'greening' of cities of the nineteenth century, the construction of ideal Fascist and Socialist cities in the 1930s, functionalism and post-war reconstruction, and the 'sustainable city' of the 1990s. By the end of the course the students will not only be more familiar with historical approaches to urban 'space' but will also have received an introduction to the evolution of European cities and the changing cultural importance of public and private open spaces.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2062. From empire to EU: Culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course explores British politics, culture and society from the eve of World War I to the dawn of the third millennium. We will analyze and seek to understand some of the fundamental transformations that have occurred over the last century examining a number of prominent themes, including party politics, Britain and Europe, empire and decolonisation, and domestic social transformations. Additionally, we will look closely at how the fortunes of different social groups evolved across the period, focussing in particular on ethnic minorities, women and young people.

This will be an issues-based course, exploring themes of 20th century British history in relation to the wider European context and exploring how they have had an impact on the nature of British and European society today. The subject matter of the course will be shaped around the study of the evolving political system, the effect of industrial (and post-industrial) change on contemporary society, and the relationship of Britain to its former empire, to Europe, and the rest of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2063. Europe and modernity: cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

In this course we look at key social and cultural aspects of European 'modernity' in the nineteenth and twentieth century, exploring in particular the way Europeans from all kinds of backgrounds were defined and defined themselves in relation to work, leisure, race, gender, regions and cities. We look at the impact of new forms of cultural expression such as advertising, cinema, sport and leisure, as well as the identities (of age, class, gender, race and ethnicity) which Europeans adopted and rejected in their pursuit of ways of belonging within the cultural parameters of urban modernity. In relation to this we will consider expressions of enthusiasm for 'the modern,' as well as outbursts of dissatisfaction or irritation with modern civilization, expressed not just in aesthetic forms but also in violence against those identified as 'outsiders.'

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2064. Sweat and abacus: Overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

This course provides a broad survey of Chinese business development in Southeast Asia from the 15th century until modern times. Through four key themes of migration, diaspora, entrepreneurship and network, this course traces the evolution of the Chinese business communities overseas and examines the growth and expansion of their networks in Southeast Asia. The social, economic and cultural aspects closely associated with the Chinese business history, such as early Chinese migration, dialect organizations, guilds, occupational structure, Chinese merchant culture, as well as the transformation and globalization of Chinese business will also be discussed.

Students will be provided with an opportunity to understand the growth of Chinese business in Southeast Asia from a historical perspective. They will also have the opportunity to examine Chinese migrant and business experiences in a comparative sense with case studies being drawn from various countries of the region.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2065. Workshop in historical research (6 credits)**

The research skills and methodologies used by historians are based on the critical analysis of primary and secondary sources. Competency in these skills and an acquaintance with the various methodologies of the historian are central to advanced studies in the historical discipline, but these skills and methodologies are also highly transferable to the workplace. In this course, students will work in small groups on a research project. Learning will be through directed group discussions and coordinated individual research tasks. The course will introduce students to a wide range of historical sources, equip them with the skills to analyse and interpret those sources, and will also encourage students to develop leadership and team-work roles in solving real historical problems.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2066. Narcotic culture: A history of drugs (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

The course will examine the global history of psychoactive substances from roughly the sixteenth to the twentieth century with special emphasis on opium in China. The first sessions will trace the spread of tobacco, tea, coffee and alcohol across the globe after the fifteenth century, before the uses of opium in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries are elucidated in greater detail. We will also look at the rise of semi-synthetics, including morphine, heroin and cocaine, in the early twentieth century. The emphasis will be on the social dimensions and cultural meanings of substance use, as we look at

context and consumption rather than at questions of policy and supply only: the intricate and diverse ways in which drugs interact, collude and even collaborate with human beings in a range of diverse social contexts give psychoactive substances their particular historical interest. The rise of prohibition in the twentieth century will be critically examined in the light of new scholarship, in particular in the case of China, where the anti-opium campaigns constituted the cornerstone of a growing international movement against 'drugs'.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2067. Sex, gender and modernity in China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

This course is designed to provide the student with the basic knowledge necessary to assess the different theories and problems of gender history and sensitively and electrically to apply these skills to the China-field. We will concentrate on the first half of the twentieth century, although frequent excursions will be made into the late imperial period in order to question the presumed disjuncture between 'tradition' and 'modernity'. As the course adopts a comparative perspective, it will also provide specific examples from European history, with an emphasis on France and England. A number of case studies will be critically examined in order to highlight the strengths and pitfalls of gender history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2068. The intellectual history of twentieth-century China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

This course follows the thematic approach, with attention paid to both the intellectual leaders and the intellectual developments in China during the twentieth century. The leaders include Liang Qichao, Cai Yuanpei, Chen Duxiu, Hu Shi, Li Dazhao, Lu Xun, Gu Hongming, Lin Shu, Liang Shuming, Tao Xisheng, Chen Yinke, Chen Lifu, Xiong Shili, Zhang Wentian, Qian Mu, etc. The discussion of the intellectual waves focuses on such themes as traditionalism, cultural conservatism, liberalism, westernization, modernization, and Marxism.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2069. The history of American popular culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

From its inception as a nation, the people of the United States have been educated and entertained via modes of vernacular or popular culture. This course moves chronologically from the 18th century to the present looking at various expressions of popular culture as they developed and gained in popularity among the American public. As the course progresses, we will look for connections between popular culture in the U.S. and Asia, particularly in Hong Kong. Drawing on diverse samples of historical evidence (newspapers, magazines, advertisements, circus and vaudeville playbills, political cartoons, radio and television programs, films, and Internet materials, etc.) we will explore difference and common ground between various historical eras and their use of popular culture. Issues to be considered include: The definition of popular culture; Connections between popular culture and the construction of national identity, race, class, gender, ethnicity, and religion; The significance of popular culture in processes such as Americanization/globalization; The importance of looking historically at the way popular culture helps shape and is shaped by particular events.

Assessment: 100% coursework



**HIST2070. Stories of self: History through autobiography (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

Autobiographies – stories of self – have been published in all cultures for centuries and they are still very popular today. In the recent past, autobiographical narratives have become a powerful tool for authors who wish to express their individuality, interrogate and transcend cultural constraints, protest political oppression, heal childhood wounds, run for public office, or pay the rent. Historians looking for “evidence” of the past contained within the autobiography face a variety of fascinating (and often complex) issues. This course, designed for students who are interested in links between autobiography and history, explores the following questions: What can autobiographies teach us about the past? What are the uses/pitfalls of using autobiographies for purposes of historical research? How has the autobiographical form changed over time? What are the links between memory and identity (gender, ethnicity, religious background, caste/class, etc.) in various autobiographies? What how are autobiographies shaped by/reflections of culture? How do historians approach autobiography differently from scholars in other fields? During the term students will read, write, and critique various autobiographical narratives. Text selections will be drawn mostly from the U.S., Hong Kong, and China.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2071. Joseph Stalin: His life, policies and historical assessment (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

This course will focus on the life and policies of Joseph Stalin, leader of the Soviet Union from 1929 up through 1953. He is one of the most significant figures, not only for Russian and European history but for the entire world. His policies impacted on all countries. On a possibly positive side there was the “Stalin Revolution”, which made Russia an advanced and powerful industrial state, able to withstand the Nazi juggernaut. On the negative side, there was the Great Purges, and forced migration of entire peoples. Through repression, Stalin made the Soviet Union into one of the world’s most tightly controlled societies, and the course will examine how and why this occurred. The German invasion of the Soviet Union made Stalin a Generalissimo, and the course will examine Stalin as a Commander of Soviet forces. After the war Stalin contributed to causing the Cold War, and the course will examine how and why. Another section in the course will cover the issue of whether or not there was a Stalinism, and whether it directly resulted from Marxism-Leninism.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2072. A history of modern European warfare (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

This course will survey the evolution of modern warfare through the study of selected episodes in European (and Europe’s two extensions – Russia/Soviet Union and the United States) military, naval, and aerial history from the dynastic and commercial wars of the eighteenth century, the French Revolutionary and Napoleonic Wars, the limited wars during the nineteenth century, the colonial wars, World War I, World War II, the proxy wars during the Cold War, Korea, Vietnam, through the war in Iraq earlier this year. While emphasis will be given to the larger conflicts, such as the two World Wars, attention will be given to less familiar but still important conflicts, such as the Crimean War, the Boer War, the Russian Civil War, the Spanish Civil War, Algeria and Palestine, and the Afghan Wars. The topics discussed will include causes of wars, technological changes, military strategies and tactics, social and economic changes, genocides, intelligence and espionage, and the use of ideology and propaganda in the conduct of warfare.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2073. Prussia in the age of absolutism and reform, 1648-1815 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

Brandenburg-Prussia and the Hohenzollern Dynasty dominated the period of German history between the end of the Thirty Years' War and the French Revolution. Under the Great Elector and the Prussian Kings, Prussia became a military and political power within Europe, demonstrating its strength in many European wars. It also practiced mercantilism, religious toleration and an enlightened absolutism. The reign of King Frederick the Great (1740-1786) is marked by wars, economic initiative, and promotion of Enlightenment ideas. Prussia's capital Berlin became a European centre of science and culture in those years. During the Napoleonic period, the country was able to start a reform movement that paved the way to a modern German nation state.

The course will be organized around such themes as: political rivalries and wars in the 17th and 18th centuries; economic, social and intellectual changes in early modern Europe and their effects on Brandenburg-Prussia; mercantilism; enlightenment; absolutism and enlightened absolutism; religious toleration; promotion of sciences by academies; the development of Berlin and Potsdam as royal residences; the defeat of the Prussian army by Napoleon; the Prussian Reform Movement of Stein and Hardenberg; and the war of liberation.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2076. Germany and the Cold War (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

During the Cold War period, Germany was divided into two independent states for more than forty years: The western-oriented Federal Republic of Germany (FRG) and the eastern-oriented German Democratic Republic (GDR). Under the auspices of the respective superpowers, USA and USSR, the Bonn and the East Berlin governments developed their own political and economic systems but also a distinct way of life in society and culture. In the international scene, the FRG was a founding member of the European Communities and became one of their staunchest supporters, while the GDR found itself reduced to satellite status inside the Soviet-dominated Eastern Bloc. The 'German Question' remained open until the sudden downfall of the socialist-communist East Berlin regime in 1989 and the peaceful reunification in 1990, events, which also marked the end of the Cold War in Europe.

The course will not only treat Germany as a case study of the Cold War period but will also deal extensively with important phases, milestones and persons in the history of the divided country in a comparative approach.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2077. Eating history: food culture from the 19th century to the present (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

This course is an introduction to selected aspects of the study of food culture through historical analysis. We will discuss examples of food preparation, distribution, marketing, and consumption from the early 19th Century to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2078. Renaissance Europe 1453-1648 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The Intellectual upheavals of the Renaissance and Reformation changed the cultural and religious outlook of the whole European continent and opened the way for the emergence of the modern European state. This course therefore begins by considering the classical background to the Renaissance in Europe and seeks to explain how the intellectual changes of the fifteenth and early-

sixteenth centuries contributed to the awakening of religious dissent in the 1520s. These developments are placed in the context of the general political history of the period and the course traces their impact through to the end of the Thirty Years' War.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2079. Early Modern Europe 1648-1789 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines a crucial period of European history in which the emergence of the modern state, the birth of capitalism, and the expansion of European influence into the American and Asian hemispheres laid the foundations of the modern world. While the course concentrates primarily on political changes in Europe between the Thirty Years' War and the French Revolution, considerable attention will also be paid to social, economic and cultural developments in this period. This course therefore provides a backdrop to the events of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries which have helped to shape modern Europe.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2085. The history of modern sexual identity and discourse (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will focus on two 'new sciences' arising in the late nineteenth century that have shaped the modern understanding of sexual behaviour – sexology and psychoanalysis. It will look at some of the key thinkers who pioneered sexology – such as Havelock Ellis, Edmund Carpenter, Richard von Krafft-Ebing, and Maria Stopes – alongside the acknowledged founder of psychoanalysis Sigmund Freud. It will investigate primary sources in sexual science that have been subject to censorship and not generally available, until recently, for comparative study with Freudian discourse. Though the texts of sexology and psychoanalysis often start from different premises, all have been instrumental in the development of modern sexual language, assumptions and practices. It will contextualize their collective thinking by considering the impact of the emergent women's movement, of Darwin's evolutionary theory, of urban culture, and of secular modernity. It will study the historiographical debate (particularly among gay and feminist theorists) as to whether these early investigators of sexology and psychoanalysis formulated progressive or repressive, revolutionary or conservative definitions of sexuality. It will explore the far-reaching consequences that these thinkers have had on attitudes to the body and people in the form of reproductive control, eugenics, race, homosexuality, the 'woman question,' and the politics of sexual identity.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2086. Bismarck: The Iron Chancellor (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Otto von Bismarck, a member of the Prussian nobility, began his political career as a conservative deputy in the Prussian diet, became Minister-President and served as Chancellor of the new German Empire. He is regarded as one of the leading European statesmen in this time. During his life span from 1815 to 1898, dramatic upheavals in political, constitutional, economic and social history took place in Prussia and in other parts of Germany, which had a deep impact on European history in the 19th and early 20th centuries. Therefore, the course will not deal with Bismarck's personality and career stations alone but will study the German Confederation and the German Empire, the Revolutions of 1848-49, the Unification Wars with Denmark, with Austria and with France, German domestic and foreign policies since 1871, and major developments that led into the First World War.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2087. The Vietnam Wars (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Indochina, in particular Vietnam, had been under French control as either a full colony or a protectorate since the late nineteenth century. During World War II, the Japanese occupied Indochina, an occupation that spurred the Vietnamese to resist continued French colonial rule. From 1945 on, for the next thirty-years, Vietnam was engaged in a series of wars. In this course, we shall examine these various wars and their significances: decolonization and the French War, 1945-1954; the Cold War which featured the American involvement in Vietnam with all its bitter repercussions; a Civil War between a Communist North and a “capitalist and free” South; the War at Home - repercussions in the US and elsewhere; and the Fall of South Vietnam, Peace, and Reconciliation as a new Vietnam formed.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2088. From Communism to Capitalism: Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union after 1980 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Since 1980, the once perceived unchanging Communist Empire stretching from Berlin to Vladivostok has been gripped by huge, revolutionary changes—politically, economically, socially and culturally. In this course we will first examine the causes for these changes, including the Prague Spring in 1968 and the Dissident movement within the Soviet Union. Then we will examine Communist attempts at reform, including “Goulash Communism” in Hungary, and most significantly, the advent of Mikhail Gorbachev with his twin policies of *Perestroika* and *Glasnost* in the Soviet Union. The failure of reforms and repression all from above, as seen in Poland’s declaration of martial law in December 1981, caused Revolutions to erupt first in Eastern Europe in 1989, and then in the Soviet Union itself in 1990 and 1991. By the start of 1992, Communism crumbled everywhere in Europe. People embarked on a revolutionary transition in all fields of life and commerce. We shall examine how successfully this transition has proved throughout Eastern Europe and the former Soviet Union, and what the implications of this unprecedented change have meant for the region and for Europe as a whole.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2091. The British Empire (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the British Empire from the late eighteenth century to the end of the twentieth century. The British Empire once spanned so much of the globe that it is impossible to understand the history of the modern world (including Hong Kong) without considering the role of this empire. Topics include the cultural and material foundations of empire; the economic, political, and social consequences of empire; the relationship between metropole and colony; collaboration and resistance; the dynamics of race, gender, and class; the relationship between empire and art, new national and local identities; decolonization, independence, and nation-building; and the contemporary legacies and implications of empire. The goals of the course are to introduce you to the history of the British Empire; to introduce you to the ways in which historians have approached this history; and to help you think, read, and write analytically and critically.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2092. The United States and Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a survey course covering U.S. relations with Asia, focusing largely on the twentieth century, but reaching back earlier. Topics covered include: Principles of American foreign policy; the early U.S. China trade; the U.S. and the opening of Japan; the U.S. acquisition of Hawaii; the Spanish-American War, 1898; the Open Door Notes and the Boxer Rebellion; U.S. Policy, Asia, and World War I; the Washington Conference System; U.S. Policy in the Philippines; the Coming of World War II; World War II in Asia; the Occupation of Japan; the U.S. and the Chinese Civil War; the Korean War and U.S. Pacific Strategy; the U.S. and Decolonization in Asia; the Vietnam War and Its International Context; Japanese and Korean Economic Revival; Richard Nixon's Opening to China; U.S. Responses to Tiananmen Square; the Impact of the Ending of the Cold War; the Effect of 9/11 and the War on Terror; U.S. Pacific Strategies in the Late Twentieth and Early Twenty-First Centuries. Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2093. International history in the era of two World Wars (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course explores the history of international relations from 1914 to 1945. It aims to equip students with a comprehensive understanding of the causative factors that drove international politics in this crucial period of the twentieth century; to offer a firm basis for more advanced work in history and international relations; and to provide the factual grounding and conceptual apparatus necessary to understand the contemporary world.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**SEMINAR COURSES** Except for the Theory and Practice of History and the Dissertation elective, the seminar courses listed may not be offered every year. Students should consult the Department of History Office to find out which Seminars are to be offered each year.

**CHIN2235. Sources and methodology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course intends to provide a thorough training in research methodology related to the study of Chinese history. The ideas of noted ancient and contemporary Chinese historians will be drawn on. Particular emphasis is placed on the use of reference works and information search through internet.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**GEOG2060. An introduction to archaeology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How do you know where you are going until you know where you have been? This course will introduce students to the role archaeology has played in the construction of humanity's history and prehistory. It is intended to be a broad survey of the discipline, its discoveries, scientific and analytical tools and applications. The course will assist students in recognizing new cultural dimension within the landscape around them and provide a sound basis for further study here or abroad.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination

**HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar course will explore themes and issues in women's history/gender history in the 19th and 20th century. By focusing on Hong Kong and the U.S., students will work within a comparative framework to explore difference and common ground between societies and selected historical periods. Topics include: varieties of women's reform movements, gender and World War II, and gender and economic transformation in the late 20th century.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2048. The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Responses to and representations of young people provide a valuable insight into the values of the society and the culture which generated them. The aim of this course will be to compare changing experiences of growing up with evolving representations of the life-stages used to identify the young (childhood, adolescence and youth) in nineteenth- and twentieth century Europe. It therefore considers what it has meant to be young in different times and places. Through comparison of experiences and representations the course will reconsider the validity of terms used to describe the young, highlight the social, political and cultural motives for advancing different roles and representations young people and generate a broad insight into regional patterns of similarity and difference in the European history of this demographic group. This course aims to teach students the importance of the historical context in shaping young people's lives by addressing variables such as class, gender and race. It will also introduce students to a variety of different methodological and theoretical approaches to the topic.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2052. Social issues in Hong Kong history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Based on the reading and analysis of documentary sources, this course will explore social problems such as the survival of Chinese customs, poverty, social mobility, housing, immigration and emigration, and professionalization during Hong Kong's colonial period.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses upon the emergence and development of the Cold War in the 1940s and 1950s. It takes into account the new scholarship based on evidence from former Soviet, Eastern European, and Chinese archives since the early 1990s. Students are expected to make extensive use of documentary sources.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2074. Historical studies using computers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Computers and information technology play an increasingly important role in historical research and teaching. This course will take up a problem in contemporary history and investigate it using information technology to the fullest extent. The course is run in conjunction with a course taking place at The College of William and Mary, Williamsburg, Virginia, USA, and most classes will use internet video conferencing so that teachers and students at W&M and HKU can continuously interact. The course offers a range of skill-learning opportunities for students who intend to pursue historical studies at advanced levels. It will also be valuable to students who wish to teach history in the schools where information technology has become common under government initiatives.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2075. Directed reading (6 credits)**

The aims and objectives of this intensive reading course are to provide the opportunity for students to pursue a specialized topic with a faculty member. Throughout the semester, the student and teacher will consult regularly on the direction of the readings and on the paper or papers (not to exceed 5,000 words) that will demonstrate the student's understanding of the material. This course cannot normally be taken before the fourth semester of candidature and subject to approval by the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the departmental Undergraduate Coordinator.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2080. Classroom across the Pacific: American history and anthropology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will study aspects of American history, culture and anthropology. Like HIST2074 Historical Studies Using Computers, this course is an internet-based classroom: all lectures will use internet video conferencing and other technologies to link classrooms and students at HKU and The College of William and Mary. At the end of the teaching period, HKU students will take a field trip to the United States to complete research projects through cooperative field work with their American counterparts. The students will conduct independent research projects in consultation with each other on an issue of central focus relevant to American history and culture, to be determined each year.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2081. Gender and history: Beauty, fashion and sex (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How do societies define what it means to be a man and a woman? Everyone, whatever their age, sex or social status, has an opinion on this issue, even if this is not always articulated consciously. Often, in fact, ideas about gender - the relations between the two sexes - are assumed to be 'natural' or 'normal' and timeless. However, by analysing the question of what being a 'man' and being a 'woman' means at different times and in different places this course sets out to illustrate how these identities are socially constructed. HIST2081 aims to introduce students to the various ways through which scholars have sought to understand gender over time. Beginning with the earliest efforts to write 'women's history,' selections from the recent deluge of historical writing and new research on gender will be highlighted.

The topics to be covered will include beauty norms, dress reform, prostitution, women's suffrage, the impact of War on constructions of manhood and womanhood, permissiveness in the 'swinging' sixties and so on, down to the present day. A comparative geographical focus will be used, and the course will draw on a wide variety of material from the Early Modern period to the 21st Century, to facilitate the study of changing gender norms.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2082. Europe and its other (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an interdisciplinary exploration of European perception and understanding of non-European peoples and cultures from the 18th – 20th centuries. The objective of the course is to show how Western representations of non-Europeans were shaped by the various political debates, scientific theories and colonial ideology that dominated European societies of the time. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze a wide range of primary materials that include visual documents, travel narratives, fiction, scientific texts, philosophical treatises, and documentaries.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2083. Gender, sexuality and empire (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course investigates the ways in which concepts of gender and sexuality have been used in British and French imperial discourse during the 19th and 20th centuries to manage their relationships with the colonized peoples and to showcase the superiority of European civilization. Part one of the course examines how the male colonial identities were constructed through the sexualization of the colonized subjects while the second half of the course focuses on the multiple roles of European women in the colonies. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze different types of historical narratives ranging from archival documents, personal memoirs and correspondence, travel accounts to autobiographical texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2084. Sexing the spirit: The history of the modern feminist challenge to Christianity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Surveys of mainstream feminism have generally omitted the subject of faith. They have taken as a given wholesale feminist hostility to Christianity and have concluded that religion has little importance in the life of modern women. Recent global events are a reminder however that religion remains a passionate if volatile force in contemporary culture and politics. This course will consider a history that has been overlooked – the critical engagement of modern feminism with Christianity. The course will begin with two mid-twentieth century events that have proved to be crucial catalysts in the active feminist response to Christian religion. The first was the ordination of Florence Li Tim Oi as the first Anglican woman priest in Hong Kong in 1944. The second was Simone de Beauvoir's publication of *The Second Sex* in 1949. Li's courageous war-time decision to pioneer female entrance into the all-male clerical establishment constitutes a reformist engagement with Christianity, while De Beauvoir's rejection of Christianity as a patriarchal institution oppressive to women reflects a more radical and uncompromising stance. Their two positions can be read as representational of the compatibility/incompatibility, reform/revolutionist debate that feminists have had with Christianity since the rise of second wave feminism in the 1960s.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2089. History's Closet: Clothing in context (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What we wear reflects our individual and collective histories as well as our sense of style. Clothes offer a glimpse into the age and place in which we live. Building on recent work in cultural history



and studies of material culture, this seminar course will consider how bodies have been adorned in diverse historical contexts. We will pay attention to the way modes of dress and design reflect political ideology, nation, culture, gender, religion, class, and ethnicity. Looking for continuity across and ruptures within historical periods, students will examine various types and styles of clothing in the social/historical contexts in which they were made and worn. Adopting a thematic rather than chronological approach, students will participate in weekly discussions of topics ranging from childhood fashion in the Middle Ages to hip-hop style in 20th century.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2090. The Great Famine (1959-61) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to introduce students to the history of famine through a sustained investigation of the Great Famine in China from 1959 to 1961. From a comparative perspective, the student will be introduced to a series of historical debates on the definition, causation and nature of famines with specific reference to some of the major famines of the nineteenth and twentieth century, including the Great Irish Famine of 1845-8, the Great Bengal Famine of 1943-4 and the Great Ukrainian Famine of 1932-22. From a methodological perspective, the student will work with a wide range of primary and secondary sources on the Great Famine in China (1959-61) in order to develop specific skills of documentary analysis and historical interpretation. While the seminar will look in detail at the nature of the famine and its political, economic, social and demographic dimensions, we will try to get closer to an understanding of the famine as it was experienced from the bottom up: how did ordinary people cope with hunger and death on such a large scale? A grassroots approach will lead us to consider not only a variety of experiences among victims and survivors across the social spectrum, but also a number of methodological issues on the use of primary sources, the nature of memory and the making of official historiography.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2094. Museums and history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Museums have become one of the most popular ways of telling history. Yet many scholars argue that museums are not neutral places; rather, they are often used for a wide range of strategic purposes: regulating social behavior, building citizenship and national identity, and expanding state power. But museums also face a variety of constraints and challenges: culture, money, politics, physical space, locating and selecting appropriate artifacts, and forming narratives. This course considers these issues by looking at history museums and heritage preservation in Hong Kong. Course format: twelve lectures; seminars, and visits to local museums.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2095. The World Wars through documents (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses upon the two world wars. It aims at helping students to assess and analyze critically different types of documents generated in the process of war, and to enhance their ability to handle original sources. It is taught as a seminar course, with students required to attend one lecture and one seminar per week. The course focuses upon a variety of documentary materials, including: official reports; public statements; speeches; newspaper and media reports; propaganda; letters; diaries; memoirs; and oral histories.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST2096. The history of European business in China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The termination of the East India Company's monopoly on British trade with China in 1834 provoked a flow of European goods and capital into the Chinese market. Since then foreign enterprises of different forms were operating in various business sectors of China under the strong influence of political and economic factors that shaped European-Chinese relations from the 18<sup>th</sup> century until the beginning of the Communist era in 1949. In Hong Kong, an international merchant community including Chinese, Europeans, Americans, and Japanese, were active in developing this British colony into a flourishing entrepôt facilitating trading with and investment in China. This course intends to provide a long-term historical perspective and will examine the structure and organisation of European, particularly British, German, and French business in China including Hong Kong, explore the links between European business and European diplomacy, and look to the impact of European business on China and the response of China.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2097. Mao (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this seminar is to critically examine existing accounts of the life of Mao Zedong, whether he is portrayed as a great revolutionary, a paranoid tyrant or a mass murderer. We will do so by exploring not only a variety of secondary sources, including texts, images and films produced by historians, but also by looking at some of the primary sources which have been used in biographies of Mao Zedong, for instance his own writings, interviews with journalists, reminiscences by contemporaries and key documents from the campaigns he instigated, in particular the Anti-Rightist Campaign, the Great Leap Forward and the Cultural Revolution. Using Mao as a case study, the student will be introduced to historical debates on the significance of key events such as the Long March and the Great Famine, but also on historiographical issues such as biographical writing, the nature of official memory, the notion of totalitarianism, and state-society relationships.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2098. A history of modern Taiwan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar course examines the political and economic processes that have shaped Taiwan as a part of China until 1895, as Japan's first colony and as the Republic of China on Taiwan since 1949. In particular, the course surveys the evolution of Taiwanese political and economic development and scrutinises the conditions that allowed the process of democratisation to take place on the island and its geopolitical and social consequences. It examines Taiwan's relations with its two key partners, China and the United States, and accounts for the dynamics in this triangular partnership. Finally, the course looks at Taiwan's place in global economy and international relations.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST2099. Themes in the history of the post-Cold War world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar course introduces students to the major developments in the post-Cold War history of the world. It breaks down the historical period around the Cold War, post-Cold War and post-9/11 eras and considers specific issues, themes and case studies to broaden students' understanding. The lectures and seminars will present information on the patterns of change in the major policy domains

that have dominated recent history and influenced contemporary decision-makers and societies. The course places an emphasis on historical events between the first and third worlds, as these events often led to dramatic shifts and changes in contemporary international relations. Moreover, the course looks at various historiographical debates over the nature of historical interpretation of socio-political trends and does not treat history as a series of discrete 'facts' but seeks to contextualize the theoretical basis of different historical viewpoints and how these contribute to our understanding of post-Cold War diplomatic history, war and society. The course covers a broad range of areas that include the 'causes' of the end of the Cold War, the Middle East and international oil wars, East Asia's economic miracle, the rise of China, European unification, ethnic strife in post-communist Europe, the third wave of democratization and post-9/11 political and military developments.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2100. Eating history: Intensive seminar in food culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an intensive seminar introducing students to selected aspects of cultural history through a focus on history and food. Because this is a broad and relatively new field, we will use a thematic rather than chronological framework. We will also introduce texts and theoretical perspectives from other disciplines as they intersect with the historical research we are considering. The objectives of the course are: to study eating habits, food preferences, and culture in various historical periods; to reflect on individual, familial, and community eating customs in order to connect micro and macro historical contexts through autobiography and oral history research; to cultivate an understanding of material culture (cookbooks, food, cooking utensils) as cultural history; and to develop critical reading, thinking, and writing skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST2101. History's closet: Intensive seminar (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What we wear reflects our individual and collective histories as well as our sense of style. Clothing becomes part of material culture and it tells us something about the time and place in which we live. Drawing from recent work in cultural history and studies of material culture, this intensive seminar course will consider how bodies have been adorned in diverse historical contexts. We will pay attention to the way modes of dress and design reflect political ideology, nation, culture, gender, religion, class, and ethnicity in the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. Looking for continuity across and ruptures within historical periods, students will examine various types and styles of clothing in the social/historical contexts in which they were made and worn. Objectives of the course are: To introduce students to cultural history/material culture through the discussion of fashion and clothing; to study clothing as a historical text, learning to see continuity and contrast across various periods; to nurture critical thinking, speaking, and writing skills; and to learn to see connections between individual decisions about apparel and a larger cultural/historical context.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **HIST3015. The theory and practice of history (6 credits)**

*(This course is open to third-year students only.)*

This course aims to acquaint students with some of the theoretical and practical considerations which underlie the study and writing of history by considering the development of the discipline of history from its beginnings in the ancient world through to the postmodernist critique. The course is especially recommended to those who wish to pursue history at the postgraduate level. All students taking the **Dissertation elective** are required to take **The theory and practice of history**.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**HIST3017. Dissertation elective (12 credits)**

*(This course is open to third-year students only.)*

This is a research course which requires submission of an extended written dissertation. All students taking the **Dissertation elective** are required to take **The theory and practice of history**.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST3022. History by numbers: quantitative methods in History (6 credits)**

*(This course is open to third-year students only.)*

This course seeks to introduce students to the various quantitative approaches used by historians in their research and to provide an opportunity for students to learn to use some of these methodologies in a workshop environment. Its focus is therefore both theoretical and practical, and students will learn skills which will be readily transferable to the workplace. This course is available only for History majors in their final year of study.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST3023. History research project (6 credits)**

*(This course is open to third-year students only.)*

Students who wish to undertake a research project on a specialized historical topic in either semester of their final year of study may enroll in this course with the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the departmental Undergraduate Coordinator. The course aims at providing an opportunity for intensive research leading to the production of a long essay (not exceeding 7,000 words) which will be supervised by a faculty member with expertise in the chosen area of study.

This course is open only to History majors and minors.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**HIST3024. Writing Hong Kong history (6 credits)**

This course looks at various approaches to Hong Kong's history from the late Qing Dynasty until recent times. Rather than focusing on the history of Hong Kong, we will look at the ways in which historians have dealt with certain themes, issues, and problems. Thus we will be less concerned with dates and facts than with analysis and interpretation. The goals of the course are to introduce you to the ways in which historians have approached Hong Kong's history; and to help you think, read, and write analytically and critically.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**LINGUISTICS**

In the Department of Linguistics, students can investigate a variety of different languages and through such investigations, come to a better understanding of the shared structure and broad variation of the world's languages. The BA programme provides a firm foundation so that those students who wish to do so can go on to pursue advanced studies in linguistics.

The undergraduate programme in Linguistics permits students to combine in a single field a variety of Arts and Social Science subjects and to develop their analytic skills in depth. Students are encouraged to explore with members of staff the many relationships of linguistics with other fields in order to discover the programme that best suits their individual goals and interests.

The department offers the following B.A. majors and joint programmes and contributes to the teaching of the B.Cognitive Science Programme (for details please refer to the respective syllabi):

Major in Linguistics  
Major in Human Language Technology  
Programme in Linguistics and Philosophy

A Minor in Linguistics is also offered to students who are required to obtain 24 credit units in the department.

Courses in the department are open to all BA students, and to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes subject to their passing the first year course, **LING1001. 'Introduction to linguistics'**. All are taught as one-semester courses. Course availability is subject to staffing considerations.

### First-year Courses

Students must pass the first year course, **LING1001. 'Introduction to linguistics'**, before they are admitted to any second and third year courses in the department.

**LING1002. Language.com** is designated as an IT-integrated course. Students who do the course can use it to fulfill the university's IT requirement.

#### **LING1001. Introduction to linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a prerequisite for all courses taught in the department, and a requirement for all students majoring in linguistics. It is an introduction to the basic topics of linguistics: the nature of human language, speech sounds and sound patterns, word formation, sentence structure, and the study of meaning and use.

Students will learn about the general structure that underlies all language as well as the great variety of existing human languages. The course gives plenty of practice in solving problems, analysing languages, including Chinese and English, and dealing with data.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

#### **LING1002. Language.com: Language in the contemporary world (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designated as an IT-integrated course. Students who do the course can use it to fulfill the university's IT requirement. The 21st century will be the Age of the Internet. What is the Internet all about? Essentially, it is about information and communication. Language is by far the most important means of communication and information exchange amongst human beings. To fully appreciate our own place in the contemporary world and to make the best of the many opportunities presented by new forms of communication, we need to know more about language. This course is an introduction to language: its nature and its relationship with facets of life in the contemporary world.

- Natural Language Processing: Can computers be trained to understand and produce human language?
- Machine Translation: Can computers do translations automatically and accurately?
- Corpus Linguistics: What kinds of language data are available on the Internet? How can they be used to make grammars and dictionaries?
- Chinese Language Computing: How many kinds of Chinese inputting methods are there? Which one suits you best?

- Internet Tools: What tools are available on the Internet for the learning of languages and linguistics?
- Human-Computer Interfaces: What is “ergonomics”? What is currently being done to improve the quality of communication between people and their computers?
- Speech analysis: What computer programs are available to analyse speech signals? How can computer speech analysis help language learners?

As this course may include topics relating to Chinese Language Information Processing, students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters are advised against taking this course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING1003. Language, thought, and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students majoring in linguistics are required to take both LING1001 and this course. It offers a survey of the study of language, with a focus on the relationship between language structure on the one hand and thought and culture on the other. It is designed as a complementary course to LING1001 ‘Introduction to Linguistics’, and covers topics which cannot be dealt with in the other course due to the limitation of time. Through reading and participation in regular discussions on a selection of topics, students will gain a deeper understanding of the ways in which language is structured, learned, processed and used.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

---

### **Second- and Third-year Courses**

All courses have **LING1001. ‘Introduction to linguistics’** as their prerequisite and are taught as one-semester courses. Course availability is subject to staffing considerations.

---

### **LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

How can the computer help us analyse sentences? Can a computer really understand language? These are some of the questions explored in this course. The course will introduce basic concepts and techniques of natural language understanding and Chinese language information processing.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

How is it that we manage to have conversations in which lots of different people take part and everyone has a chance to speak as well as to listen? At least, most of the time we manage that all right. What rules are followed when we have conversations? On this course you will discover what these rules are and learn how to describe the structure of conversations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on structural and cognitive aspects of meaning which are relevant to the description and theory of grammar. Examples will be drawn from Cantonese, Mandarin and English together with some other European and Asian languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2004.     Phonetics: describing sounds (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on articulatory phonetics; the speech mechanism; the description and classification of sounds of languages; sounds in context; prosodic features; tone and intonation; and practical work.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2009.     Languages of the world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey of the world's languages covers how languages are classified into families and types as well as issues of linguistic diversity and endangered languages. The course involves regular practical work. The course satisfies the prerequisite for the advanced course, **Language typology**, and also provides useful background for all courses in linguistics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2010.     Language and dialect (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course you will learn about the difference between a standard language and a dialect, with particular reference to Modern Chinese and British English.

We shall study the writing systems of Modern Chinese and British English, and compare them with alternative systems which are used for Chinese and English dialects.

You will learn to distinguish between 'Chinese' and 'Putonghua', between 'Cantonese', 'Guangdong speech', and 'Yue dialects', and between *wenyan* and *baihua*; similar phenomena in British English will also be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2011.     Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at helping students gain an understanding of the role of language and literacy education in the socio-economic development of many societies. After the introduction of basic concepts in sociolinguistics and in literacy, we will compare linguistic situations in selected parts of the world and then take up major issues such as multilingualism, literacy education, including definitions and types of literacies, language planning policies, and how to integrate linguistic and educational issues in development projects.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2012.     Experimental phonetics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The theoretical and instrumental study of the acoustic properties of speech sounds; classificatory criteria; speech analysis and synthesis; experimental techniques; and laboratory work.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2013. Language typology: the study of linguistic diversity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

A survey of the structural diversity of the world's languages. Topics covered include: notions of language type; morphological, case marking, and word order typology; diachronic and areal typology; universals of language and their explanation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2018. Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

An intensive introduction to the architecture of Lexical-Functional Grammar, with a discussion of how this syntactic theory addresses issues such as levels of representation, lexical integrity, complex predicates, serial verbs, optimality, and the syntax - semantics interface.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2022. Pragmatics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the study of Pragmatics. Topics include: linguistic meaning, speaker intention, interpretation and understanding, context, deixis, reference, conversational implicature, inference, presupposition, speech acts, politeness, relevance theory.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2023. Discourse analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to Discourse analysis. Topics include: linguistic forms and functions, speech and writing, discourse topic, discourse structure, information structure, cohesion and coherence, knowledge representation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2024. Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to Lexicology and lexicography. Topics include: kinds of unit in the lexicon, lexical entries, lexical relations, lexical semantics, the mental lexicon, application of lexicology to dictionary compilation in various languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2025. Corpus linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*



An introduction to Corpus linguistics. Topics include: the use of corpora in linguistic analysis, methods in the design and collection of spoken and written texts, uses of corpora. Topics are discussed with reference to various languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The notion of the phoneme and its place in phonology; distinctive features; phonological processes and their description; rules and representations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2030. Morphological theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Current models of morphology, including Lexical Morphology, Word and Paradigm Morphology, Prosodic Morphology, and other models.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2031. Phonological theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Current theories of phonology, including Autosegmental Phonology, Metrical Theory, Lexical Phonology, Optimality Theory and other models.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2032. Syntactic theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course explores recent theoretical approaches to syntax, focusing on generative grammar.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we will compare the grammar of English and Chinese. We will find some surprising similarities as well as interesting differences. You will have a firmer grasp of the structure of both languages by the end of the course. In addition, you will be in a better position to undertake bilingual research or to become effective language instructors or translators.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2034. Psycholinguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to psycholinguistics and will examine issues concerning how language is acquired and processed in the mind. Essential concepts of the mental processes involved in language comprehension and production and contemporary research will be covered in this course. There will also be practical laboratory classes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2036. Child language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The focus of this course is on language acquisition, including a consideration of the stages of language development, biological basis, language disorders, dyslexia, and the differences in learning to speak and read in Chinese and English.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a general introduction to the study of bilingualism from a psycholinguistic perspective, with emphasis on various aspects of bilingual behavior, such as code-switching and language mixing. Age-related differences, the influence of the first language, the role of attitudes, motivation and learning contexts will be examined.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2038. Historical linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The purpose of the course is to introduce students to the principles of historical linguistics and the methods linguistics use to describe and account for language change. The emphasis is on sound change; however, morphological and syntactic changes are also discussed. The language data to be examined are mainly from the Indo-European language family and Chinese dialects.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2039. Language variation and change (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course introduces the students to language variation and its implications in the discussion of language change in progress. It also covers the general principles involved in language change as well as the problems of the initiation and transmission of language change.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2040. Languages in contact (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

No language develops in isolation and all show some effect of contact with other languages. The course will introduce basic concepts in language contact, distinguishing phenomena such as code-mixing and lexical borrowing, language shift and substrate influence. It will then focus on the most striking cases of “contact languages” – pidgins and creoles – and the challenges and opportunities they present to linguistics. The course is especially relevant for those studying French and will feature audio-visual materials illustrating contact languages such as Singapore Colloquial English, Macau Portuguese creole and Haitian French creole.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues with major themes from **LING1002. Language.com** and aims to create a greater awareness of the growing importance of language information processing methods. The objective of the course is to explore the interface between language, linguistics, and information technology.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2042. Educational linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is preferably taken after **LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age** and examines how linguistic and literacy issues impact educational systems in various parts of the world. The course aims to lead students to an understanding of the cognitive and social underpinnings of the interface between language, literacy and education.

Prerequisite: **Language and literacy**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2043. Language and animal communication (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines communication systems amongst animals, including bees, apes, parrots and dolphins, against the background of human language. The course also explores the question of whether it is possible for animals to learn human language.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2044. Language and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to explore the relationship between language and culture. Topics include language and thought, language and religion, language and nationalities, language and social changes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2045. Writing systems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the major writing systems of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2046. British linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a study of the major contributions to linguistic description and theory made by British linguists from the later part of the 19th century to the end of the 20th century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2047. Optimality theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces current issues in Optimality Theory, with reference to phonology, morphology, and syntax.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2048. Language and cognition (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines various issues regarding cognition and language. Topics to be covered are:

- How is language processed and represented in the mind and the brain?
- Commonalities and particularities of cognitive and neuro-cognitive processing of different languages (e.g., English and Chinese).
- First and second language learning. What are the critical factors that facilitate language learning?
- The Chinese language and the brain; language and reading disorders.
- Applied cognitive psychology of language. Headline designs for newspaper, TV program, and advertisement. Cognitive basis of persuasion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at giving the student a comprehensive introduction to basic concepts used in the description of morphology and syntax, independent of any model of grammar. Exercises accompany the topics introduced. Example analyses are drawn from various languages. The following topics in morphology and syntax will be covered: words, morphemes and morphs, word classes, immediate constituents, phrase structure, functional relations, sentence structure..

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2051. French syntax and universal grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

An overview of the major aspects of French Linguistics will be provided in this course. The basics of morphology, semantics and syntax will be covered, with emphasis on the syntactic component of the

course. Students will learn how to analyze French sentences in formal perspectives, using the basics of grammatical frameworks such as Lexical Functional Grammar and the Principles and Parametres approaches. Prior knowledge of introductory linguistics and French grammar are helpful but not essential.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING2052. Swahili structure and universal grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Swahili is the most widely spoken African language and one of the most intensively studied in many universities in Africa, Europe, and North America. In this course, an overview of the major aspects of Swahili and Bantu Linguistics will be provided. The basics of phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics will be covered, with emphasis on the morphosyntactic component of the language. Students will learn how to analyze basic Swahili sentence structures from formal perspectives, using the basics of grammatical frameworks such as Lexical Functional Grammar and the Minimalist approaches. Prior knowledge of introductory linguistics and spoken Swahili are helpful but not essential.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING2053. Language and the brain (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to the representation and processing of language in the human brain, the systems and processes that enables us to speak, understand speech, learn languages, and read and write. Through attending the course, students will acquire in-depth knowledge of how language is developed, processed, and organized in the brain. Traditional as well as most recent research from linguistics, cognitive neuroscience (e.g. brain imaging) and the study of language disorders will be reviewed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING2054. Language and social interaction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many social actions are accomplished through talk. This course introduces students to recent studies of social interaction and language use in a variety of social and institutional contexts. Distinctive features of institutional interaction are identified and discussed with reference to ordinary conversation. Implications of the analysis of institutional talk for our understanding of language and social interaction will also be considered.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING2055. Reading development and reading disorders (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to provide a deep understanding of reading development and reading disorders in different written languages. Through attending the course, students should be able to understand how different cognitive processes contribute to the development of skilled word reading and text

comprehension and what possible problems children may encounter during the course of reading development. Effective treatment and instruction approaches will also be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### Third-year Courses

All courses have **LING1001. 'Introduction to linguistics'** as their prerequisite.

---

#### **LING3002. Extended essay (6 credits)**

This is a course for individual research on a topic chosen by the student in consultation with staff, in preparation for possible postgraduate work and is offered for third year majors only. Students intending to study this course are required to attend an interview at the beginning of their third year to give a short presentation on their proposed topic. The thesis which should normally be 8,000 words in length, should be submitted before the end of December. There is no written examination but an oral exam will be required.

---

#### **LING3003. Linguistics field trip (6 credits)**

This is a required course for students majoring in Linguistics or Human Language Technology. The field trip is technically designated as a Third year course but actually begins to be taught in the second year. Students majoring in Linguistics should plan their courses with this in mind.

The aim of the course is to provide an opportunity for students of linguistics to have first-hand experience with languages as they are spoken and used in particular settings, and to carry out an empirical investigation on some aspect of a language 'on-site' (e.g. structural, cognitive, socio-cultural, or technological aspects of a language). The field trip is the best way of putting knowledge about language structure and use into practice, and forms an essential part of a linguist's training.

To satisfy the requirements of the course, students should (1) participate in a two-week field trip outside Hong Kong (e.g. to China, Europe, or Africa), led and supervised by members of staff; (2) carry out an empirical investigation of a linguistics topic in consultation with their supervisors; and (3) write up and hand in a report upon return from the field trip.

Assessment: Attendance in the pre-trip course, participation in the field trip and a written report.

---

### Assessment

All courses taught in the department except LING1001 and LING1003 are assessed by 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may take a variety of formats, including projects, term-papers, essays, portfolios, class tests, and student presentations.

---

### Major in Linguistics

Students majoring in Linguistics must take **LING1001 Introduction to linguistics**, and **LING1003 Language, thought, and culture** in their first year.

They must also take

**LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds** and

**LING2050. Grammatical description** normally in their second year and

**LING3003. Linguistics field trip** in their third year.

In addition, they must take a minimum of 30 credits in their second and third year of study from the following list of courses:

- LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)**
- LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)**
- LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)**
- LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)**
- LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)**
- LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)**
- LING2012. Experimental phonetics (6 credits)**
- LING2013. Language typology: the study of linguistic diversity (6 credits)**
- LING2018. Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)**
- LING2022. Pragmatics (6 credits)**
- LING2023. Discourse analysis (6 credits)**
- LING2024. Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)**
- LING2025. Corpus linguistics (6 credits)**
- LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)**
- LING2030. Morphological theory (6 credits)**
- LING2031. Phonological theory (6 credits)**
- LING2032. Syntactic theory (6 credits)**
- LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)**
- LING2034. Psycholinguistics (6 credits)**
- LING2036. Child language (6 credits)**
- LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)**
- LING2038. Historical linguistics (6 credits)**
- LING2039. Language variation and change (6 credits)**
- LING2040. Languages in contact (6 credits)**
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)**
- LING2042. Educational linguistics (6 credits)**
- LING2043. Language and animal communication (6 credits)**
- LING2044. Language and culture (6 credits)**
- LING2045. Writing systems (6 credits)**
- LING2046. British linguistics (6 credits)**
- LING2047. Optimality theory (6 credits)**
- LING2048. Language and cognition (6 credits)**
- LING2051. French syntax and universal grammar (6 credits)**
- LING2052. Swahili structure and universal grammar (6 credits)**
- LING2053. Language and the brain (6 credits)**
- LING2054. Language and social interaction (6 credits)**
- LING2055. Reading development and reading disorders (6 credits)**
- LING3002. Extended essay (6 credits)**

## **Major in Human Language Technology (HLT)**

### **INTRODUCTION: WHAT IS HUMAN LANGUAGE TECHNOLOGY (HLT)?**

Human Language Technology is a relatively new discipline that investigates two main issues. On the one hand it explores the theoretical and practical issues surrounding the ability to get technology, especially modern information communications technology (ICT), to interact with humans using natural language capabilities. On the other hand, it is a discipline that investigates how technologies, especially ICTs, can serve as useful adjuncts to humans in language understanding, including analysis, processing, storage and retrieval. This investigation could lead to practical applications, including the design of online learning environments for language learning and multilingual retrieval for automatic translation.

## **AIMS AND OBJECTIVES:**

The following are some of the objectives of the proposed programme: (1) to give students a perspective of how technology relates to human language processing; (2) to understand how information communications technology has been applied to different aspects of Linguistics and human language processing and to what effect; (3) to critically evaluate the role of technology in human language processing; and (4) to examine the range of opportunities available to different professionals regarding the application of technology in human language processing.

---

## **COMPONENTS OF THE PROGRAMME:**

Students majoring in HLT must take **LING1001. Introduction to linguistics**, and preferably also **LING1002. Language.com: Language in the contemporary world** or **LING1003 Language, thought, and culture** in their first year. They must also take **LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds** and **LING2050. Grammatical description** normally in their second year and **LING3003. Linguistics field trip** in their third year. In addition, they must take a minimum of 30 credits in their second and third year of study from the following list of courses:

### **Second Year:**

**LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)**

**LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds (6 credits)** and/or

**LING2012. Experimental phonetics (6 credits)**

**LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)** and/or

**LING2031. Phonological theory (6 credits)**

**LING2030. Morphological theory (6 credits)** and/or

**LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)**

**LING2032. Syntactic theory (6 credits)** and/or

**LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)**

**LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)**

### **Third Year:**

**LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)**

**LING2018. Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)**

**LING2024. Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)**

**LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)**

**LING3003. Linguistics field trip (6 credits)**

Students may seek permission to replace an HLT course with another relevant course in the department should there be staffing or timetabling problems. Students in the third year can take second year courses, if necessary.

---

## **Programme in Linguistics and Philosophy**

The Department of Philosophy in collaboration with the Department of Linguistics offers a major in Linguistics and Philosophy:



**First year:**

- (a) Linguistics: LING1001. Introduction to linguistics
- (b) Philosophy: PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1003. Ethics and society: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1004. Chinese and Western thought: an introduction to philosophy

**Second and third years (eight courses):**

- (c) Linguistics:  
LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar  
LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems  
LING2032. Syntactic theory  
LING2050. Grammatical description
- (d) Philosophy:  
PHIL2610. Philosophy of language  
  
and any three of:  
PHIL2060. Wittgenstein  
PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction  
PHIL2110. Knowledge  
PHIL2120. Topics in analytic philosophy  
PHIL2220. The mind  
PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science  
PHIL2250. Logic, computation, and neural networks  
PHIL2310. Theories of morality  
PHIL2350. Philosophy of law  
PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature  
PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics  
PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese  
PHIL2510. Logic  
PHIL2511. Paradoxes  
PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic

The remaining eight courses in a student's second/third year programme may be selected from those offered by any department, as permitted by the regulations.

It should be noted that not all courses are offered in both departments every year. Choices are subject to approval by the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinators of the departments.

**Minor in Linguistics**

A minor in Linguistics shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year courses from the Linguistics syllabus. As a pre-requisite, students must pass the first-year course **LING1001. Introduction to linguistics.**

## MUSIC

### First Year Requirements

First year music specialists and intending majors must take:

- MUSI1004. Introduction to musics of the world (6 credits)
- MUSI1014. Aural skills (3 credits) \*
- MUSI1019. Fundamentals of tonal music I (3 credits)
- MUSI1020. Fundamentals of tonal music II (6 credits)
- MUSI1021. Western music history 1 (6 credits)

All Level 100 courses except MUSI1018 are also open to BA students who are not music specialists or intending majors. These courses may also count as inter-Faculty broadening courses, if allowed by the student's home Faculty or department. Students who do not intend to major in music may still choose to take MUSI1018 with the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

### First Year Courses

#### Level 100 courses

#### **MUSI1001. The language of music (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open only to non-majors, is an introduction to the main elements of music—melody, rhythm, harmony, texture, timbre, and articulation—as they occur in traditional, classical, and popular musics of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

#### **MUSI1004. Introduction to musics of the world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, introduces a range of music from throughout the world including North America, Southeast Asia, West Africa, the Caribbean, and Europe. Genres such as *salsa* and *zydeco* (United States), *gamelan gong kebyar* (Bali), *bawa* and *highlife* (Ghana), *djembe* (Senegal), *son* and *rumba* (Cuba), *samba* (Brazil), *flamenco* (Spain), and *rembetika* (Greece) are examined in their social, cultural, and historical contexts. The course also discusses issues raised by cross-cultural research. Practical performance in a department ensemble may be included in the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

#### **MUSI1006. Music technology (3 credits)**

*(This course fulfills the Information Technology requirement, and is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, is a hands-on introduction to the use of music technology including music notation, sequencing, synthesizer techniques, and digital audio. Technical methods of information access, especially in the Music Library, are introduced.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

\* Year course.

**MUSI1011.     Orchestral studies and techniques 1 (for students in their first year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University's orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline, and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must pass an audition and have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or equivalent on one of the following: violin, viola, cello, double bass, flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, or percussion.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

---

**MUSI1014.     Aural skills (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A student completing this two-semester course will have reinvented what it is to listen, and will be able to translate what is heard into other forms of communication. The course concerns rhythm, pitch, and timbre of many kinds of music. It develops practical skills such as rhythmic memory, imitation, dictation, sight-singing, and identification/classification.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI1016.     University choir 1 (for students in their first year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all first-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the department's University Choir over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline, and creativity.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

---

**MUSI1017.     Performance workshop 1 (for students in their first year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students may choose to enroll in any workshop offered by the Music Department, or take individual instrumental instruction with a teacher approved by the department over two semesters. Beginners are welcome, but places in this course are limited, especially for individual instrumental instruction. Except with the permission of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department, Performance workshop 1 is open only to students taking a major in music. Please check with the Music Department for details.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

---

**MUSI1018.     Advanced music performance 1 (for students in their first year of study) (6 credits)**

Students prepare a recital of 30-40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced twentieth-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition. Except with the permission of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department, Advanced music performance 1 is available only to students taking a major in music.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI1019. Fundamentals of tonal music I (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course begins with fundamental music materials, such as scales and keys, and moves rapidly into species counterpoint and voice-leading principles of diatonic harmony. Student completing this course are expected to have established a clear and solid understanding of rudiments of tonal music, and be able to make practical demonstrations of this knowledge.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI1020. Fundamentals of tonal music II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A continuation of MUSI1019 Fundamentals of tonal music I, this course explores further into tonal procedures. It begins with the use of seventh chords, and will progress to basic chromatic harmony. Contrapuntal gestures and simple formal structures such as binary and ternary forms will also be introduced. Students completing the course are expected to have attained a thorough understanding of the function and voice-leading principles of diatonic and simple chromatic harmonies, and be able to analyse simple forms and contrapuntal textures.

Prerequisite: MUSI1019.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI1021. Western music history 1: from ancient Greece to the Renaissance (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course traces the development of European music from its earliest beginnings in ancient Greece and Rome through the flowering of sacred and secular music in the Middle Ages and the Renaissance. The course is meant to introduce students to a number of ideas, practices and works representative of the period between ca. 800 AD and 1600. A strong focus is placed on the introduction of the fundamental aspects of music theory and the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which it was created.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second and Third Year Requirements**

Second and third year courses in the department are divided into three categories: Thinking in Music, Technology and Composition, and Practical Applications. All Level 200 courses can be taken in either the second or third year, except MUSI2004, MUSI2032, MUSI2037, MUSI2041, MUSI2046, MUSI2047, and MUSI2051 which are courses for students in their second year of study only. All Level 300 courses can only be taken in the third year. Prerequisites, if required, are stated in the course descriptions. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived. All major and other course selections are subject to the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

**Second and Third Year Music Majors and Specialists**

Second and third year music majors and specialists must take:

- MUSI2004. University gamelan 1 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2052. Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)
- MUSI2057. Western music history 2 (6 credits)
- MUSI2058. Western music history 3 (6 credits)

and at least THREE of the following five courses. All five courses will be available over a two-year period. Please check with the Music Department for details:

- MUSI2006. Analysis of orally transmitted musics (6 credits)
- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)

The following courses are elective. All music majors and specialists must take at least nine elective credits from Level 200 or 300 courses. Students are free to choose from any category.

#### Thinking in Music

- MUSI2009. Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)
- MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)
- MUSI2035. Love, sex, and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)
- MUSI2037. Directed study 1 (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2044. Film music (6 credits)
- MUSI2048. Music, language, and meaning (6 credits)
- MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)
- MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI3016. Directed study 2 (6 credits)\*

#### Technology and Composition

- MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2026. Fundamentals of music composition (6 credits)
- MUSI2027. Composing for the concert world (6 credits)
- MUSI2030. Composing for the commercial world (6 credits)
- MUSI2036. Audio digital signal processing (6 credits)
- MUSI2042. Contrapuntal techniques (6 credits)
- MUSI2043. Orchestration (6 credits)
- MUSI2053. Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)

#### Practical Applications

- MUSI2028. The business of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2032. Orchestral studies and techniques 2 (3 credits) \*
- MUSI2041. University choir 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2046. Performance workshop 2 (3 credits) \*
- MUSI2047. Advanced music performance 2 (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2051. Rhythms of life: music and culture in West Africa (3 credits)
- MUSI3008. University gamelan 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3012. Orchestral studies and techniques 3 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3017. University choir 3 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3018. Performance workshop 3 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3019. Advanced music performance 3 (6 credits)\*

---

\* Year course.

## Courses for Non-Music Majors

Second and third year BA students who are not music majors or specialists may choose from the following courses:

- MUSI2004. University gamelan 1 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI2018. Understanding music (3 credits)
- MUSI2019. Music in society (3 credits)
- MUSI2028. The business of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)
- MUSI2032. Orchestral studies and techniques 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)
- MUSI2035. Love, sex, and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)
- MUSI2036. Audio digital signal processing (6 credits)
- MUSI2041. University choir 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2042. Contrapuntal techniques (6 credits)
- MUSI2043. Orchestration (6 credits)
- MUSI2044. Film music (6 credits)
- MUSI2046. Performance workshop 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2048. Music, language, and meaning (6 credits)
- MUSI2049. Music and power (3 credits)
- MUSI2050. Representation of the supernatural in music (3 credits)
- MUSI2051. Rhythms of life: music and culture in West Africa (3 credits)
- MUSI2052. Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)
- MUSI2053. Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)
- MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)
- MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)
- MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI3008. University gamelan 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3012. Orchestral studies and techniques 3 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3017. University choir 3 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3018. Performance workshop 3 (3 credits)\*

All of the above may also count as inter-Faculty broadening courses, if allowed by the student's home Faculty or department. Non-music majors may also choose any course or combination of courses not listed above with the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

## Music Minors

A minor in Music shall consist of 24 credit units of Level 200 and 300 courses from the music syllabus taken in the third to sixth semesters, with no more than 6 credit units taken in performance courses (MUSI2004, MUSI2032, MUSI2041, MUSI2046, MUSI2047, MUSI2051, MUSI3008, MUSI3012, MUSI3017, MUSI3018, and MUSI3019). As a pre-requisite, students must pass the following Level 100 courses in the first or second semester: MUSI1004 Introduction to musics of the world, and MUSI1021 Western music history 1.

\* Year course.

## **Second and Third Years Courses**

### **Level 200 courses**

#### **MUSI2004. University gamelan 1 (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, focuses on Balinese *gamelan* or 'orchestral' performance, specifically the *gamelan gong kebyar*. No previous musical experience is necessary. Students participate in weekly rehearsals with the *gamelan* over two semesters, and by the end of the course students will be expected to know how to play the main melody, the main supporting parts, and the interlocking (*kotekan*) parts of selected compositions. Students will also have the opportunity to participate in public performances.

Assessment: 20% coursework, 80% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

---

#### **MUSI2006. Analysis of orally transmitted musics (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the description, transcription, and analysis of music that is essentially orally transmitted. Issues such as 'emic' and 'etic' transcription, prescriptive and descriptive notation, and various methods and theories of analysis will be discussed. Music from a variety of cultures, including musical cultures of Asia, will be used as examples for study.

Prerequisite: MUSI1004.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **MUSI2009. Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)**

Selected topics in the history of Asian musical cultures will be examined.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course presents the essential features of the music of China, its role in Chinese culture and history, and its position in world music. Subjects will include the *qin* and other musical instruments, theatrical genres such as *kunqu*, Peking opera and Cantonese opera, narrative songs such as Peking drum song, Suzhou *tanci*, and Cantonese *nanyin*, folk songs, and music in Confucian, Buddhist, and Taoist rituals. The course aims not only to introduce students to traditional Chinese music, but also to explore the nature of Chinese culture through its musical practices. Important works of Chinese music will be introduced, as well as issues such as change/stasis, politics/aesthetics, theory/practice, literati/masses, professional/amateur, ritual/entertainment, home-grown/foreign-influenced, and Han/Minority.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with a general knowledge of acoustics, sampling, sound design, sound editing, sound recording and mixing, audio-visual synchronisation, synthesiser techniques, and MIDI sequencing. The course comprises lectures, workshops, and individual studio exercises. Students are required to produce various practical, creative projects using the Music Department's studio equipment and computer programs.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers a wide variety of popular musics ranging from the latest trends in the global market to locally produced music such as Hong Kong's Cantopop. The course surveys the development of key genres of popular music, in particular, those from the United States, such as blues, country, rock and roll, Motown, soul, hard rock, disco, hardcore, heavy metal, grunge, techno, and rap. In addition, the course examines themes and concepts that can be applied to the serious study of popular musics beyond those discussed. These themes and concepts concern the ways in which popular music is defined, produced, disseminated, and consumed across the world. Students will learn the basic critical tools to examine popular music from a scholarly perspective. Lectures are augmented with videos, film slides, and recordings.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, aims to promote an understanding of the various styles of music practised in contemporary Hong Kong. Through comparison with the musical landscapes of other modern societies (e.g., US, Japan, Singapore, Taiwan), we shall endeavour to understand music and ourselves better. Topics to be discussed may include technical analysis of selected musical works, procedures of musical production, and a look at radio programmes, the recording industry, film music, high-art, jazz, new-age, and alternative musics, as well as traditional local and popular idioms.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2018. Understanding music (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is open only to non-majors, and is designed for students with little or no background who wish to learn of music's beauties, ideas, and meanings. Music can be seen both as formal ideas in abstract arrangements, and as rapturous emotion rising from the heart. This course will explore both aspects by introducing musical works from many cultures, ranging from the grandeur of a Beethoven symphony to the subtleties of the Chinese zither.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**MUSI2019. Music in society (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is open only to non-majors, and is designed for students with little or no background who are interested in music as a social activity. Discussion of music in tribal cultures, popular music and its cultural meanings, political musics, and social patterns of performance, consumption, and communication are explored.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2026. Fundamentals of music composition (6 credits)**

This course seeks to provide an understanding of various musical techniques through writing music. It covers topics in notation, instrumentation, melodic writing, harmonization, timbral control, expansion and refinement of raw material, and structural design. The course comprises lectures, small-group tutorials, individual supervision, composer/performer workshops, and concert performances of student works.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**MUSI2027. Composing for the concert world (6 credits)**

This course encourages students to write music using 20th-century techniques. It introduces students to organising and manipulating various musical parameters such as pitch, rhythm, meter, texture, colour, form, etc. It also helps students to experiment with the incorporation of extra-musical inspiration and alternative aesthetics.

Prerequisite: MUSI2026.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2028. The business of music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to basic arts administration concepts with a focus on the business of music. Topics to be discussed include strategic planning, organization, marketing, fundraising, financial management, arts law, as well as arts provision and arts policies in Hong Kong as compared to models in China, Europe, and the USA. The lectures provide the students with theoretical foundations of management for the performing arts, and various assignments help students to develop practical skills in writing, communication, critical thinking, and analysis.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces the history of China through an examination of selective source material including bells from the bronze period, the Book of Music attributed to Confucian philosophy, the earliest known musical notation of a composition from the sixth century A.D., major encyclopaedic compilations of musical sources from the Song dynasty, and Mao Zedong's 'Talk on Literature and Art' in 1942.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2030. Composing for the commercial world (6 credits)**

This course helps students to write music that works for a given practical application such as film scores, theatre music, multimedia performances, radio and television commercials, Web pages, new-age music, and popular songs. Students are required to work on topics that vary from year to year.

Prerequisite: MUSI2026.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the history, genres, styles, innovations, and cultural contexts of music in America. Following an overview of its European and African roots and the development of American music up to World War I, intensive consideration will be given to jazz, rock, blues, musicals, classical, and avant-garde musics. This course is available to all students.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2032.     Orchestral studies and techniques 2 (for students in their second year of study)  
(3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University's orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline, and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must pass an audition and have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or equivalent on one of the following: violin, viola, cello, double bass, flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, or percussion. Orchestral studies and techniques 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

---

**MUSI2033.     Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the study of *gamelan* music and its cultural context over a two week field trip in Bali. Students will spend one week in intensive workshops at the Sekolah Tinggi Seni Indonesia (STSI), the principal institution for the Indonesian performing arts in Bali, and another week participating in and observing *gamelan* performance in a traditional Balinese community. The course is open to students who have completed one of the following courses: (i) Aural skills, (ii) University gamelan 1, or (iii) University gamelan 2. Students will be required to produce a field work report.

Assessment: 100% field report.

---

**MUSI2035.     Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines cultural and historical representations of feelings, situations, and stories that focus on passion, romance, sexuality, tragedy, and death in music. We shall consider both semiotic and formal aspects of a number of works through which such expressions can be conveyed, and shall examine their resultant power and meaning. The course covers popular and art music from the late twelfth to the twenty-first century, drawing on an eclectic range of repertoires both from the West and from other parts of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2036.     Audio digital signal processing (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course looks at various techniques of signal processing and algorithmic composition commonly used in computer music. Basic knowledge of trigonometry and algebra is expected, and some experience with computer programming is recommended. Students will use the tools of computer music to create simulations or models demonstrating the ideas presented in class. Students will have the option to pick their own tools, including software learned in previous classes, or to use tools taught in class. We will use some or all of the following programming environments: MAX/MSP, SuperCollider, Mathematica, Csound, cmusic, C++, and Java.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2037. Directed study 1 (for students in their second year of study) (6 credits)**

This is a one-to-one course in which the student works with a supervisor throughout the year. During the first semester, the supervisor introduces theories and techniques of musical research through reading, discussion, and book reports. Towards the end of the semester, a research topic is to be decided upon between the student and supervisor. The second semester is devoted to the research on the topic and the writing of a thesis under the guidance of the supervisor. Entry to this course is at the discretion of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

Assessment: 100% thesis.

---

**MUSI2041. University choir 2 (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all second-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the department's University Choir over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline, and creativity. University choir 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

---

**MUSI2042. Contrapuntal techniques (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of contrapuntal techniques used in Western music. Topics include species counterpoint, free counterpoint, and 18th-century contrapuntal writing, with special reference to the style of J. S. Bach. Contrapuntal treatment in music beyond the common practice period will also be examined.

Pre-requisite: MUSI1020.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2043. Orchestration (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of orchestration. The characteristics of standard orchestral instruments will be studied, as well as the techniques of combining these instruments when writing for small and large orchestral forces. Aspects of psycho-acoustics will also be studied. Teaching materials will be derived from examples of the classical music repertoire and from film scores.

Pre-requisite: MUSI1020.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2044. Film music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What does music contribute to a fiction film? When is it used? And why is it there in the first place? Directors use music with an effect in mind and it is music's force in the "here and now" of the movie-going experience that we will try to describe. To do so, we will study films from various cinematic traditions through the various ways in which music functions within them as a powerful meaning-making element. Under the assumption that film is an *audio-visual* medium, we will examine individual works representative of different genres—musicals, horrors, dramas, comedies, and cartoons. Consideration will be given to the relationship between music and image as well as music and sound as they emerge from close readings of individual scenes. We will also look at how music is represented in the story world of the film, whether a character performs, listens to, or ignores it.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2046. Performance workshop 2 (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students may choose to enroll in any workshop offered by the Music Department, or take individual instrumental instruction with a teacher approved by the department over two semesters. Beginners are welcome, but places in this course are limited, especially for individual instrumental instruction. Except with the permission of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department, Performance workshop 2 is open only to students taking a major in music. Please check with the Music Department for details. Performance workshop 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

---

**MUSI2047. Advanced music performance 2 (for students in their second year of study) (6 credits)**

Students prepare a recital of 30-40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced twentieth-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition. Except with the permission of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department, Advanced music performance 2 is available only to students taking a major in music. Advanced music performance 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2048. Music, language, and meaning (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores the question of meaning in music and how this is articulated in music as medium. In what ways can music be construed as a "language"? How are emotions expressed in it? Are words equivalent to musical tones and phrases, sentences? What do tones mean? Do they mean nothing but sheer pleasurable physical sensations? Or do tones refer to things external to the music itself? How does music indicate human subjectivity and act? Why do all human societies have songs and dances? Why are these associated with healing, occult, and magic in ancient societies? How is music valued and used in technologically-advanced societies? Where and how did the idea of listening to music in itself come about? What does music mean when valued as entertainment and commodity in leisure, consumer societies? All these questions centre around a philosophy of music that views it as a socially meaningful sign.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2049. Music and power (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open only to non-majors, looks into specific studies that highlight how music shapes or is shaped by power relations. It argues that the exercise of power is involved in the performance of songs and dances during events that range from playful, yet intimate, face-to-face gatherings to serious, impersonal, public rituals in advanced, complex societies. A theory of music is not just a theory of tones, but a theory of social processes that a music is about. This course will enable students to think critically about the power of music in various contexts of group relations that are not necessarily formal political in nature. Readings pertinent to the use of music in relation to gender, class, race, and ethnicity will reveal that music as power can galvanize consent, identity, conformity, and cooperation, much as it can also become a moral weapon of the weak to resist domination and oppression.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2050. Representation of the supernatural in music (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

From the very beginnings of human memory, witches, ghouls, ghosts, and goblins have played a highly significant role in the formation and continuance of stories that have attempted an explanation of natural phenomena and inexplicable cultural conventions. In Western culture, visual, conceptual, and aural embodiments of such mythological creatures have numerous appeared in sculpture, painting, literature, and music. This course, which is open only to non-majors, surveys musical representations of the supernatural throughout the ages. It will focus on a selection of eclectic musical works ranging from expressions of veiled medieval occultism to present-day cinematic productions of gothic horror, in which mythology and the supernatural continue to resonate.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2051. Rhythms of life: music and culture in West Africa (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, is a performance-based introduction to West African music, in particular, the percussion ensemble. The course focuses on the music and dance of the Dagaaba and Ewe people of Ghana, in particular, the music for *Gahu*, a type of traditional music and dance of the Ewe people. No previous musical experience is necessary. Students will participate in 12 hours of intensive instruction during the summer and will have the opportunity to learn to play, sing, and dance *Gahu*. There will also be introductory lectures on the cultural context of various West African musics, including *djembe*, *griot*, *highlife*, *juju*, and *mbalax*.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

---

**MUSI2052. Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of MUSI1020 Fundamentals of tonal music II, with emphases on chromatic harmonies, larger forms such as rondo and sonata, and contrapuntal genres such as canon and fugue. The basic concepts of Schenkerian theory will also be introduced. Students are required to complete a number of harmonic exercises and analytical projects.

Prerequisite: MUSI1020.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2053. Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will focus on the modern and post-tonal techniques such as modality, atonality, serialism, minimalism, aleatoric music, collage, neo-tonality, jazz harmony, etc. Analytic techniques of pitch-class set theory, transformational theory, and timbral analysis will also be introduced. Students are required to complete various analytical and technical projects.

Prerequisite: MUSI2052.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course is open to all students with either some experience with, or interest in, the piano. It offers an overview of the history of the piano through a montage of lectures that focus on the personalities that were involved with it, the repertoires they either composed for or performed on it, and the social and cultural milieus that provided the context for its extraordinary rise as arguably the most important instrument in the history of Western Classical music. Students will be given the opportunity to study the piano as a medium of musical exploration and expression, the occasion for the display of virtuosity, a staple of the 19<sup>th</sup>-century bourgeois home, and an object of almost maniacal veneration. The course will end with an overview of the dissemination of the piano in East Asia, with particular reference to the piano culture of Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course starts with an exploration of the structural and theoretical aspects of Chinese Opera, including the classification of tune types, text setting, and performance practice. While examples are mostly drawn from *kunqu*, Peking opera, and Cantonese opera, other regional derivatives will also be introduced for comparison and analysis. The second half of this course comprises a series of reading and examination of representative operas and their performances, through which the interplay between Chinese opera and its religious, social, cultural, and political contexts is investigated.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What is an 'arts scene'? Does Hong Kong have one? Is a 'scene' a concrete social entity? Or is it a myth, a retrospective, artificial construction by critics and historians, an abstract rationalization of random events, processes, and individual choices? This course, coordinated by the Comparative Literature and Music Departments, will attempt to answer these questions through close readings and discussions of selected works, artistic events, entities, and venues characteristic of Hong Kong's cultural life: the multiplex cinema, the Soho commercial gallery, Cantopop, the international film festival, the classical music organizations, independent cinema, Cantonese opera, the Cattle Depot Artist Village, and cyberspace. What will emerge is a fragmented, yet extraordinarily open, cultural space, one which the audience—be they critics, students, amateurs, and even tourists—can play a crucial role in shaping and nurturing. "Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong," then, will mean not only finding the right words and tools to understand something that already exists, but also becoming active agents in bringing its existence to a new level of self-awareness, participating in the very process of its creation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2057. Western music history 2: from the rise of opera to Beethoven (6 credits)**

This course picks up from where MUSI1021 leaves off, covering the integrated instrumental and vocal idioms of the so-called Baroque and Classical periods (ca. 1600 to 1800). A strong focus is placed on the introduction of the fundamental aspects of music theory and the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which it was created.

Prerequisite: MUSI1021.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2058. Western music history 3: from Beethoven to the present (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the Western art music tradition from around 1800 to the present, moving from the apparent stylistic perfection of the Classical era to the revolutions and restless variety of the Romantic era, and finally working through the complex experiments of 20<sup>th</sup>-century music, the relationship between “high” (classical) and “low” (popular) repertoires, and the adoption of Western idioms on the part of composers in Asia. A strong focus is placed on the introduction of the fundamental aspects of music theory and the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which music was created.

Prerequisite: MUSI2057.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Level 300 courses****MUSI3008. University gamelan 2 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, focuses on Balinese *gamelan* or 'orchestral' performance, specifically the *gamelan gong kebyar*. No previous musical experience is necessary. Students participate in weekly rehearsals with the *gamelan* over two semesters and by the end of the course students will be expected to know how to play the main melody, the main supporting parts, and the interlocking (*kotekan*) parts of selected compositions. In addition, students will be required to demonstrate their understanding of Balinese *gong kebyar* musical form by composing the interlocking parts for a specified melody. For this assignment, the class will be divided into groups consisting of four to six students. Students will also have the opportunity to participate in public performances.

Assessment: 20% coursework, 80% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

---

**MUSI3012. Orchestral studies and techniques 3 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University's orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline, and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must pass an audition and have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or equivalent on one of the following: violin, viola, cello, double bass, flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, or percussion. Orchestral studies and techniques 1 and 2 are not prerequisites.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

---

**MUSI3016. Directed study 2 (for students in their third year of study) (6 credits)**

This is a one-to-one course in which the student works with a supervisor throughout the year. During the first semester, the supervisor introduces theories and techniques of musical research through reading, discussion, and book reports. Towards the end of the semester, a research topic is to be decided upon between the student and supervisor. The second semester is devoted to the research on the topic and the writing of a thesis under the guidance of the supervisor. Entry to this course is at the discretion of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department. Directed study 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% thesis.

**MUSI3017. University choir 3 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all third-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the department's University Choir over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline, and creativity. University choir 1 and University choir 2 are not prerequisites.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and conductor assessment).

---

**MUSI3018. Performance workshop 3 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students may choose to enroll in any workshop offered by the Music Department, or take individual instrumental instruction with a teacher approved by the department over two semesters. Beginners are welcome, but places in this course are limited, especially for individual instrumental instruction. Except with the permission of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department, Performance workshop 3 is open only to students taking a major in music. Please check with the Music Department for details. Performance workshop 1 and Performance workshop 2 are not prerequisites.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor assessment).

---

**MUSI3019. Advanced music performance 3 (for students in their third year of study) (6 credits)**

Students prepare a recital of 30-40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced twentieth-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition. Except with the permission of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department, Advanced music performance 3 is available only to students taking a major in music. Advanced music performance 1 and Advanced music performance 2 are not prerequisites.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHILOSOPHY**

Studying philosophy is a training in thinking - critically, creatively and independently. It is one of the best preparations for professional work. Our graduates hold important positions in public life, in the commercial field, in education, and in many other areas.

Our syllabus enables you to take a small amount of philosophy (in any year of study without prerequisites), to major in philosophy (or in the *Linguistics and Philosophy* programme), to take a double-major, combining philosophy equally with another Arts or Social Sciences discipline, or to take a minor in philosophy.

Courses are offered in the form of lectures, seminars and tutorials. Particular importance is attached to tutorial work.

What should be distinctive and important in a university education is developing the ability in students to take responsibility for their own work: our syllabus and our approach to teaching is guided by this principle.



Our department is also known, world-wide, for the pioneering role it has had over the last two decades in exploiting some advantages of information technology as a new instrument in learning. Of course, I.T. is not a substitute for thought or more traditional forms of learning. But, properly used, it facilitates our work, as well as helping to develop skills which can be useful more generally.

Our courses are divided into three levels and four groups. The three levels correspond to the three years of study for an undergraduate degree. But it is open to students in any Faculty to take, for instance, a first year philosophy course in any year of study (provided that the regulations of their own degree programme permit it). The four groups are of courses related by subject-matter. The four first-year courses correspond roughly to these groups.

## **FIRST YEAR**

The department offers four general introductory courses in philosophy and two introductory courses in logic. There are no prerequisites. All these courses will normally be offered every year.

### **PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Human beings have always attempted to understand and control the world they live in by asking questions, and seeking effective answers, about that world. These attempts have taken many forms, but philosophy has always been a central part of this process of explanation and the progress of knowledge. The questions of what we can know, how we can know, and how we can use what we know, are prime examples of philosophical questions that have come down to us in a long history of inquiry – philosophy is a part of the natural and practical curiosity of mankind.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to philosophical issues about the mind. These include metaphysical questions about what minds are, whether the mind is something non-physical or whether it is some kind of a computer. Then there are the epistemological questions about the limitation of human knowledge, such as whether we can really know what other people's experiences are like, or whether there is a God.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **PHIL1003. Ethics and society: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

One of the founders of Western philosophy, Socrates, claimed that the most important philosophical question is "How is one to live?" How are we to live in our relations with others as individuals? And how are we to live together in communities and societies? This course will introduce some of the ways that key philosophers in the Western tradition have answered these questions. Reading texts by Plato and Aristotle in ancient Greece, and modern and contemporary writings by Locke, Kant, Mill, Rawls and contemporary theorists of democracy, we will explore questions about the way we relate to other people.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL1004. Chinese and Western thought: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course compares central themes in the philosophical dialogues of the Chinese and Western traditions. Topics may include Confucian intuition, Daoist paradox, Greek rationalism, British Empiricism, Existentialism, Pragmatism, Maoism, Zen Buddhism, and positivism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL1005. Critical thinking and logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Critical thinking is a matter of thinking clearly and rationally. It is important for solving problems, effective planning, and expressing ideas clearly and systematically. We shall study the basic principles of critical thinking, and see how they can be applied in everyday life.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% final exam.

---

**PHIL1006. Elementary logic (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a web-based self-study course on elementary formal logic. Formal logic uses special symbolic notations to study reasoning and arguments systematically. In this course we shall look at some basic concepts in logic, and learn how to use special logical symbols to construct and evaluate arguments. There are no lectures in this course, and all teaching material is available online for self-study. There are, however, optional tutorials for students to ask questions. Registered students should visit the philosophy department web site at the beginning of the semester to find out how they can obtain access to the learning material.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% final exam.

Not available to students who have taken **PHIL2510. Logic**.

---

**PHIL1008. Elementary logic II (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This web-based self-study course about formal logic is a sequel to PHIL1006. Elementary logic. Topics will include first order predicate logic, deduction systems for propositional and first order predicate logic, elementary soundness and completeness results. Other topics may include applications to computer science, linguistics, and other areas.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% final exam

Prerequisite: **PHIL1006** or permission of the instructor.

Not available to students who have taken **PHIL2510. Logic**.

---

**SECOND AND THIRD YEARS**

Students wishing to take the courses listed below are strongly recommended to have taken at least one first-year course. Apart from PHIL3810 Senior Seminar and PHIL 3910 Senior Thesis, these courses are all second or third year courses. Some of these courses are also available to students of other faculties as 'broadening courses'. Some of these courses have no required prerequisites, as noted below. For the other courses, if it is not explicitly stated that no prerequisite is required, then either a 6-credit first-year course or the instructor's permission is required.

Details of tutorial and other arrangements are published each year in the department's booklet, *Choices in Philosophy*.

All these courses but two are listed under four groups:

Knowledge and reality  
Mind and language  
Moral and political philosophy  
History of philosophy.

Of the second and third year courses listed, twelve to sixteen will normally be offered each year. This means that not every course will be available in any two-year period. Some courses, however, are likely to be offered every year (because of our commitments to curricula outside the B.A., and for other reasons), and some we prefer to give at least once every two years to make sure that every student has an opportunity to take them. Details of this are indicated below.

Students who major in philosophy must take at least eight (6-credit second and third year) courses in philosophy, and are recommended to take at least one course from each of these categories. In addition, at least one 6-credit first-year course is strongly recommended. Note that many of the second and third year courses have a first-year prerequisite. Third year majors are recommended to take the **Senior seminar** in their final year, especially if they are considering further study in philosophy, provided that their second year grades reach a good level. Students may also take a double major, combining philosophy equally with another Arts or Social Science discipline. (BA students taking a double major with a Social Science discipline must conform to the requirements determined by the Faculty of Social Sciences for majors in a Social Science discipline).

Students who minor in Philosophy must complete 24 credits of second and third-year courses. In addition, at least one 6-credit first-year course is strongly recommended. Note that many of the second and third year courses have a first-year prerequisite.

### **Group I: Knowledge and Reality**

#### **PHIL2110. Knowledge (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Theory of knowledge deals with the nature and possibility of knowledge and its limits. We shall address questions that include: Is Scepticism possible? Are some kinds of knowledge more basic than others? Are our views of the world really true or just elaborate stories that serve our purposes? Can philosophers learn about knowledge from psychology and physiology? What could philosophers add to their stories? Is there one concept of justification (reason) or many (social and cultural differences)? Is truth an important goal of knowledge?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

#### **PHIL2120. Topics in analytic philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An advanced introduction to contemporary philosophy, this course will focus on three areas of lively current debate. Students will have an opportunity to critically examine a sample of the best recent work in analytic philosophy. Careful attention will be paid to the roots of these debates in the work of Frege, Russell, Moore and Wittgenstein. Topics will include: skepticism, vagueness, and causation.

Assessment: 100% coursework

Prerequisites: none required, but one previous philosophy course is highly recommended.

**PHIL2130. Philosophy of the sciences (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

If we want to find out about the world around us, we look to science to provide the answers to our questions. But why? What justifies our faith in this enterprise? In this course, we shall investigate two related questions. First, what is scientific method? We shall examine answers ranging from the rigid prescriptions of Popper to the anarchism of Feyerabend. Second, what reason do we have to think that the explanations provided by science are true? Here the answers range from optimism based on the success of science, to pessimism based on our repeated rejection of past theories. Along the way, we shall critically consider notions such as progress, objectivity, and the difference between science and non-science. We shall examine how philosophical questions arise in actual scientific practice. What examples are selected for this purpose will, to some extent, be determined by the interests of students.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2140. Philosophy of social science (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How should we understand and explain human life and activities? This course will examine different models of explanation in the social sciences, and will proceed by case studies. Which cases are taken will depend on the interests and knowledge of those who enrol for the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2150. Philosophy and biology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Charles Darwin's theory of evolution had a huge impact on the way we think about mankind's place in the world. In this course we will discuss some of the philosophical consequences of this impact. No previous knowledge of the theory is required as we will begin with a critical introduction to its development and main features. Later in the course we will also consider the contemporary debate concerning the scope and limits of evolutionary theory.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2210. Metaphysics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers both the nature of reality and the nature of knowledge of it and treats the two questions as intrinsically connected. We shall examine a number of important theories of metaphysics, as well as anti-metaphysics, including those of Plato, Descartes, Hume, Kant, Nietzsche, Heidegger, and contemporary philosophers such as Habermas, Rorty and Putnam. We will treat these theories not only as representing different views on metaphysics but also as forming a logical order of development.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We study Chinese views of reality, human nature, language, wisdom and the relation of each to human society. Our main texts will be Daoist texts from the classical period, but we shall also discuss Neo-Daoism, Buddhism and Neo-Confucian metaphysics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Group II: Mind and Language****PHIL2070. Pragmatism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is in two unequal parts. In the first and longer part, we shall study the writings of the classical pragmatists: Peirce, Dewey and James; in the second, we shall look more briefly at some of the so-called 'neo-pragmatists' such as Quine, Davidson and Putnam. We shall then consider the question of the relationship between these two schools, and think seriously about the recent suggestion that the earlier is in fact the better.

Topics to be discussed include: truth and knowledge; religion and science; and rationality, personality and aesthetics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

One of the central issues in contemporary philosophy of language and linguistics concerns whether and where one should draw the line between semantic meaning and pragmatic meaning, or the meanings had by the words and sentences a speaker uses, and what a speaker means in using those words and sentences. One reason the issue is central is that there are debates over the semantic meanings of certain expressions, e.g. names and definite descriptions. Without a general account of the difference between semantic and pragmatic meaning, these debates cannot be settled. Another reason the issue is central is that there are some who, in a roughly Wittgensteinian manner, deny that there is any real sense to be made of the notion of semantic, or literal, meaning. According to them, there is, therefore, no line between pragmatic and semantic meaning at all. In this course we will try to determine whether the distinction can be drawn, and, if so, where.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2220. The mind (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The human mind is the nexus of a number of great mysteries. What is the nature of self? Is the mind identical to the brain, or is it an immaterial substance? Is Artificial Intelligence possible, and can computers experience emotions and other feelings? Are our actions free, or are they determined by our genes and upbringing? We shall be exploring some of these issues and other related topics in this course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We shall look at some of the philosophical issues involved in studying minds and behaviour scientifically. We might discuss questions such as: Can we explain all mental phenomena in computational terms? What is consciousness? What is the role of language in thinking? How useful are neural networks in understanding the mind?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2250. Logic, computation, and neural networks (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is about the basic concepts and results relating to computability theory, especially in relation to logic and philosophy. The logic of computation is of special relevance to linguistics, psychology, computer science, cognitive science, the philosophy of mind, and the foundation of mathematics. We shall look at various definitions of computations such as Turing computability, and consider also the relevance of computation theory to actual computers. We might also look at computations in neural networks and examine their role in psychology, neuroscience and the philosophy of mind.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course, we shall learn to analyse grammatically and semantically the language used in the classical texts of Chinese philosophy. The analysis will help us construct arguments in favour of or against various interpretations and translations. We briefly discuss texts from the *Analects* of Confucius, the *Mozi*, the *Zhuangzi* and then do a detailed analysis of the *Daode Jing*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2510. Logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an introduction to formal logic. We will review sentential and predicate logic. We will discuss theorems about formal systems of logic, including soundness and completeness. Time permitting, we will discuss advanced topics such as Gödel's incompleteness theorems, computability, Tarski's theorem, or modal logic. Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before enrolling in this course. In preparation, students can take PHIL 1005, or PHIL1006, or else students can study the online material on logic produced by the department. For further details, please contact the department.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2511. Paradoxes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Paradoxes are arguments which proceed from highly plausible assumptions, through highly plausible and usually simple steps to highly implausible conclusions. Some examples: Zeno's paradoxes of motion, Kant's antinomies, the Liar and the paradox of the surprise examination. What such paradoxes show is that there is something deeply wrong with some of our most fundamental ways of thinking. We shall attempt to find solutions to certain of these paradoxes. Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before studying this course. To prepare for the course, they can either take PHIL1006 Elementary Logic, or study the online material on logic produced by the department. For further details, please contact the department.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

When thinking about inference, a number of concepts come to our attention, such as *truth*, *logical constants*, *propositions*, *necessity*, *consequence*, *logical form*. Various questions with which the course deals include: 'What is the relation of Logic to reasoning?'; 'What does the existence of paradoxes tell us about our accepted logical principles?'; 'What is the best way to represent arguments in ordinary language if we wish to study the validity of such arguments?'; 'Are there types of discourse which are by nature fuzzy, demanding a fuzzy logic for their representation?'; 'Must logic fit empirical facts, or is it a 'pure' discipline?' Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before studying this course. To prepare for the course, they can either take PHIL1006 Elementary Logic, or study the online material on logic produced by the department. For further details, please contact the department.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What is a language, and what is involved in knowing or understanding a language? In this course we will see how philosophers and linguists answer such questions as the following: What can logic tell us about the grammar of natural languages? Are human beings born with a universal grammar? What makes a word meaningful? What is the difference between what we mean and what we convey when we say something? How does a metaphor work? Can we learn something from slips of the tongue about the nature of language?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Group III: Moral and Political Philosophy****PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The world has changed a great deal since the time of Marx. But Marxism, duly updated and refined, still has a lot to teach us about the nature of human society and historical change, the capitalist organization of society, the foundation and limits of liberal democracy, the constitution of power and the political. These and other issues raised by Marxism are, or ought to be, among the central concerns of political philosophy or philosophy of history. We will examine how Marxism, especially contemporary Marxism, can serve as a useful critique of liberal political philosophy and liberal political institutions. We will also discuss how Marxism itself needs to be transformed or reconceived in order to create an appealing democratic vision of genuine contemporary relevance.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2310. Theories of morality (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers some of the main highlights of 20th century moral philosophy, with passing attention to some of the earlier, historical background as needed. Questions covered include: Is morality relative or absolute? Can a moral practice be right in one culture but wrong in another? Is morality basically a form of personal or social opinion, or is there any way it can be made objective or even scientific? If morality is not science, is there any rational way of resolving moral disputes? Perspectives considered include religious and nature-based theories, performative theories, rational intuitionism, utilitarianism and modern theories of justice.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2320. Happiness (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Happiness is something we all strive for, despite the fact that we have only hazy and inconsistent notions of what it would involve. Is it a psychological state or the condition of living a good life? Is it to be gained by withdrawing from the world, or engaging in it? Are we, in some sense, designed to be happy, or is it always an impossibility? This course will lead students through some of the most influential conceptualisations of happiness in the Western tradition. We will consider, in detail, the work of Aristotle (*Nicomachean Ethics*), J.S.Mill (*Utilitarianism*) and Freud (*Civilisation and Its Discontents*). This focus will allow us to explore a range of ideas about the nature of happiness and the possibility (or impossibility) of our achieving it. Particular emphasis will be placed on the ongoing influence of these conflicting ideas in our contemporary world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2340. Moral problems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many practical problems give rise to moral controversies. Among the questions to be considered in this course are 'Should one person treat all others equally?'; 'Is abortion a type of killing, and is it acceptable?'; 'Should certain types of pornography be banned?'; 'Can capital punishment be justified?'; 'Is it right to take affirmative action in favour of groups who have been discriminated against in the past?'; 'Should old people be helped to die, if that is what they wish?'. These are all 'large-scale' questions, but we shall also be discussing less grand, but no less important moral dilemmas that we each confront from time to time.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2345. Social contract theories (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we study the major modern theories of social contract, starting with the seventeenth-century *Leviathan* of Thomas Hobbes, which places the state above its subjects. Later in the same century John Locke's *Second Treatise of Government* argued that the contracting parties to the state would seek protection of their property above all, and that they could dismiss a non-performing government, an inspiration for the American Revolution. Jean-Jacques Rousseau rejected the positions of Hobbes and Locke, basing his social contract on the will of all jointly to secure the common good, or 'general will'. John Rawls' *A Theory of Justice* in the twentieth century bases the democratic system on a conception of social justice grounded in equality of basic rights and regard for the least advantaged members of society.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.



**PHIL2350.     Philosophy of law (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We shall set the scene by contrasting classical Western and Chinese views of law. Then we shall focus on what moral and political presuppositions are required to justify the rule of law. This will guide our view of how one ought to reason in interpreting the law, and finally see what the implications of theory of law are for our views of punishment, rights, justice, equality, responsibility, insanity, and negligence. This course should help you evaluate the arguments for the importance of the rule of law in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2355.     Theories of justice (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

All of us care about justice but perhaps you seldom pause to reflect on the nature of justice and the many difficult issues which justice raises. This course introduces you to these issues and systematic ways of thinking about them. In a nutshell, justice is concerned with the question, How should the benefits and burdens of social cooperation be distributed among members of society under conditions of scarcity and conflicting values? Or, as Serge-Christophe Kolm puts it, "What should be done when different people's desires or interests oppose one another and cannot all be fully satisfied? Justice is the justified answer to this question and its science is the theory of justice." We will think about this question at two levels: the distribution of fundamental rights and duties in the basic structure of society; and the distribution of goods in particular domains, such as health care. Since controversy abounds at both levels, we will discuss and compare a variety of positions, including those of John Rawls, Brian Barry, Amartya Sen, Ronald Dworkin, Robert Nozick, Serge-Christophe Kolm, Norman Daniels, and Francis Kamm. We will also consider whether, and to what degree, Western theories of justice such as these are useful for thinking about issues of justice in Hong Kong and the PRC at large.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2360.     Political philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey course addresses fundamental questions in the history of political philosophy. Questions about government, justice, property and rights will be addressed through the work of a range of historical and contemporary thinkers. Philosophers to be studied may include Aristotle, Hobbes, Marx, Rawls, and others.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2362.     Liberal democracy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Liberal democracy is the dominant political value and form of government in terms of power and influence in the world today. It is supposed to be a coherent combination of liberalism and democracy, and yet there are deep tensions between these two components. It is by identifying these tensions that we can best understand the workings of liberal democracy as a form of government and assess its plausibility and appeal as a political value. Within this context, such familiar topics as political agency, freedom, rights, and private life will be seen in a fresh light.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2365. Philosophical problems of modernity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will focus on responses to one of the key questions that is posed by twentieth century European philosophy: that is, what is the nature of this modernity in which we live? According to Marx, the experience of modernity is one in which 'all that is solid melts into air'; while according to some contemporary philosophers this is precisely the experience of *post*-modernity. In this course, we will examine the responses of key 20th century philosophers to the question of modernity and postmodernity (these may include, Benjamin, Adorno & Horkheimer, Habermas, Foucault, Lyotard and Bauman). Particular attention will be paid to the way this questioning has led to a reconceptualisation of ethics and politics in contemporary societies.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2369. Philosophy of nature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we will develop an understanding of historically and philosophically significant approaches to the environment such as *anthropocentrism* (mainstream environmentalism) and *biocentrism* (deep ecology). We will read authors both from the history of philosophy (Bacon, Descartes and Locke) as well as modern philosophers. We will look at the implications of these philosophies in recent environmental controversies in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2375. Philosophy of art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the philosophical issues which arise when we consider the nature of aesthetic appreciation and judgement. These are some of the questions which will be discussed in the course: What is *mimesis*? Does art simply mirror nature? Is beauty merely 'in the eye of the beholder'? What differences might there be between aesthetic appreciation of art and aesthetic appreciation of nature? What is the relation between art and society? What is the difference between the sublime and the beautiful? These and other questions will be explored through the work of philosophers such as Plato, Aristotle, Hume, Kant, Dewey, Heidegger, Foucault and Lyotard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces two ways of studying philosophy and literature in relation to each other. On the one hand, we shall try to illuminate a range of philosophical, particularly ethical, problems through a close reading of literary texts (which may include the work of Dostoevsky, Henry James, Franz Kafka, and James Joyce). On the other hand, we shall bring the resources of philosophy to bear on questions of literary theory and interpretation (for example, the role of the reader, the position of the writer and the ethics of reading). Both philosophical essays and literary works will be used in the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**PHIL2390. Philosophy of religion (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Topics discussed will include: the nature of religious experience, the existence of God, life after death, religion and morality, religion and reason.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: ethics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to comparative moral philosophy, with readings drawn from the classical Chinese tradition as well as from modern, analytical sources. Figures likely to be taken up include Confucius, Mencius, Mo Tzu and Han Fei Tzu. Attention will be given to the historical development of Chinese moral thinking through these key representatives. Questions to be taken up include the question of whether traditional Chinese thought can have relevance to us in the modern world, and how our beliefs about our nature may shape our beliefs about what is moral or immoral.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2480. Confucianism and the modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces some of the central ideas of Confucianism, particularly as they have been developed by Neo-Confucian thinkers, and considers the contemporary meaning and relevance of these ideas for societies with a Confucian tradition. The thematic focus of the course is on whether and how (Neo-)Confucianism promotes or hinders economic, political and cultural modernization. We shall also discuss how (Neo-)Confucianism interacts with Western ideas, and (in the case of the PRC) Marxism in the process of social transformation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Group IV: History of Philosophy****PHIL2001. The beginnings of philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to include important early thinkers like Plato and Aristotle in the West, and/or Confucius and Lao Tze in China. Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet *'Choices in Philosophy'*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2002. Early modern philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the works of early-modern philosophers writing on politics and science, stressing the interconnections between them. We will examine the claim by some of these philosophers that modern science and technology hold the key to what Francis Bacon called 'the relief of man's estate'. We will read Bacon, Descartes, Bossuet, Locke, La Mettrie, Diderot and Rousseau.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**PHIL2010. Plato (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course offers a general introduction to the central concerns of Plato's philosophy. It focuses on Plato's early and middle dialogues in which the enigmatic character of Socrates is central. It addresses Plato's teachings on the role of philosophy in the life of the individual, the relation between knowledge and virtue, and his contribution to questions about the nature of love and desire.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2011. Aristotle (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The ancient Greek philosopher Aristotle (384-322 BCE) researched virtually every aspect of human knowledge, producing works that influence philosophy and many other fields down to the present. This course looks at his political and social philosophy; we will read his *Parts of Animals*, *Politics* and *Constitution of Athens*, examining his concepts of nature, human nature, slavery, property, citizenship, democracy, education and the ideal city.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2020. Descartes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The standard accounts of Descartes' philosophy have tended to focus on his late metaphysics and epistemology, but this course is intended as an introduction to many more of the interesting aspects of Descartes' thought. We shall, of course, discuss some of the standard issues in their rightful place (and discuss what that place might be), but we shall also consider Descartes' contributions to, and philosophical thoughts about, e.g. physics, mathematics, and medicine. (*N.B.* No specialist knowledge of these areas is required). The reading will be a combination of Descartes' primary texts (recently published in a very clear translation) and contemporary secondary material.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2025. Hume (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

David Hume (1711 – 1776) was one of the great founders of modern empiricism. This course will serve not only as an introduction to Hume's philosophy, but also as an introduction to modern empiricism as developed especially in the analytical tradition of modern philosophy. The course will appeal especially to students interested in the theory of knowledge, metaphysics and philosophy of mind, as well as to students interested primarily in the history of philosophy.

The course takes up key topics in Hume, such as: Hume's theory of ideas; the formation of reason and imagination; knowledge of the external world and skepticism with regard to the senses; induction; causation, probability and the idea of necessary connection; personal identity; freedom and determinism, reasoning in animals; miracles; virtue and vice in the context of Hume's naturalism. Readings will be drawn primarily from Hume's *A Treatise on Human Nature* and *An Enquiry Concerning Human Understanding*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2027. Rousseau (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Jean-Jacques Rousseau (1712-1778) was one of the most important philosophers of the French eighteenth century. He was critical of the Enlightenment's fascination with science, arguing that virtue, community and a kind of freedom, not technological 'progress', should be the goal of human striving. In this course we seek to understand Rousseau's thought in its historical context; we consider how he can be considered a philosopher for our own time, who respected the rights of nature as well as those of humanity. We read selections from his *Confessions*, and the entire texts of his *Discourse on the Sciences and the Arts*, and his *Discourse on the Origins of Inequality among Men*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2030. Kant's critical philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Two aspects of Kant's philosophy will be examined: first, topics in his theoretical philosophy such as objective knowledge, transcendental idealism and the thing-in-itself; second, topics in his practical philosophy such as moral duty, free will and rationality. Attempts will also be made to unify these two aspects of Kant's philosophy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2035. Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The eighteenth-century European philosophical movement known as 'The Enlightenment' called all previous philosophy into question, destabilizing conventional views of humanity, nature, society and the cosmos; the Enlightenment influences philosophy to this day. This course examines important European thinkers such as Francis Bacon, Bernard Mandeville, Denis Diderot, Jean le Rond D'Alembert, Julien Offray de La Mettrie, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Immanuel Kant from a historical as well as philosophical perspective.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Nietzsche occupies a special place in Western thought, both as a wholesale critic of the philosophical tradition that went before him (e.g. Socrates, Kant), and as a precursor of certain philosophical trends that are important today (e.g. Foucault, Derrida). This course offers an overview of Nietzsche's philosophy (including the will to power, perspectivism, nihilism, eternal return) and discusses Nietzsche's influence on contemporary thought.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2050. Philosophy of history (6 credits)**

This course looks at ideas of a universal, 'sacred history' stemming from Judaism and Christianity, as articulated by St. Augustine, and moves on to the secular idea of an underlying, universal pattern to the seeming chaos of human history expressed in the writings of thinkers from the eighteenth to the twentieth centuries. Readings will include excerpts from the writings of Herder, Kant, Condorcet, Hegel, Popper and Fukuyama.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2060. Wittgenstein (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Wittgenstein said that his aim in philosophy was 'to show the fly the way out of the fly bottle'. By this he meant that certain preconceptions, oversimplifications and poor analogies had led philosophers to construct misguided theories about such things as sensation, meaning, understanding and the nature of language, and that it was his task not to construct alternative theories but to point out the ways in which the theorists (including his earlier self) had become entrapped. This programme may appear modest, but Wittgenstein's approach has had far-reaching consequences and his work has received more discussion than that of any other twentieth century philosopher and has influenced philosophy and many other disciplines.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2077. Habermas (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The important German philosopher Habermas, combining strengths of the Continental and Anglo-American philosophical traditions, has developed a highly influential theory on a wide range of moral, political and historical issues. This course is designed to provide a general introduction to Habermas's interdisciplinary, comprehensive, and politically engaged way of doing philosophy. Topics covered include discourse ethics, the public sphere, social action and rationality, technology and science as ideology, the nature of modernity, and legitimisation problems in late capitalism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2085. Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to cover various important twentieth century thinkers (these may include Husserl, Heidegger, Sartre, Foucault, Derrida) and/or major movements in twentieth century European thought (such as phenomenology, existentialism, structuralism and poststructuralism). Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet 'Choices in Philosophy'.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2090. Foucault (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The work of French philosopher Michel Foucault (1924-1984) has been enormously influential in many fields: from philosophy and politics to social theory and gender studies. This course offers a general introduction to this work, with particular focus on power, knowledge and sexuality. It will end with a consideration of Foucault's contribution to a contemporary re-thinking of subjectivity and ethics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**PHIL2440. Confucius (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will look at modern interpretations of traditional Confucianism, primarily from the perspective of modern analytical philosophy, but with some attention also to the sociological literature, and to modern applications of Confucianism, for example in Singapore.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2442. Mencius (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Mencius, the most influential of Confucian philosophers, presents interesting challenges to interpretation. Does his philosophy provide a basis for a Chinese theory of human rights? Is his conception of human nature defensible today? Which tradition of interpretation (mind or principle) gives the most plausible interpretation? We shall discuss these questions while looking at some modern scholarly interpretations of Mencius in his ancient context.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2450. Zhuangzi (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we shall explore different lines of interpretation of Zhuangzi's Daoist philosophy. Students will participate in defending either relativist, sceptical or mystical readings of key passages. We shall start our analysis with the historical context and some textual theory. Then we shall discuss several chapters in some detail, including the historical account of the development of Daoism in 'Tianxia', the relativism in 'Autumn Floods' and 'Free and Easy Wandering', and finally the analytic scepticism and pluralism of the 'Essay on Making Things Equal'.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2451. Philosophers' views of China in early-modern Europe (6 credits)**

This course examines the varied views of China, its philosophy and government in the writings of seventeenth- and eighteenth-century ("early-modern") philosophers ranging from Leibniz to Rousseau. The debates broached at the time (e.g. is China a model for Europe or not?) resonate down to the present day.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

*Courses of unspecified category***PHIL3810. Senior seminar (6 credits)**

This course will focus each year on a different key philosophical text. Presentations will be made by students and discussed according to a schedule worked out in advance between students and the course co-ordinator. Selected third-year students will be included.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**This is a third-year course, and is normally offered every year. Permission to attend it will be given to those students with good second year grades.**

**PHIL3910. Senior thesis (12 credits)**

A thesis may be prepared under supervision for submission not later than March 31 of the final year. Students have to decide a topic on which they would like to write, then select a teacher in the relevant field and discuss the project with him/her, before the end of their second year. If the teacher deems the project viable, then a thesis title must be agreed by the closing date of June 15. The student will then have to work on the thesis over the summer, and be able to demonstrate progress made. If the progress is adequate, work on the thesis may continue; if not, the student will have to take two courses instead.

There are no word limits prescribed, but theses tend to be between 15,000 and 25,000 words in length. Assessment will be based entirely on the completed thesis. This course is only available to students majoring in Philosophy.

**Programme in Linguistics and Philosophy**

The Department of Philosophy in collaboration with the Department of Linguistics offers a major in Linguistics and Philosophy:

**First year:**

- (a) Linguistics: LING1001. Introduction to linguistics
- (b) Philosophy: PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy
  - or
  - PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy
  - or
  - PHIL1003. Ethics and society: an introduction to philosophy
  - or
  - PHIL1004. Chinese and Western thought: an introduction to philosophy

**Second and third years (eight courses):**

- (c) Linguistics:
  - LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar
  - LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems
  - LING2032. Syntactic theory
  - LING2050. Grammatical description
- (d) Philosophy:
  - PHIL2610. Philosophy of language
  - and any three of:
    - PHIL2060. Wittgenstein
    - PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction
    - PHIL2110. Knowledge
    - PHIL2120. Topics in analytic philosophy
    - PHIL2220. The mind
    - PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science
    - PHIL2250. Logic, computation, and neural networks
    - PHIL2310. Theories of morality
    - PHIL2350. Philosophy of law
    - PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature
    - PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics
    - PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese
    - PHIL2510. Logic
    - PHIL2511. Paradoxes
    - PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic



The remaining eight courses in a student's second/third year programme may be selected from those offered by any department, as permitted by the regulations.

It should be noted that not all courses are offered in both departments every year. Choices are subject to approval by the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinators of the departments.

## SCHOOL OF MODERN LANGUAGES AND CULTURES

### AMERICAN STUDIES PROGRAMME

The Programme in American Studies provides an interdisciplinary approach to the study of American culture and civilization. Students must gain admittance to the programme by taking **TWO OR MORE** of the first-year courses to qualify for a major or by taking **ONE OR MORE** of the first-year courses to qualify for a minor. These courses include: **AMER1009. Consuming culture: decoding American symbols**, **AMER1011. Born in the USA: U.S. youth cultures**, **AMER1015. Wall Street: issues in American business**, **AMER1017. Movieland: America on Hollywood's big screen** and **AMER1018. From crime fiction to social document: Introduction to 20th-century American literature (6 credits)**. Although students should make every effort to take these courses in their first year, they may take them in the second year as overload if they have not registered for them before. B.A. students pursuing an American Studies major may take no more than eight 6-credit courses (or the equivalent) in another faculty. (*All first year courses are available as 6-credit inter-Faculty electives.*)

#### First Year

##### **AMER1009. Consuming culture: decoding American symbols (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Images of America (as revealed in Hollywood films, television, advertisements, music and music videos, news media and consumer products) shape our vision of US culture. In a course specifically designed with Hong Kong students in mind, we will study and decode cultural products mediated to us by the increasingly global American media. We will approach national culture, including popular culture, as an extension and creation of national myths and propaganda and explore why American people are so attached to certain symbols, and what these symbols mean for the United States as a whole. In the course of our discussions we may touch on the symbolism and reality of the American Dream and the myth of "rags to riches," the notion of success, materialism and consumerist culture, as well as on the national and international symbols that for many define the image of America. We may also consider distinctions between high and low/popular cultures and see how class, gender and race affect notions of culture generally and how they shape the particular themes of US culture under discussion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

##### **AMER1011. Born in the USA: U.S. youth cultures (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Baby boomers, Beats, Hippies, Yuppies and Gen(eration) Xers are labels assigned to various generations of American youth. This first-year survey course explores the connection between historical change and adolescence/early adulthood in the United States during the second half of the 20th century. Throughout the term we will consider youth culture through the interdisciplinary mix of history, politics, literature, and popular culture. From these diverse perspectives, we will discover how young people in America are defined and how they attempt to define themselves by their subcultures, fashion, leisure, music, use of the internet, slang, education, and other expressions of identity. While teaching about American youth cultures, the course will offer students a chance to reflect on their own experiences as adolescents/young adults and focus on improving critical thinking, speaking and writing skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER1015. Wall Street: Issues in American business (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will draw on selected issues in American business in order to teach us about the essential characteristics of US society, including its character, values, as well as written (e.g. legal) and unwritten codes of behaviour. Every day, decisions are made on Wall Street which affect how business is conducted in America, Asia, and everywhere else around the globe. How did one address become so influential in, and such an icon of, American business? This course seeks to examine the Wall Street phenomenon, as well as its culture, influence and impact on specific components of American business. Issues under discussion may involve the nature of American business, its place in the national life ("the business of America is business," affirmed President Coolidge), its code of ethics and failures to live by that code. Case studies will be drawn from the famous and infamous examples of American entrepreneurial spirit as they made headlines up to, and including, the 21st century. Furthermore, issues such as the rise of the Internet and the information age will be examined to explore the reverse—how they shape Wall Street and the way business is conducted in America.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER1017. Movieland: America on Hollywood's big screen (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Hollywood is known to spin dreams, visions and illusions but, caught in the big-screen experience, viewers often forget that these dreams and illusions are spun within particular social and cultural contexts. Films are woven into national myths, myths are woven into the society that builds them, and society is woven into the people that create and recreate America everyday as they live, work and go to the movies. This course will look at many of the biggest, most famous and most representative Hollywood blockbusters—films and their movie-star icons—that in many ways define American culture. Students will be introduced to various genres that have become synonymous with Hollywood, among them the action thriller, classic and revisionist western, MGM musical, film *noir* and police story, science fiction, romantic comedy, Disney animation, and others. The experience of these films and their contexts will broaden our knowledge of American cultural values and help us critique these values, so that the reality of American life is explored alongside its ideals. The course will also aim to enhance critical and creative thinking as well as speaking and writing skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**AMER1018. From crime fiction to social document: Introduction to 20th-century American literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Humphrey Bogart, Robert Mitchum, James Caan, Jack Nicholson, Robert Eliot Gould... all these Hollywood actors played him: the tired gumshoe, the hired dick, the hardboiled detective, the gun for hire, the private eye. If you've seen them in action and liked what you saw, now is your chance to study the original novels on which the films were based. In this course we will read and analyze some of the classic novels of the genre which at various points has been labelled hardboiled fiction, tough guy fiction, or even *noir*, and what they tell us about life in America in the 20th century. We will begin with a socio-economic look at the several decades in American history crucial to the development of modern crime, crime-fighting forces and crime fiction, laying the foundations for a better understanding of the novels and films in the course and the social issues they touch on. Building on these opening lectures, we will trace the rise of the hardboiled story from pulp fictions of the 1920s and the emergence of the classic hero (the private eye) and heroine (the femme fatale), to the contemporary examples of the genre, including the police procedural and the legal/lawyer procedural. We will try to identify what is specific and recurrent about American crime fiction in terms of its structure and themes, and try to understand its portrayal of America then and now.

Assessment: 100% coursework

## Second and Third Years

### The Major

In order to ensure reasonable coverage and interdisciplinary understanding, students who intend to pursue a major in American Studies must, in their second and third years, take a minimum of eight 6-credit courses (or the equivalent) from the list below. Only in exceptional cases may a waiver be granted for a core course.

---

#### *4 American Studies Core Courses (24 credits)*

- AMER2030. Foundations of American studies, Part I (6-credit course in second year)**
- AMER2031. Foundations of American studies, Part II (6-credit course in second year)**
- AMER3004. Senior seminar in American studies: Part I (6-credit course in third year)**
- AMER3005. Senior seminar in American studies: Part II (6-credit course in third year)**

#### *4 Courses from the following list of American Studies and departmental offerings (24 credits)*

##### American Studies

- AMER2002. The road in American culture (6 credits)**
- AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)**
- AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)**
- AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)**
- AMER2021. On the road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)**
- AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)**
- AMER2029. Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)**
- AMER2033. Asia on America's screen (6 credits)**
- AMER2035. Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)**
- AMER2037. Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)**
- AMER3006. Dissertation (12 credits)**

##### English

- ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)**
- ENGL2055. American gothic: Haunted homes (6 credits)**
- ENGL2059. American drama and American film (6 credits)**
- ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)**
- ENGL2090. The moving production of America: reading recent films (6 credits)**
- ENGL2091. Comedy and Asian American drama (6 credits)**
- ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)**
- ENGL2105. Contemporary North American novelists (6 credits)**

##### Fine Arts

- FINE2020. American art (6 credits)**
- FINE2031. The rise of modern architecture in western culture (6 credits)**

##### Geography

- GEOG2085. North America (6 credits)**

## History

- HIST2015.** The United States before 1900 (6 credits)  
**HIST2016.** The United States in the twentieth century (6 credits)  
**HIST2031.** History through film (6 credits)  
**HIST2032.** Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)  
**HIST2053.** The Cold War (6 credits)  
**HIST2069.** The history of American popular culture (6 credits)  
**HIST2080.** Classroom across the Pacific: American history and anthropology (6 credits)  
**HIST2100.** Eating history: intensive seminar in food culture  
**HIST2101.** History's closet: intensive seminar

## Music

- MUSI2015.** Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)  
**MUSI2031.** American music (6 credits)

## Politics and Public Administration

- POLI0021.** Understanding global issues (6 credits)  
**POLI0044.** American democracy (6 credits)  
**POLI0047.** United States foreign policy (6 credits)

*Not all of the above electives may be offered in a given year.*

## The Minor

Students may take American Studies as a minor by completing 24 credits of second-and third-year courses. Of these courses, students must take:

*2 American Studies Core Courses (12 credits) drawn from the following:*

- AMER2030.** Foundations of American Studies, Part I (6-credit course in second year)  
**AMER2031.** Foundations of American Studies, Part II (6-credit course in second year)  
**AMER3004.** Senior Seminar in American Studies: Part I (6-credit course in third year)  
**AMER3005.** Senior Seminar in American Studies: Part II (6-credit course in third year)

The remaining 2 courses (12 credits) may be drawn from the following:

- AMER2002.** The road in American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2014.** A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2015.** The American city (6 credits)  
**AMER2018.** Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)  
**AMER2021.** On the Road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)  
**AMER2022.** What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2029.** Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)  
**AMER2033.** Asia on America's screen (6 credits)  
**AMER2035.** Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)  
**AMER2037.** Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)  
**AMER3006.** Dissertation (12 credits)

## Second Year/Third Year

### *American Studies*

#### **AMER2002. The road in American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The popular hit song, “Hit the road, Jack,” is as much a part of American culture and slang as Jack Kerouac’s bestselling account of his life on the American highway, *On the Road*. For better or worse, North Americans have always been on the road, pushing westward towards California, Oregon and British Columbia, moving around the country in pursuit of the American Dream, or just driving along Route 66 to escape the mundane suburban life. This restlessness and the ease with which large segments of the population move and resettle characterizes many aspects of US and Canadian life, turning the road into one of the most powerful symbols in North American literature and culture. Through the analysis of various media forms, which may include film, fiction, music, material culture and architecture, this course will consider the road in America as reality and icon, extending it to the recent emergence of the Internet and the “information highway.”

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Like so many other immigrants to the United States, Asians – Chinese, Japanese, Filipinos, Vietnamese, Koreans, etc. – were also drawn by the dream of Golden Mountain. Yet once in America, they would confront not only promise and possibility but the dream’s betrayal: hostility, rejection, and exclusion. This course will explore the varieties of Asian American cultures that emerge out of the painful, disruptive struggles between expectation and reality faced by these immigrants and their children, and the representation of their experiences in the arts, media, politics and popular culture. Asian Americans are frequently stereotyped as model minorities for striving after the American dream of education, wealth, and political representation. We will examine and challenge this “model minority” idea in American life and politics, especially as it relates to inter-minority conflict and cooperation, as individual American minority groups attempt to achieve their own version of American success.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In 1800 only 6% of Americans lived in cities; in 2000 this number was more than 80%. As a center of growth, power, and cultural diversity, the American city has always occupied a crucial place in America’s vision of itself as a new nation. “A cruel city, but a lovely one, a savage city, yet it had such tenderness”—this quote from Thomas Wolfe’s *A Vision of the City* is representative of the varied cultural representations of the American urban environment as a place where fortunes and lives are made or lost. Through an examination of literature, art, architecture, photography, film and music, this course will take a closer look at some of the greatest as well as the “baddest” American metropolises, looking for a way to understand the people who live, commute, work, create, govern, commit crime and conduct business in them.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designed to familiarize students with business practice in the United States and in American corporations operating in Hong Kong, laying foundations for a better understanding of the individuals and institutions driving the economy. Weekly sessions will include lectures and, whenever

possible, discussions with members of the American business community in the Asia-Pacific region. Topics may include: U.S. business history and economic cycles, American entrepreneurs, the ethics and etiquette of U.S. corporate culture, government/business relationships, gender and business, glass ceilings and opportunities for advancement, and business and technological change.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2021. On the road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Concentrating on North American points of interest from cities to landscape to cultural sites—this course will explore the variety and complexity of American life. Throughout the semester students will conduct group research and deliver presentations on the cities and locations to be visited in the summer, which will typically vary in the years the course is offered. In 2004, for example, the field trip will stretch from Los Angeles and the “Star Walk” of Hollywood, to San Francisco and its world-famous Chinatown, to the metropolitan Seattle which both Bruce Lee and Bill Gates called home, to the Calgary stampede which every year enacts the cowboy rituals of the Wild West.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**AMER2022. What’s on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Television has been a powerful force in US history and culture. American TV shows and programming styles have been exported globally, and are modified to suit diverse cultural settings, including Hong Kong. The United States exerts significant global influence, in part because of its success in marketing itself, both domestically and abroad, through media and entertainment. While many contest the content or perspective of American media, few are exempt from its impact. This course offers students a chance to consider the impact of television inside and outside of the US and explore how the American media-machine reaches into every facet of the nation’s life as well as into the lives of people around the world. Topics to be discussed in the course may include the history of television, strategies for critical viewing, war and TV, educational television, television’s domination of politics, youth culture and TV, the technology behind television programming, and finally TV programming in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2029. Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students in this course will be discussing current and past events as reported in newspapers, magazines, television, literature, films and on the internet. The course will focus on domestic issues facing Americans at home as well as on political, economic, and cultural links between the United States and other nations. Pedagogy will be student-centered and require students to participate regularly in (and at times lead) discussions. Typical topics may include the analysis of the American political system and the presidency, the relationship between business and politics, the role of sports in American life, the fallout from September 11, the rise of rap and hip-hop, manufacturing media, regionalism, stand-up comedy and social satire, and the US university system. These and other issues will form the basis of the course taught, on occasion, with the help of representatives of various disciplines across the spectrum of the arts, humanities and social sciences.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2030. Foundations of American Studies: Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is normally open only to second-year students and is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course and its companion, Foundations in American Studies: Part 2 (offered in the second semester), are requisite for all Majors in the American Studies Programme. Building on the introductory material from the first year, the course provides a mosaic of perspectives on the United States between 1600 and 1900 through an intensive series of lectures and discussions. Following an overview of and a general introduction to the United States, a number of invited experts will trace the development of American society from pre-Columbian times to the beginning of the 20th century. The lectures will range over a diverse but complementary array of viewpoints, and may include geography, history, sociology, business, education, art, music, theatre, language and literature. This unique approach will allow students to sample and compare multidisciplinary perspectives on such foundational issues in US history as the settlement, expansion, the War of Independence, *laissez faire* capitalism, slavery, the Civil War, and the country's rising economic, political and military domination. The lectures will be enriched with discussions, film clips, music, and prints from this period in American life.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **AMER2031. Foundations in American Studies: Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is normally open only to second-year students and is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course and its companion, Foundations in American Studies: Part 1 (offered in the first semester), are requisite for all Majors in the American Studies Programme. In this course we will focus exclusively on the 20th and 21st centuries and on the internal problems and international conflicts that shape the face of America today. Among the topics for study and discussion may be the flood of immigration at the turn of the 20th century, the gangster-friendly Jazz Age, the Great Depression, World War II, the worldwide Cold War and the conformist '50s, the psychedelic flower-power '60s, and the post-Vietnam decades in which the US increasingly lost touch with its ideals. Through lectures and class debates we will attempt to compare our popular knowledge of America with the sometimes different historical reality behind it. From documentary sources and literary nonfiction, through film, novels, comic books and rap music, we will lay foundations for a better understanding of the country which for better or worse continues to make the world headlines today.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **AMER2033. Asia on America's screen (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

"The Orient" has always held a dual attraction of romance and danger outside Asia, and this tradition has since been reinforced by Hollywood. The allure of wealth, trade and exoticism that brought millions of Americans across the Pacific provided rich material for movie drama. This combination of geographical attraction and cultural appeal was further reinforced during the wars the United States fought in Asia. War, violence and romance fill America's movie screens, pulling in vast crowds and in the process shaping and mis-shaping America's view of Asia. Asking what is Asia and how far it extends, this course will explore cinematic representations of the continent and its people as constructed by Hollywood during more than a century of selling romantic myths to a public that often has no first-hand experience of Asian culture and no firm grasp of its history.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **AMER2035. Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The Vietnam War was the first war in the age of the television and the first war that America lost. The emotions aroused by the loss of American lives and the images of violence and brutality made TV and Hollywood important actors in the war for hearts and minds. This course will examine the multiple

wars, police actions, military invasions, armed “liberations,” coups d’états, political assassinations, “regime changes,” and other euphemisms for military aggression and intervention on an international scale. Among other issues discussed may be international weapons trade, the Cold War, the two World Wars, international peace keeping, “wars” on drugs and/or terrorism, and the state of civil liberties in the US. In the process we will also examine the role of movies, television and journalistic reportage in shaping public opinion and thus indirectly the American perception and misperception of the rest of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **AMER2037. Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes and to non-majors subject to the approval of the Programme Co-ordinator.)*

Institutions structure the lives of all Americans. While institutions can be thought of in terms of discreet organizations—Harvard University, the New York Stock Exchange, National Basketball Association, the Metropolitan Museum of Art—or even the buildings in which these organizations are housed, in the broader sense, institutions are the forms into which social activity is organized. Among the most fundamental institutions of this latter type are the family, school, business, and leisure. Each of them is associated with values, beliefs and practices which, taken together, help to constitute American culture. The course will examine these and other types of institutions in order to understand the origins of the values, beliefs and practices which they embody. We will also study how these values, beliefs and practices may have been influenced by such factors as ethnicity, race, class, religion, and geographic region, and how the institutions and the ideas they embody have persisted or changed over time. In the process, we will seek to identify common themes, and to consider how certain tensions—for example between individualism and community, democracy and excellence, service and profit—have shaped each of these institutions, and through them, American society. Finally, we will consider the extension of these institutions, and their values and practices, beyond the United States, asking how American ideas about home, school, work and play have impacted and interacted with other cultures, including Asian.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

## **Third Year**

### **AMER3004. Senior seminar in American Studies: Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also open to non-majors subject to the approval of the Programme Co-ordinator.)*

This course is required of all Majors in the American Studies Programme and is designed to cap students’ university careers with a rigorous, interdisciplinary and theme-based program of study. The specific area of study may vary from year to year depending on students’ background, interests and the expertise of the instructor. Students will deepen their research and writing skills, conduct discussion sessions, participate in intensive group work, get involved in a mentoring program and continue to hone the critical thinking skills nurtured during their education in American Studies. The seminar will seek ways to prepare students to make the transition from the university setting to a variety of employment settings.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

### **AMER3005. Senior seminar in American Studies: Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also open to non-majors subject to the approval of the Programme Co-ordinator.)*

This course is required of all Majors in the American Studies Programme and is designed to cap students’ university careers with a rigorous, interdisciplinary and theme-based program of study. The specific area of study may vary from year to year depending on students’ background, interests and



the expertise of the instructor. Students will deepen their research and writing skills, conduct discussion sessions, participate in intensive group work, get involved in a mentoring program and continue to hone the critical thinking skills nurtured during their education in American Studies. The seminar will seek ways to prepare students to make the transition from the university setting to a variety of employment settings.

Assessment: 100% coursework

### **AMER3006. Dissertation (12 credits)**

This is a directed reading course aimed at top students in American Studies who would like to pursue an individualized program of research under the supervision of a mentor, typically (though not necessarily) an American Studies Programme instructor or an American Studies Board member. The student is responsible for approaching the instructor in advance and obtaining consent for supervision. The coursework will normally consist of designing the project around a topic relevant to the Programme, compiling a bibliography, research and reading, and finally writing the dissertation. A project proposal consisting of a thesis statement, preliminary outline of research (typically 3-5 pages), timetable for completion, and working bibliography will be filed with the Programme Coordinator no later than November 30. The full dissertation (approximately 40-80 pages) shall be completed and presented for examination by April 30 of the academic year in which the course is taken.

Assessment: 100% coursework

Other courses, offered from time to time by the component departments and approved by the Board of Studies in American Studies in conjunction with the department concerned, may be used to fulfill programme requirements. Students who wish to count courses towards the requirements of the American Studies major that are not listed in this syllabus need to seek special Faculty Board approval.

## **EUROPEAN STUDIES PROGRAMME**

The Programme in European Studies provides an interdisciplinary approach to the study of European civilisation. Rather than being based in a single department, the Programme is administered through the Faculty of Arts by a Board of Studies in European Studies comprised of representatives from ten departments and the Language Centre. Both rigorous and flexible, the Programme enables students to tailor their studies to suit their individual aims; students can develop the necessary skills for a wide range of pursuits related to the politics, history, culture, and economy of Europe. Courses offered under the European Studies code are open to non-majors (except EUST2020).

To major in European Studies, a student must take four out of five European Studies Core Courses (EUST1010, EUST2010 or EUST2011, EUST2020 and EUST3010); complete the second and third years of a Core Language (either French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish or Swedish); and take a minimum of eighteen credits from an approved list of second- and third-year optional courses, including courses from at least two disciplines/programmes (see below). In exceptional cases, a particular requirement may be waived.

Students should note that to enter the second year of a language course, one must normally pass the first year of that language (refer to the School of Modern Languages and Cultures for further information). Students should also note that many of the departmental courses have prerequisites set by participating departments.

Any European Studies student who successfully fulfills the requirements of the major in French, German or Spanish or the minor in French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish or Swedish will be deemed to have satisfied the language requirement of the European Studies major. In such a case, the student will be required to make up the 24 credits in language core courses by taking an additional 24 credits in optional courses, other language core courses, or a combination of the two.

A minor in European Studies shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year courses from the European Studies syllabus. As a pre-requisite, students must pass **EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits)**. The following two courses out of three are compulsory for the minor: **EUST2010. European identity (6 credits)** or **EUST2011. Modern European lifestyle: fashion, food, music and sex (6 credits)** and **EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)**. The following courses are optional but highly recommended: **EUST2012. Problem of contemporary European politics and society (6 credits)**, **EUST2030. The Modern imagination in Europe (6 credits)**, **EUST3011. European values in conflict (6 credits)** and **EUST3012. The EU as a global actor and Sino-European relations (6 credits)**. Courses taken to fulfill the requirements of the student's major may not be counted towards a minor in European Studies.

## EUROPEAN STUDIES COURSES

### FIRST YEAR COURSE

#### **EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This first year course serves as an introduction to European Studies. It is a core requirement for students wishing to major in European Studies, but it is also suitable for anyone seeking a broad understanding of European society and culture. The course examines the forces which have led to Europe becoming increasingly integrated (not the least being the sheer devastation of two world wars) as well as the subsequent tensions and objections to that process. We study the processes and structures of the specific institutions of the European Union and the Council of Europe as well as some of the major issues confronting the EU now, such as enlargement and the constitution. We will also look at some major European domestic concerns as well as divergent foreign policy issues between Europe and the USA.

The approach is multidisciplinary, embracing politics, economics, history, culture and religion

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

### SECOND AND THIRD YEAR COURSES

#### **EUST2010. European identity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is required of all European Studies majors in their second year, will introduce students to the linkages between modern Europe, its historical foundations and its various national identities. Issues of identity will include history, politics, society, languages, religion and culture from the ancient to contemporary periods.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

#### **EUST2011. Modern European lifestyle: fashion, food, music and sex in Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with an in depth look at major issues surrounding some of the fundamentals of modern European lifestyle in Europe. The subject takes both a historical and contemporary approach, concentrating mainly, though not exclusively, on the change of habits that came out of the style revolution of the 1960s.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

**EUST2012. Problems of contemporary European politics and society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an optional course aimed at second year undergraduate students. The course familiarises students with European political systems, examines current issues which shape public debate, and illustrates the continent's different cultural contexts. The aim of the course is not only to transmit factual knowledge about European politics and societies but also to strengthen the understanding of why Europeans act the way they do.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

---

**EUST2020. European Studies in Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is offered to European Studies majors only.)*

This summer course, conducted for three weeks in Europe, is offered to European Studies majors between their second and third years of study. This course gives students a direct experience of the culture and politics of parts of Europe. In addition to visiting a number of European countries we will be visiting key political European institutions in Brussels and Strasburg, and attending lectures by their representatives. We will also be hearing lectures from political analysts, university lecturers and representatives of other organizations. There will also be a range of cultural activities including visiting historical sites, museums, and art galleries.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**EUST2030. The modern imagination in Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to the modern imagination and changing aesthetic sensibility in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries in Europe. It emphasises some of the major stylistic innovations and intellectual currents that have transformed the way in which Europeans (and now increasingly the world at large) perceive and shape the world around them. The course combines examples from literature (including drama), visual art and film. We will explore how the styles, currents and works we are studying have emerged as creative responses to the great upheavals that have taken place in European society with the rise of modernity.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**EUST3003. European Studies dissertation (12 credits)**

Students in this course will be expected to submit a written dissertation based on research into an aspect of European politics, history, culture, or economics. The dissertation must be supervised by a teacher, either in European Studies or in another department of the university. Students enrolled in this course may not enroll in EUST3004.

Assessment: 100% coursework

---

**EUST3004. European Studies research project (6 credits)**

Students in this course pursue independent research and produce a research paper under the supervision of a teacher, either in European Studies or in another department of the university. Students enrolled in this course may not enroll in EUST3003.

Assessment: 100% coursework

**EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is required of all European Studies majors in their third year, will further familiarise students with the major international economic and political institutions in Europe such as the European Union and NATO. The organisation of the institutions will be explored along with the processes by which decisions are made and changes can be introduced. Included in the syllabus will be an examination of Europe in the international setting. Taught within a seminar type framework, students will be encouraged to select, in consultation with a staff member, subject areas within the area of focus for deeper examination.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

---

**EUST3011. European values in conflict (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

While Western Europe has presently experienced a rare if not completely unprecedented period of prolonged peace, that peace is far from being assured as it faces serious divisions along ethnic, religious, cultural and political lines. We will be examining the hot spots and flash points today in Europe by taking account of the deep historical roots of these problems.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

---

**EUST3012. The EU as a global actor and Sino-European relations (6 credits)**

This is an optional course aimed at final year undergraduate students. The course sheds light on the history of the EU and the mechanisms and institutions through which it frames and administers its external relations. It also explores the problems and challenges the EU faces in making its voice heard in global affairs with particular attention being paid to the relations between the EU and China.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination

---

**THE MAJOR IN EUROPEAN STUDIES****FIRST-YEAR REQUIREMENTS****1. EUROPEAN STUDIES CORE COURSE**

EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits)

**2. LANGUAGE CORE COURSES**

LANG1001. French I.1 (6 credits) and

LANG1002. French I.2 (6 credits)

or

LANG1003. German I.1 (6 credits) and

LANG1004. German I.2 (6 credits)

or

LANG1007. Italian I.1 (6 credits) and

LANG1008. Italian I.2 (6 credits)

or

LANG1038. Spanish language I.1 (6 credits) and

LANG1039. Spanish language I.2 (6 credits)

or

LANG1023. Swedish for beginners – Part I (6 credits) and

LANG1024. Swedish for beginners – Part II (6 credits)

or

LANG1025. Portuguese for beginners – Part I (6 credits) and

LANG1026. Portuguese for beginners – Part II (6 credits)

## **SECOND- AND THIRD-YEAR REQUIREMENTS**

### **A. COMPULSORY COURSES**

#### **1. EUROPEAN STUDIES CORE COURSES**

EUST2010. European identity (6 credits) OR

EUST2011 Modern European lifestyle: fashion, food, music and sex in Europe (6 credits)

EUST2020. European Studies in Europe (6 credits)

EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)

#### **2. LANGUAGE CORE COURSES**

LANG2001. French language II.1 (12 credits) and

LANG3001. French language III.1 (12 credits)

or

LANG2004. German II.1 (12 credits) and

LANG3007. German III.1 (12 credits)

or

LANG2010. Italian II (12 credits) and

LANG3012. Italian III (12 credits)

or

LANG2011. Spanish II (12 credits) and

LANG3013. Spanish III (12 credits)

or

LANG2023. Swedish II (12 credits) and

LANG3025. Swedish III (12 credits)

or

LANG2024. Portuguese II (12 credits) and

LANG3026. Portuguese III (12 credits)

### **B. OPTIONAL COURSES (European Studies majors must take eighteen credits from the following lists, including courses from at least two disciplines/programmes as listed below)**

#### **1. EUROPEAN STUDIES COURSES**

EUST2030. The modern imagination in Europe (6 credits)

EUST2012 Problems of contemporary European politics and society (6 credits)

EUST3003. European Studies dissertation (12 credits)

EUST3004. European Studies research project (6 credits)

EUST3011 European values in conflict (6 credits)

EUST3012 The EU as a global actor and Sino-European relations (6 credits)

## 2. DEPARTMENTAL COURSES

### *Comparative Literature*

- CLIT2003. Modern European drama (6 credits)
  - CLIT2021. Reading the nineteenth-century: revolution, romanticism and realism (6 credits)
  - CLIT2022. Reading the nineteenth-century: reaction and modernity (6 credits)
  - CLIT2024. Reading comedy: Dante and Boccaccio (6 credits)
  - CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)
  - CLIT2057. Carnival versus tragedy: Reading renaissance culture (6 credits)
  - CLIT2058. Histories of sexuality (6 credits)
  - CLIT2067. Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)
- 

### *Economics and Finance*

- ECON0107. History of economic thought (6 credits)
  - ECON0301. Theory of international trade (6 credits)
  - ECON0302. International finance (6 credits)
  - ECON0406. The economy and the state (6 credits)
- 

### *English*

- ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)
  - ENGL2010. English novel I (6 credits)
  - ENGL2011. English novel II (6 credits)
  - ENGL2012. Contemporary literary theory (6 credits)
  - ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)
  - ENGL2076. Romanticism (6 credits)
  - ENGL2078. The novel today (6 credits)
  - ENGL2079. Shakespeare (6 credits)
  - ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)
  - ENGL2082. Modern literary criticism (6 credits)
  - ENGL2084. Modernism and short fiction (6 credits)
- 

### *Fine Arts*

- FINE2012. Italian Renaissance art (6 credits)
  - FINE2013. Northern Renaissance art (6 credits)
  - FINE2025. The art of the baroque (6 credits)
  - FINE2026. The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)
  - FINE2027. The formations of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)
  - FINE2028. Vision in crisis (6 credits)
  - FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)
  - FINE2032. Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)
  - FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)
  - FINE2035. Photography and the nineteenth century (6 credits)
  - FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)
- 

### *Geography*

- GEOG2080. Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)

*History*

- HIST2011. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part I: 1780-1850 (6 credits)
  - HIST2012. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)
  - HIST2013. Twentieth-century Europe, Part I: the European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)
  - HIST2014. Twentieth-century Europe, Part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)
  - HIST2021. Nineteenth-century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)
  - HIST2027. The foundation of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
  - HIST2037. Germany between the two World Wars: The rise and fall of Adolf Hitler (6 credits)
  - HIST2038. Germany, 1871-1990: From unification to reunification (6 credits)
  - HIST2042. The history of sport (6 credits)
  - HIST2046. The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)
  - HIST2048. The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)
  - HIST2062. From empire to EU: Culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)
  - HIST2063. Europe and modernity: Cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)
  - HIST2071. Joseph Stalin: His life, policies and historical assessment (6 credits)
  - HIST2072. A history of modern European warfare (6 credits)
  - HIST2073. Prussia in the age of absolutism and reform, 1648-1815 (6 credits)
  - HIST2076. Germany and the Cold War (6 credits)
  - HIST2078. Renaissance Europe 1453-1648 (6 credits)
  - HIST2079. Early modern Europe 1648-1789 (6 credits)
  - HIST2088. From communism to capitalism: Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union after 1980 (6 credits)
- 

*Language Optional Courses*

- LANG0001. Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)
- LANG0002. Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)
- LANG0003. Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)
- LANG0005. Hispanic film and literature (3 credits)
- LANG0006. Italian classical roots of European civilization (3 credits)
- LANG0007. From Viking to Volvo: an introduction to the development of contemporary Sweden (3 credits)
- LANG1035. France today: an overview (3 credits)
- LANG2031. Italian reading course (3 credits)
- LANG2032. Italian and business (3 credits)
- LANG2041. Representations of contemporary German society in the media (3 credits)
- LANG2043. French language and culture I (3 credits)
- LANG2044. French language and culture II (3 credits)
- LANG2047. French reading course (3 credits)
- LANG2048. French songs and lyrics (3 credits)
- LANG2050. A profile of Italian literature I (3 credits)
- LANG2051. A profile of Italian literature II (Contemporary Italian literature) (3 credits)
- LANG2055. Spanish for business I (3 credits)
- LANG2056. Understanding Germany and the Germans (3 credits)
- LANG2057. Spanish language and culture I (3 credits)
- LANG2058. Spanish language and culture II (3 credits)
- LANG3008. Reading course (3 credits)
- LANG3010. German project (3 credits)
- LANG3022. French eastern narratives (3 credits)
- LANG3033. French media and advertising (3 credits)
- LANG3036. French society and cinema (3 credits)
- LANG3048. Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries – The German Romantics (3 credits)
- LANG3053. French literature: the 19th century (3 credits)

- LANG3054. French literature: the 20th century (3 credits)  
 LANG3055. Spanish for business II (3 credits)
- 

### *Music*

- MUSI2007. Western music history 1 (6 credits)  
 MUSI2008. Western music history 2 (6 credits)  
 MUSI2035. Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)  
 MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)
- 

### *Philosophy*

- PHIL2002. Early modern philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2010. Plato (6 credits)  
 PHIL2011. Aristotle (6 credits)  
 PHIL2020. Descartes (6 credits)  
 PHIL2025. Hume (6 credits)  
 PHIL2030. Kant's critical philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2035. Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)  
 PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)  
 PHIL2060. Wittgenstein (6 credits)  
 PHIL2077. Habermas (6 credits)  
 PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2085. Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2090. Foucault (6 credits)  
 PHIL2210. Metaphysics (6 credits)  
 PHIL2360. Political philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature (6 credits)

### *Politics and Public Administration*

- POLI0004. Bureaucracy and the public (6 credits)  
 POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)  
 POLI0009. Comparative politics (6 credits)  
 POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)  
 POLI0021. Understanding global issues (6 credits)  
 POLI0045. The political economy of the European Union (6 credits)  
 POLI0067. Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)

### *Sociology*

- SOCI0001. A history of social theory (6 credits)  
 SOCI0024. Modern social theory (6 credits)  
 SOCI0043. Sociology of contemporary culture (6 credits)
- 

## **JAPANESE STUDIES**

### **First Year**

To qualify for a major in Japanese Studies, students with no prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take a minimum of 24 credits of first year courses from List A below, and students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language may take a minimum of 18 credits of first year courses



from List B below. One optional course (**JAPN1009. Introduction to Japanese linguistics**) is offered to students who wish to study the language more.

#### **List A**

JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)

JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)

JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)

#### **List B**

JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)

JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)

JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)

First year students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language should contact the School general office for the qualification examination date and time in early September [Same conditions also apply to **JAPN2044. Japanese language I(b) (Part 1) and JAPN2055. Japanese language I(b) (Part 2)**, **JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1) and JAPN3055. Japanese language II(b) (Part 2)**, and **JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1) and JAPN3077. Japanese language III(a) (Part 2)**].

### **Compulsory Courses**

#### **JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Introduction to Japanese studies aims to provide a broad-based description of Japanese society and culture. The course will cover various different aspects of Japan, such as history, geography, politics and government, religion and literature. Students will be assigned to a tutorial group either in the first or second semester.

This course is available primarily for those Arts Faculty students who enrol in Japanese language, but students from other faculties may also take the course subject to available places.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations, essay assignments, etc).

#### **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)**

This introductory course is designed for total beginners in the study of the Japanese language. The fundamentals of the Japanese language are presented through a carefully graded syllabus. To cultivate overall Japanese-language ability, emphasis will be placed equally in developing all the four basic skills in speaking, listening, reading and writing.

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, assignments/class performance and final oral test).

**N.B. For pedagogical reasons, some of the classes in this course will be taught in Cantonese. Non-Cantonese speakers should ensure that they are in a class taught through the medium of English. Since Chinese characters will not be specifically taught but will be an integrated part of the course, students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should seek the advice of their teacher at the beginning of the semester.**

#### **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)**

This elementary Japanese course continues to focus on proficiency-based foreign language learning, developing the students' overall Japanese-language ability established in Part 1. While the focus is on a thorough understanding of basic Japanese grammar, it also aims to develop communicative

competence in a diversity of situations. At the end of the course, the successful learner's proficiency level should reach a level of proficiency adequate for the transition to higher-level Japanese studies in the second year.

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, assignments/class performance, and final oral test).

Prerequisite: **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)**

**N.B. Since Chinese characters will not be specifically taught but will be an integrated part of the course, students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should seek the advice of their teacher at the beginning of the semester.**

### **JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This course is open to first year students who have learnt Japanese for approximately 150 hours in other institutions prior to entering HKU, or who already have a level of Japanese proficiency equivalent to students who have successfully completed the course **JAPN1099 Japanese Language I (Part 2)** at the time they are admitted to HKU.

This course covers elementary Japanese grammar, and aims to provide students with fundamental Japanese language ability in the four skills of reading, writing, speaking and listening.

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes and assignments).

### **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **JAPN1188. Japanese Language II (Part 1)**. The course is open to first year students who have successfully completed **JAPN1188**, or first year students who have equivalent level of Japanese language abilities.

Basic grammar will be completely covered, and intermediate grammar will be introduced gradually towards the end of the course. At the end of the course, the successful learner should have acquired the necessary Japanese language abilities and study skills to lead to intermediate level of Japanese proficiency and increased autonomous learning in the third year.

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes and assignments).

Prerequisite: **JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1)**

### Optional Course

### **JAPN1009. Introduction to Japanese linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course is an introductory linguistics course with particular reference to the Japanese language. The language will be viewed from both diachronic and synchronic perspectives and frequent cross linguistic comparisons are made with Cantonese, Mandarin and English. The purpose is to stimulate interest in this particular language and facilitate the acquisitional process while promoting general understanding of human language behaviour, which is deemed important to the interested second language learner.

Assessment: 100% coursework (reading assignment summaries, test, presentation, midterm paper and term project).

## **Second and Third Years**

### **Japanese Studies Programme**

#### **1. The Japanese Studies Programme course structure**

The **Japanese Studies Programme** consists of 3 components:

- (i) *Japanese language* courses:  
Japanese language forms the backbone of the programme in Japanese Studies. The courses in this component are designed to provide a balanced training in reading, writing, speaking and listening and to take students from elementary to advanced levels of competence in each of these skills.
- (ii) *Japanese language-intensive* courses:  
Courses in this category are used to back up the core language courses and are designed to broaden students' knowledge of Japanese through a wide range of materials in novels, short stories, journalism, essays, comic books, TV, internet and so on. The primary aim of these courses, however, is to make use of such materials to analyse and discuss various aspects of Japanese society and culture. All *language-intensive* courses require knowledge of the Japanese language and are open to students who are taking Japanese language courses. Other students who have attained a comparable level of proficiency in Japanese may also apply for admission to these courses.
- (iii) Japan-related *interdisciplinary content* courses:  
*Interdisciplinary content* courses are normally taught by members of the Japanese Studies programme and by members of other disciplines (such as Fine Arts, History, Geography, Music and Sociology) who specialize in aspects of Japanese Studies. The aim of these courses is to provide students with a deeper understanding of various aspects of Japanese society and culture. *Interdisciplinary content* courses are open to all students in the Faculty of Arts and some other Faculties/Schools. Some courses are open to students from all faculties.

## 2. Major in Japanese Studies Programme

- 2A. A major in Japanese Studies consists of 54 credits in the **Japanese Studies programme** to be taken in the Second and Third years.

To major in Japanese Studies, students who have no prior qualifications in the Japanese language and completed **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)**, **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)** and **JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)** in the first year must normally take the following language courses in their second year:

**JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who do not participate in the one-year exchange to Japan must normally take the following courses in their third year.

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who participate in the one-year exchange to Japan must normally take the following courses in their third year:

**JAPN3188. Japanese Language IV (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3199. Japanese Language IV (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who have prior qualifications in the Japanese language and completed **JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**, **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)** and **JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)** in the first year must normally take the following language courses in their second and/or third year to major in Japanese Studies.

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)****JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

However, students who have course instructors' permission to do so can take JAPN3188 and JAPN3199 instead of/in addition to JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) and JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) as a part of the BA requirement.

In addition, all the students must complete at least one *Japanese language-intensive* course (6 credits) (to be selected from List G at the end of this section) in each of the second and third years, and must also complete three *interdisciplinary content* courses (6 credits each) (to be selected from List H at the end of this section) during the two-year period that comprises their second and third years (completing at least one in each of their second and third years).

**2B. Special Honours (SH) in Japanese Studies**

## Goals and objectives of the SH

The SH provides students with opportunities to achieve upper-advanced levels of Japanese language proficiency, along with superior critical and analytical understanding in the study of Japan. By the end of the programme, students will be able to:

- Use Japanese with high levels of accuracy and fluency in most formal and informal contexts on practical, social, and abstract topics.
- Effectively express themselves, support opinions, and hypothesize in oral/ written communication.
- Read a variety of literary texts and expository prose with complete comprehension.
- Follow the essentials of complex discourse in academic/ professional settings, in lectures, speeches and reports.
- Attain a superior understanding of a range of fields within Japanese Studies, sufficient to form a sound basis for postgraduate research in either an English-medium or a Japanese-medium programme.
- Display the ability to articulate a sophisticated level of critical and analytical argument about Japan in Japanese, sufficient to form a sound basis for postgraduate research in a Japanese-medium programme.

## Eligibility

- Students who took part in one-year exchange programmes in Japan.
- Students who are not in the above group, but obtained grade A in **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)**, and also have teachers' recommendation.

## Assessment for Special Honours Degree

Exit assessment based on course grades: an average grade of B or above in Japanese Studies major courses is required for the award of Special Honours.

## Course/ credit requirements

The SH consists of 60 credit units as follows.

## ■ Core language courses

To obtain Special Honours in Japanese Studies, students must take either one of the following five combinations of language courses.

**A:**

Year 1: JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)  
           JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)  
 Year 2: JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
           JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)  
 (with grade A in JAPN2099 and teacher's recommendation)  
 Year 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
           JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

**B:**

Year 1: JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)  
           JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)  
 Year 2: JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
           JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)  
 (one year exchange)  
 Year 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
           JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

**C:**

Year 1: JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
           JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)  
 Year 2: JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)  
           JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)  
 (with grade A in JAPN2199 and teacher's recommendation)  
 Year 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
           JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

**D:**

Year 1: JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
           JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)  
 (one year exchange)  
 Year 2 or 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
           JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

**E:**

Year 1: JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
           JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)  
 Year 2: JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)  
           JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)  
 (one year exchange)  
 Year 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
           JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

**■ Language-intensive courses**

12 credits including at least 6 credits from the following courses.

JAPN3005. Media Japanese (6)  
 JAPN3016. Advanced business Japanese (6)

Non-SH students are not allowed to take the language intensive courses above. Exceptions can be made at the teacher's discretion in the case that non-SH students wish to take the courses.

**■ Content courses**

24 credits including at least 12 credits from the following courses.

JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6)  
 JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (9) (The essay has to be written in Japanese)

JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6)

JAPN3009. Japanese films (6)

JAPN3021. Communication and society (6)

Non-SH students are not allowed to take the content courses above, with the exception of JAPN3006. Exceptions can be made at the teacher's discretion in the case that non-SH students wish to take the courses.

#### Credit transfer

##### ■ Core language courses

JAPN3188 (Part 1) and JAPN3199 (Part 2) are mandatory for SH students and credit transfer for these courses is not accepted.

##### ■ Language intensive courses and content courses

Credit transfer can be considered if the student took similar courses in other institutions. The student is required to submit detailed information about the course (ex: syllabus and course description, course materials, etc.) to programme coordinators in order to have the credit transfer considered.

### 3. Minor in Japanese Studies Programme

The **Japanese Studies Programme (Disciplinary Minors)** consists of 24 credit units as follows:

#### 3A. Minor in Japanese Language

A minor in Japanese Language shall consist of 24 credit units. Students with no prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take 24 credits from List C below.

##### List C

**JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

The pre-requisite courses are **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)** and **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)**

Students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take 12 credits from List D below.

##### List D

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

In addition, they must complete at least two third year *Japanese language-intensive* courses (each 6 credits) (to be selected from List G at the end of this section) in the third year.

The pre-requisite courses are **JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)** and **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**.

#### 3B. Minor in Japanese Culture

A minor in Japanese Culture shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year *interdisciplinary content* courses from the Japanese Studies syllabus. Students must complete at least one *interdisciplinary content* course (6 credits) (to be selected from List H at the end of this section) in each of the second and third years. As a pre-requisite, students must pass 6 credits of

First Year courses in the first or second semester. The pre-requisite course is **JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)**. The following courses may not be counted towards a minor in Japanese culture: core *language* courses and *language-intensive* courses.

---

## Second Year Courses

### **JAPN2002. Japan in Japanese (6 credits)**

This tutorial-based *language-intensive* course is primarily a reading course only offered to second-year students who have successfully completed **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)** and **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)**. The course aims to develop the students' reading skills through guided readings on Japanese culture and society. As the students learn to read more fluently, they also become aware of and enhance their knowledge of Japanese culture, and improve their linguistic skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework (weekly assignments, vocabulary quizzes, comprehension tests, project work (short report and presentation)).

Prerequisite: **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)** or **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)**

---

### **JAPN2007. Modern Japanese short stories (6 credits)**

This is a tutorial-based *language-intensive* course for second year students the students. It aims to introduce students to the richness of Japanese literature, through careful study of a number of modern short stories. Students will be required to read original Japanese texts written by representative writers. Themes and ideas in the stories will be thoroughly discussed. Literary styles and techniques of different writers will be analysed and contrasted in order to enhance students' analytical power and critical thinking. Another aim of the course is to improve students' reading and speaking skills through literary appreciation and discussion. Grammatical explanation will be given in class in order to facilitate understanding.

Assessment: 100% coursework (tests, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

Prerequisite: **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)** or **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** and **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)**

---

### **JAPN2008. Translation I (Japanese into English) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *language-intensive* course aims to provide students with skills in translating Japanese texts into English. Students will have the opportunity to learn how to analyse Japanese sentences in detail and translate them accurately into idiomatic English. We start with simple texts which are chosen to demonstrate a variety of sentence structures, and gradually we progress to more complicated texts, dealing with topics studied in some of the *content* courses. Various types of special vocabulary and style will be introduced as the course progresses. Students will be expected to prepare for class by working on the texts before coming to class. There will be a number of written assignments in which the students will have to analyse sentence structures and prepare written translations of short texts.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)** or **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN3055. Japanese language II(b) (Part 2)**

Corequisite: **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)** and **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** and **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)** or **JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1)** and **JAPN3077. Japanese language III(a) (Part 2)**

**JAPN2009. Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**

This *language-intensive* course aims to provide students with basic skills in translating Japanese texts into Chinese and vice versa. Students will translate short, simple texts, chosen to illustrate various sentence patterns in Chinese and Japanese. Texts with more complex structures with a variety of vocabulary and style will gradually be introduced to build up students' skills. Students will be familiarised with a number of reference tools useful in Chinese/Japanese translation and will use them in their work.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Corequisite: **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)** and **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** and **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)**

---

**JAPN2032. The changing image of Hong Kong in Japanese writings (6 credits)**

This is a tutorial-based *language-intensive* course for second year students. Throughout the 19th and 20th centuries, numerous Japanese travellers visited Hong Kong for various purposes. As a highly modernized city with a colonial atmosphere, Hong Kong made a very strong impression on these travellers. Japanese records and articles about Hong Kong are thus abundant. In this course, representative passages will be selected and studied in their original texts.

Through reading these materials, we aim to enhance students' understanding of Hong Kong-Japan relations. Typical images or views of Japanese people on Hong Kong will be investigated in association with their background. Events such as anti-Japan riots, the Diaoyutai issue and the phenomenon of the popularity of Japanese culture among youngsters, which have significant influence on Hong Kong-Japan relations, will be looked at and discussed.

As a *language-intensive* course, we also aim to improve the students' reading capacity by exposing them to various styles of writings. Writing techniques and the presentation of argument will also be noted to strengthen the students' analytical power and critical thinking.

Assessment: 100% coursework (quizzes, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

---

**JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2)**, and covers elementary Japanese grammar. It is a balanced course involving reading, writing, speaking and listening comprehension. The course aims to provide students with fundamental Japanese language ability.

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, and assignments).

Prerequisite: **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)** or equivalent

**N.B. This course is designed for students who have studied only part of elementary Japanese grammar. Students with special/additional Japanese language background ( e.g. Those who have attended language courses outside the university, have lived in Japan, or have Japanese parents) should consult the teachers first to determine the suitability of taking the course. Students may be required to take a qualifying examination.**

---

**JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)**, and basic grammar will be completely covered. More training will be provided to enable the students to successfully use the basic grammar already learnt to express themselves in natural and fluent Japanese. Real everyday learning materials will be used to encourage autonomous learning. At the end of the course, the successful learner should have acquired the necessary Japanese language ability and study skills to lead to intermediate level of Japanese proficiency and increased autonomous learning in the third year.



Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, and assignments).

Prerequisite: **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)**

**N.B. This course is designed for students who have studied only part of elementary Japanese grammar. Students with special/additional Japanese language background (e.g. Those who have attended language courses outside the university, have lived in Japan, or have Japanese parents) should consult the teachers first to determine the suitability of taking the course. Students may be required to take a qualifying examination.**

#### **JAPN2036. Japanese text analysis (3 credits)**

The course will use a variety of samples of short Japanese texts which will be read and explained in interactive tutorials. The course objectives are to train students in grammatical and textual analysis of Japanese texts. The aim is to enhance students' understanding of complex grammatical structures, to enable students to analyse and differentiate among different text types, and to grasp the textual elements that ensure the cohesion and coherence of a text. The course has no text book apart from material prepared (and put on WebCT) by the teacher. Students are however expected to use reference works on Japanese grammar as well as dictionaries. This course is a prerequisite for taking **JAPN3007. Translation II - Japanese –English** in the third year.

Assessment: 100% coursework (50% participation, 50% tests and assignments).

#### **JAPN2037. Interpretation I (Putonghua and Cantonese – Japanese) (6 credits)**

This elementary course in interpretation is skill-oriented (listening and speaking) with a focus on rendering Putonghua or Cantonese into simple Japanese and vice versa. This course is designed for those who had no previous Japanese training before they were admitted to **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)**. A variety of carefully graded teaching material is selected to enhance comprehension and facilitate immediate response in the target language. This course places emphasis on the interpretation of a heard message and the expression of one's intention, not on grammaticality.

Assessment: 100% coursework (oral presentation, listening quizzes, individual assessment)

Prerequisite: **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)** (with no Japanese language training prior to **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)**)

#### **JAPN2038. Interpretation II (Putonghua and Cantonese – Japanese) (6 credits)**

This continuation course from Interpretation I will further enhance students' ability in the reception and production of the target language.

Assessment: 100% coursework (oral presentation, listening quizzes, individual assessment)

Prerequisite: **JAPN2037. Interpretation I (Putonghua and Cantonese – Japanese)** (with no Japanese language training prior to **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)**)

### **Third Year Courses**

#### **JAPN3003. Selected readings in Japanese studies (6 credits)**

This tutorial-based *language-intensive* course provides an opportunity to read and discuss prescribed Japanese texts in a specific field of Japanese Studies, and is open to third year students who have successfully completed **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)** and **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** and at least one *language-intensive* course. The texts are selected with a view to improving the level of Japanese language proficiency of the third year students.

Assessment: 100% coursework (short quizzes, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

Prerequisite: **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part2)**

**JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)**

This *Japanese-medium interdisciplinary content* course looks at selected works of fiction written by postwar Japanese writers. Students will be expected to read, understand and analyse representative works of the writers in their original Japanese. Themes, literary techniques and styles of the various fictional works used in the course will be critically discussed in order to help students understand and enjoy Japanese literature in greater depth.

Assessment: 100% coursework (discussions and essay assignment).

Corequisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**

---

**JAPN3005. Media Japanese (6 credits)**

This *advanced language-intensive* course is designed for the students who are enrolled in **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)** to further enhance their listening ability of the Japanese language by means of intensive listening to the current Japanese news programme – primarily internet television and radio. Heavy emphasis will be placed on current affairs in Japan.

Assessment: 100% coursework (quizzes).

Corequisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**

---

**JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (9 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course may be taken only by third year students who have taken at least 54 credits as part of their BA in Japanese Studies, and who wish to specialize in a particular topic. This topic is to be selected, approved, and discussed under the tutorial guidance of a supervisor, before being written up in either English or Japanese as an extended research essay. The minimum length required is 8,000 words in English, or 10,000 Japanese characters.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN3007. Translation II - Japanese – English (6 credits)**

This advanced translation course aims to help students acquire the necessary skills and strategies to be able to render a variety of Japanese texts into appropriate English. The first objective of the course is to improve the students' competence in both the original language (Japanese) and the target language (English). Students are expected to acquire the necessary grammatical and analytical tools to reach a grammatically and semantically correct understanding of the Japanese text. This objective will be attained through practical exercises in translating Japanese texts into English, both in class and as homework. The second objective is to introduce the students to a number of translation strategies and concepts which can help them evaluate their own translations and those of others. Various approaches to translation and their appropriateness for different types of texts will be discussed. This objective will be reached through lectures, handouts, and practical exercises in evaluating particular translations in terms of the theories introduced.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **JAPN2008. Translation I (Japanese into English) or JAPN2036. Japanese text analysis**

---

**JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)**

This *Japanese-medium interdisciplinary content* course looks at the contemporary Japanese popular music scene since World War Two. The main approach used will be anthropological rather than musicological or ethno-musicological. The course will take a close look at how the Japanese popular

music industry was established and developed. It will also examine how the images of particular popular singers and songs were constructed by the music industry, and then revised to take account of the response of audiences. We will also explore the social and historical situation in which the popularity of a particular singer and song reflects.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignment, quiz and test).

Corequisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part2)**

---

#### **JAPN3009. Japanese film (6 credits)**

This *Japanese-medium interdisciplinary content* course introduces contemporary Japanese filmmakers (e.g. Iwai Shunji, Kitano Takeshi, etc.) and their works. Students will read part of scenarios of their major films, watch the films (with Japanese, English and/or Chinese subtitle) and discuss them all in Japanese. The course aims to enhance the students' skills of reading/listening/watching Japanese films and their scenarios, to provide them with the basic knowledge about Japanese films and their makers and to offer opportunities to discuss on Japanese films in Japanese.

Assessment: 100% coursework (essay and discussions).

Corequisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**

---

#### **JAPN3010. Translation II (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**

This *language-intensive* course is a continuation of **JAPN2009. Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese)**. It aims to further develop students' skills in translating more complex passages written in Japanese and Chinese. Passages will be chosen from established sources in Chinese and Japanese covering various topics and subjects.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Corequisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) and JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) or JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part1) and JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part2).**

---

#### **JAPN3011. Japanese in popular culture (6 credits)**

This *language-intensive* course introduces a variety of Japanese found in fairy tales, children's songs, TV programmes, magazines, *manga*, *anime*, popular songs, poems and others. The course aims to provide the students with an opportunity to expose themselves to the various forms of Japanese and to enhance their Japanese language ability.

Assessment: 100% coursework (short quizzes, presentations and essay assignments)

Prerequisite: **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) or JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part2)**

---

#### **JAPN3014. Project in Japanese business (6 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course is designed to integrate the student's knowledge of the Japanese language, society and culture, and to apply that knowledge to a practical internship with a Japanese business organization. Through a short-term internship, the student will gain real life experience dealing with Japanese managers while perfecting his or her communication and interpersonal skills in a Japanese business environment. Following the internship, the students will analyse and report in an essay the problems that he or she has encountered in light of theoretical frameworks.

Assessment: 100% coursework (Proposal, Project, and Essay).

Prerequisite: Either **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) or JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part2)** and at least one *language-intensive* course and two *interdisciplinary content* courses.

**JAPN3015. Business Japanese (3 credits)**

This is a *language-intensive* course for third year students. There is one class a week. The class will concentrate on basic skills for spoken business Japanese and on the appropriate behavior that needs to accompany it. Students will learn language styles, vocabulary, and phraseology to deal with a variety of business situations. Those who are enrolled in **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)** or **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)** cannot take this course.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignments, quizzes, and oral interview test)

---

**JAPN3016. Advanced business Japanese (6 credits)**

This is an *advanced language-intensive* course for the students who are enrolled in **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**. There are two classes a week. One class will concentrate on reading and understanding business correspondence and other business documents. Students will learn the formats required in Japanese business correspondence, and how to structure business correspondence on a variety of topics. They will increase their knowledge of formal honorific written Japanese, as well as specialized business vocabulary, in order to allow them to understand and compose these documents. The second class will go beyond the basics of spoken business Japanese and focus on more advanced interactive skills. Students will learn appropriate language styles, vocabulary, and phraseology to deal with a variety of business situations.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignments, written/ oral quizzes, discussions, and presentations).

Corequisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)** or **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**.

---

**JAPN3020. Advanced translation, Japanese to Chinese (6 credits)**

This *language-intensive* course aims to promote students' skills in translating Japanese texts into Chinese. Through discussions and regular practices, students will learn about the subtleties and complexities of Japanese expressions, and how to render them into fluent Chinese. To familiarize students with different genres of writings, various kinds of Japanese texts, for example newspaper articles, literary works etc. will be introduced. A small translation project will be incorporated to enhance language competence and translation skills.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Corequisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** and **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)** or **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part1)** and **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part2)**.

---

**JAPN3021. Communication and society (6 credits)**

This *Japanese-medium interdisciplinary content* course explores the social behaviour of Japanese people that is embedded in their language use. A sociolinguistic approach to Japanese culture is promoted through students' active participation in the empirical analyses of language variation such as dialects, gender difference, and age markers. Coursework also includes the examination of problems that frequently occur in cross-cultural communication.

Assessment: 100% coursework (project, presentation, journal writing, essays).

Corequisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)** or **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**.

---

**JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1) (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **JAPN2055. Japanese language I(b) (Part 2)**. It aims to provide a quick and effective way to learn essential Japanese, thereby establishing a solid foundation for study of Japanese at a higher level. To make the most of the course, students must commit themselves to

working outside the classroom, for example, memorizing the new vocabulary and doing the weekly written and listening exercises. The course is open to third year students of the Faculty of Arts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: **JAPN2055. Japanese language I(b) (Part 2)** or equivalent

---

### **JAPN3055. Japanese language II(b) (Part 2) (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1)**. It aims to consolidate what students have learned in **JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1)**. To make most of the course, students must commit themselves to working outside the classroom, for example, memorizing the new vocabulary and doing the weekly written and listening exercises. The course is open to third year students of the Faculty of Arts who have completed and passed the examination of **JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: **JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1)** or equivalent

---

### **JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This language course is open to students who have successfully completed **JAPN3055. Japanese language II(b) (Part 2)**. The course provides further training for the students to obtain a balanced range of language skills. In addition, the course is designed to enhance students' understanding of Japanese society and culture so that they can use the obtained skills appropriately.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: **JAPN3055. Japanese language II(b) (Part 2)** or equivalent

---

### **JAPN3077. Japanese language III(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of **JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1)**. It aims to consolidate students' Japanese knowledge through oral practices and other classroom activities, and further develop their language skills. This course is open to students who have successfully completed **JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: **JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1)** or equivalent

---

### **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This *language* course is designed for students who took part in one-year exchange programmes in Japan or who have similar levels of proficiency in Japanese. Students in the Special Honours stream in Japanese Studies are required to complete the course. The course integrates the four language skills, listening, speaking, reading, and writing, and its aim is to help students achieve upper-advanced levels of Japanese proficiency. **JAPN3188** mainly focuses on the training of language skills necessary for the course assignments that are scheduled in the following **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**. Credit transfer for this course is not accepted.

Assessment: 100% coursework (classroom performance 30%, homework 30%, quizzes 20%, final report 20%)

Prerequisite: Course instructors' approval.

**JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This *language* course is designed for students who took part in one-year exchange programs in Japan or who have similar levels of proficiency in Japanese. The students who wish to be in the Special Honours stream in Japanese Studies are required to complete the course. The course introduces hands-on activities so that students can put the items learned in the previous **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)** in practical use. Credit transfer for this course is not accepted.

Assessment: 100% coursework (classroom performance 30%, homework 20%, project 50%)

Prerequisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)** and Course instructors' approval.

---

**Second and Third Year Courses****JAPN2003. Introduction to Japanese literature (6 credits)**

This general survey *interdisciplinary content* course deals with Japanese novels, poems, and plays. The aim of this course is to provide students with a basic knowledge of the historical development of Japanese literature. The course covers Japanese myth, *monogatari*, *waka*, *renga*, and *haiku*.

Assessment: 100% coursework (tests, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

Prerequisite: Basic Japanese language knowledge is required.

---

**JAPN2010. Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by lectures and tutorials - focuses on various aspects of Japanese business. It is particularly concerned with the social organization and culture of the Japanese salaryman, and deals with such varied topics as company socialization, decision-making, management procedures, gender relations, leisure activities, sake drinking, and so on. The course is open to both second- and third-year students of Japanese Studies, as well as to students from other departments and faculties who may have an academic interest in its contents.

Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects & final essays).

---

**JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by lectures and tutorials - is designed to provide undergraduate students specializing in Japanese Studies with a comprehensive introduction to, and understanding of, certain aspects of contemporary Japanese society. As such it will focus on such themes as comics, tourism, sexuality, and TV dramas.

Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects & final essays).

---

**JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course will examine the history of Chinese-Japanese relations in the context of East Asian world order up to the early twentieth century. Attention will be paid to the fact that the transfer of Chinese culture from China to Japan throughout history has been as much a political process as a cultural one both for China and Japan. The reverse flow of 'acquired' Western culture from Meiji Japan to China in the early twentieth century will also be examined in some detail in order to provide a comparative perspective on the modernization of the two countries. Students must be able to read Chinese. A knowledge of Japanese will be helpful.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations and essays).

**JAPN2015. Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by lectures and tutorials - concentrates on the study of Japanese enterprise groupings. It will start with three major theoretical perspectives on economic organizations - structural, strategic, and institutional - to enable students to theoretically understand Japanese enterprise groupings. The histories of different enterprise groupings, their operation, and the function these groupings serve will then be examined. As such it will focus on such topics as the special roles of main banks, general trading firms, insurance companies, core member corporations of the groupings, and the so-called preferential trading between core large corporations and their peripheral companies. Finally, the discussion of these topics will be placed in the context of Japanese and American trade conflicts so that students can have a general understanding of the conflicts.

Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects & final essays).

---

**JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I  
Comparative phonology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course will detail the phonological components of Japanese and Cantonese through extensive reading of current theories and a contrastive analysis. Besides construing both common and specific traits of the sound system of human languages, the course will help students familiarize themselves with the most common sets of transcription used in language studies which include the most important one, the International Phonetic Alphabets (IPA).

Assessment: 100% coursework (a series of transcription tests and a final project on comparative studies).

Prerequisite: **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2), JAPN2055. Japanese language I(b) (Part 2) or Certificate Japanese Courses**

---

**JAPN2018. Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course looks at various aspects of art and popular culture in Japan. It will mainly focus on contemporary Japan, looking at (for example) television, manga (comics), music, tea ceremony, and ceramic art. The main approach used will be anthropological/ sociological. We will look at the production and consumption of art and popular culture. How is it produced, by whom, and for whom? Who engages in these artistic or cultural activities, how, and why? We will ask what we can learn about Japanese society by looking at the way cultural and artistic activities are organized and engaged in. We will also look at some examples of art and popular culture in contemporary Japan – such as comics and television dramas – and ask what these texts tell us about Japanese society. Possibilities for coursework include the analysis of such texts and their penetration into other East Asian societies, including Hong Kong. However, it should be noted that a high standard of analysis will be demanded and the theoretical content is significant.

Assessment: 100% coursework (two essays, oral presentation and tutorial participation)

---

**JAPN2024. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese III  
Syntactic features and pedagogical implications (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course firstly focuses on theoretical discussion of grammatical peculiarities of the two languages in question, from the perspective as two rather distinctively typed natural languages of the world. Next, they are examined and contrasted in relation to potential problem areas when they are respectively considered as the source language as well as the target language in the course of acquisition, i.e. for Cantonese native speakers learning Japanese, and vice versa.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assessment portfolio including lecture and reading summaries, tests presentation and term paper).

---

### **JAPN2026. Japanese language III extended (6 credits)**

This *language-intensive* course is designed for students who have spent one year studying in Japan or who have a similar level of proficiency in Japanese\*. The course introduces activities that integrate the four language skills, listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Coursework assignments include discussions, role-plays, debating, summarizing written documents, expressing opinions in essays, oral presentations, etc. Some of the topics covered in the course are: self-improvement, cultural comparisons, social issues, and international relations.

(\* For these students, a recommendation from a teacher of Japanese Studies programme is required).

Assessment: 100% coursework (classroom performance, homework, project).

---

### **JAPN2027. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

Potential areas of native language interference in the acquisition of the pronunciation system in a foreign language are illustrated by native speakers of Cantonese and Japanese. Theoretical discussions and knowledge in **JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I** are used as a basis for training students to predict areas of interference in this *interdisciplinary content* course. Languages such as English, Mandarin, French and Korean will be cited for relevant reference.

Assessment: 100% coursework (tutorial tasks, test, and a final project on pedagogy).

Prerequisite: **JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I - Comparative phonology**

---

### **JAPN2029. Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This *interdisciplinary content* course introduces the way in which Japanese popular music was integrated into the Hong Kong music scene in the 1980s when the influence of Japanese popular music became highly visible. To do so, firstly we will take a close look at the popular music scene in Japan in the 1970s and the 1980s. Secondly, we will examine how socio-political developments in Hong Kong shaped the characteristics of the local popular music industry and affected the way it has selected, imported, and distributed Japanese popular music. Furthermore, the course will look at the changes in the way Japanese popular music was consumed in Hong Kong from the 1990s to the present. By so doing, it aims to give the students an introduction to the contemporary popular music scene in Hong Kong and Japan. The main approach used will be social scientific rather than musicological.

Assessment: 100% coursework (quiz, test and essay).



**JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This interdisciplinary content course focuses on intercultural communication involving Japanese professionals. We will explore how and why members of different groups misunderstand each other in spoken, written and electronically mediated communication. We will consider the ways in which people use language to claim and to display their own complex and multiple identities. Rather than imposing one style on all Japanese or Chinese people, we will take a situation-based approach to professional communication across cultures.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays)

---

**JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course introduces students to the workings of the electronic media in Japan. We will focus on the following three areas: coverage of the Hong Kong handover; TV documentary programmes on international affairs; and Japanese TV entertainment programmes available in Hong Kong. We will examine how the Japanese media covered the 1997 handover in comparison with other international media organisations. Students will then watch and analyse feature-length documentaries that influenced subsequent decisions of Japanese Government officials. In addition, we will consider how Hong Kong Chinese have distributed and consumed Japanese cartoons, dramas and entertainment shows since the 1970s.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays)

---

**JAPN2034. Education in contemporary Japanese society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Education in contemporary Japan has been both praised for being child-centred and humanistic, and criticized as pressurized and exam-focused. This course tries to sort out the myths from the realities. We look at education from preschools to high schools, and find out how serious problems like bullying and exam pressure really are. We also ask if Japanese education gives all children an equal chance, and look at how Japanese children who have lived overseas cope when they return. A visit to the Japanese schools in Hong Kong is arranged as part of the course, allowing those who take the course to see Japanese education with their own eyes.

Assessment: 100% coursework (two essays, oral presentation and class participation)

---

**JAPN2035. Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to provide students with an overall knowledge of gender issues in contemporary Japan and Hong Kong. It aims to help students develop an awareness of gender issues in daily life in their own society, as well as to gain knowledge of the historical and cultural background for modern gender roles. The course encourages students to form independent opinions and ideas and to present them cogently and persuasively in speech and writing. Students are also expected to reflect on their own gender role and their assumptions about gender differences, as well as gender discrimination in their own society. Through lectures and tutorials we shall explore various sides of women's lives in Japan while comparing with Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework (a research project, reflections, presentations, participation in group discussions)

**JAPN2039. Negotiation and conflict resolution: a cross-cultural perspective (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to some powerful frameworks for analyzing and preparing for negotiations and for resolving conflicts. Students get practice applying these frameworks through in-class simulations and role plays. The class utilizes numerous cross-cultural cases and readings (particularly concerning Japan and mainland China) to help students develop an awareness of how the cultural context and the cultural background of negotiators could influence negotiations.

Assessment: 100% course work (class participation, negotiation planning documents, class diary and research paper or book review)

---

**JAPN2040. Understanding Japanese business through novels (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce students to some economic or business novels translated into English. By understanding the feelings, attitudes and personalities of a wide variety of literary characters students should be able to gain insights into the drama of working life from a Japanese perspective. They should also gain a deeper understanding of how certain significant economic events have impacted companies and their employees.

Assessment: 100% course work (class participation, two analytical essays)

Prerequisite: none, although **JAPN2010** or a prior knowledge of Japanese business or the Japanese economy would be helpful.

---

**JAPN2044. Japanese language I(b) (Part 1) (3 credits)**

This course is open to second and third year BA students with no previous knowledge of the Japanese language. It aims to provide the fundamental knowledge of Japanese language and is intended to help students build basic linguistic and communicative skills in Japanese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

N.B.: Since Chinese characters will not be particularly taught but will be an integral part of the course, students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should seek the advice of their teacher at the beginning of the semester before the add and drop period.

---

**JAPN2055. Japanese language I(b) (Part 2) (3 credits)**

This course is continuation of **JAPN2044. Japanese language I(b) (Part 1)** and provides a balanced training in reading, writing, speaking and listening to develop students' Japanese language ability established in Part 1.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: **JAPN2044. Japanese language I(b) (Part 1)** or equivalent

N.B.: Since Chinese characters will not be particularly taught but will be an integral part of the course, students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should seek the advice of their teacher at the beginning of the semester before the add and drop period.

---

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This *language* course is a continuation of **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)**, and offers a balanced range of language skills, but with an additional emphasis on the applications of linguistic principles and methodology, and on reading skills both general and specialized. Students who took

part in one-year exchange programmes in Japan cannot take this course. Credit transfer for this course is not accepted.

Assessment: 100% coursework (test, quizzes, presentation, homework/portfolio)

Prerequisite: **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or equivalent.

### **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This *language* course is a continuation of **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** and again offers a balanced range of language skills, but with an additional emphasis on the applications of linguistic principles and methodology, and on reading skills both general and specialized. Students who took part in one-year exchange programmes in Japan cannot take this course. Credit transfer for this course is not accepted.

Assessment: 100% coursework (test, quizzes, presentation, homework/portfolio)

Prerequisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)**

## **List F. Japanese Language Courses**

### *Second Year*

**JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

### *Second and Third Years*

**JAPN2044. Japanese language I(b) (Part 1) (3 credits)**

**JAPN2055. Japanese language I(b) (Part 2) (3 credits)**

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

### *Third Year*

**JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1) (3 credits)**

**JAPN3055. Japanese language II(b) (Part 2) (3 credits)**

**JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)**

**JAPN3077. Japanese language III(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)**

**JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2) (6 credits)**

## **List G. Language-Intensive Courses**

### *Second Year*

**JAPN2002. Japan in Japanese (6 credits)**

**JAPN2007. Modern Japanese short stories (6 credits)**

**JAPN2008. Translation I (Japanese into English) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2009. Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2032. The changing image of Hong Kong in Japanese writings (6 credits)**

**JAPN2036. Japanese text analysis (3 credits)**

**JAPN2037. Interpretation I (Putonghua and Cantonese – Japanese) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2038. Interpretation II (Putonghua and Cantonese – Japanese) (6 credits)**

*Second and Third Years*

**JAPN2026. Japanese language III extended (6 credits)**

*Third Year*

- JAPN3003. Selected readings in Japanese studies (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3005. Media Japanese (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3007. Translation II - Japanese – English (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3010. Translation II (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3011. Japanese in popular culture (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3015. Business Japanese (3 credits)**  
**JAPN3016. Advanced business Japanese (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3020. Advanced translation, Japanese to Chinese (6 credits)**

**List H. Interdisciplinary Content Courses***Second and Third Years*

- JAPN2003. Introduction to Japanese literature (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2010. Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2015. Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I  
Comparative phonology (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2018. Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2024. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese III  
Syntactic features and pedagogical implications (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2027. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II  
Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2029. Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2034. Education in contemporary Japanese society (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2035. Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2039. Negotiation and conflict resolution: a cross-cultural perspective (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2040. Understanding Japanese business through novels (6 credits)**

*Third Year*

- JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (9 credits)**  
**JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3009. Japanese film (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3014. Project in Japanese business (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3021. Communication and society (6 credits)**

The following *interdisciplinary content* courses are available in other disciplines (although not all may be offered each year).

*Second and Third Years*

## Fine Arts

**FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan (6 credits)**

**FINE2048. Arts of Japan (6 credits)**

**FINE2054. Visual culture of modern Japan (6 credits)**

## History

**HIST2008. Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)**

**HIST2009. Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)**

**HIST2040. Life in Tokugawa Japan, 1603-1868 (6 credits)**

## Department of Sociology

**SOCI0017. Japanese economic institutions (6 credits)**

**SOCI0018. Japanese society (6 credits)**

## LANGUAGES

The School of Modern Languages and Cultures, through its Arabic, French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish and Thai sections, provides BA degree courses in Arabic, French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish and Thai for the Arts Faculty, as well as some certificate and voluntary courses available to students of all Faculties. The number of places in each group is limited in order to ensure an appropriate environment for language learning.

*Major in French*

Students enrolled in French courses in their first year may choose to major in French in their second and third years. The objective of the programme is to bring participants to a high level of proficiency in the language as well as to provide them with a sound knowledge of French society and culture.

In order to declare a major in French, applicants must initially complete two foundation courses in their first year (*French I.1* and *French I.2*, first and second semesters, 12 credits in all) and achieve grade C- minimum in these courses. In addition, applicants will normally be required to take part in an intensive course offered by the Centre at the end of the second semester (usually in June).

In their second and third years of study, students pursuing a major in French must take a total of 48 credits of French courses which should normally be distributed as follows: in the Second Year, 24 credits from courses at Level 200, of which 12 credits must be from the core language course, i.e., *French language II.1*; in the Third Year, 24 credits from courses at Level 300, of which 12 credits must be from the core language course, i.e., *French language III.1*. (See list of French courses). In addition, students will normally be required to take part in an intensive course offered by the Centre at the end of the fourth semester (usually in June). Alternatively, students will be strongly encouraged to participate in a linguistic stay in France during the summer.

*Major in German*

The B.A. Major in German provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of both spoken and written German. In addition to the acquisition of these linguistic skills students will be introduced to a wide range of aspects of contemporary German society and culture through the study of numerous multimedia materials and documents in the target language that will be included in courses in area studies, translation and literature in the Second and Third Year.

All German Major Students are encouraged to attend an intensive summer language course (German in Germany) of 4 weeks duration at a university in Germany during the summer between their 2nd and 3rd year and successful completion of such a course at the appropriate level will count as 3 credits

towards their major requirements. Longer stays of one to two semesters are also encouraged and can be arranged through the German Section.

The BA in German combines well with all other majors in the Faculty of Arts and in particular with courses and programmes on linguistics, literature, translation and area studies such as European Studies.

### **Programme Requirements**

#### **First Year**

In the First Year students will have to successfully complete a total of 12 credits in German language by enrolling in the courses LANG1003 German I.1 (6 credits/1st Semester) and LANG1004 German I.2 (6 credits/2nd Semester).

---

#### **Second Year**

In the Second Year students will have to complete a total of 24 credits of courses taught in German: LANG2004 German II.1 (12 credits/whole year), and a total of 12 credits from the following courses: LANG2039 Translation exercise I (3 credits/1st semester), LANG2041 Representations of contemporary German society in the media (3 credits/1st semester), LANG2040 Translation exercise II (3 credits/2nd semester), LANG2042 Producing German texts I (3 credits/2nd semester), LANG2056 Understanding Germany and the Germans (3 credits/2nd semester), LANG2061 German for Business I (3 credits/2<sup>nd</sup> semester).

During the summer between Second and Third Years students are strongly encouraged to attend one of the summer language courses offered by universities in Germany. Successful completion of such a four weeks' course at late beginners/early intermediate level (based on the terminology used in Germany) can be counted as 3 credits towards the requirements for the German Major.

---

#### **Third Year**

In their final year BA majors will have to complete a total of 24 credits from the following courses taught in German: LANG3007 German III.1 (12 credits/whole year), 3 credits from either LANG3048 Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries – The German Romantics (3 credits/2nd semester) or LANG3010 German project (3 credits/2nd semester) and a total of 9 credits from the following courses: LANG3008 Reading course (3 credits/1st semester), LANG3039 German in Germany (3 credits/taught during the summer between Year II & III), LANG3045 Translation exercise III (3 credits/1st semester), LANG3047 Producing German texts II (3 credits/1st semester), LANG3046 Translation exercise IV (3 credits/2nd semester), LANG3056 German for Business II (1<sup>st</sup> semester).

---

### ***Major in Spanish***

Students enrolled in Spanish courses in their first year may choose to major in Spanish in their second and third years. The objective of the programme is to bring participants to a high level of proficiency in the language as well as to provide them with a sound knowledge of Spanish society and culture.

In order to declare a major in Spanish, applicants must initially complete two foundation courses in their first year (Spanish language I.1 and Spanish language I.2, first and second semesters, 12 credits in all).

In their second and third years of study, students pursuing a major in Spanish must take a total of 48 credits of Spanish courses which should normally be distributed as follows: in the Second Year, 24 credits from courses at level 200, of which 12 must be from the core language course, i.e. Spanish II;

in the Third Year, 24 credits from courses at level 300, of which 12 must be from the core language course, i.e. Spanish III (see the list of courses below). In addition, students will be strongly encouraged to participate in a linguistic stay in Spain (or a Hispanic country) during the summer.

### ***Language Minors***

A language minor will provide students with a good command of the four different language skills: speaking, listening, reading and writing. A language minor will also allow students to gain a deeper insight into the contemporary life and culture of the respective country. Languages combine well with all major programmes offered within the Arts Faculty and they also provide students with additional opportunities to pursue further studies overseas.

In order to qualify for a Minor in a language, students must complete a total of 24 credits in their second (12 credits) and third (12 credits) years of studies in one of the languages listed below:

*Arabic, French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish and Thai.*

The recommended courses for a language minor: (All these courses have prerequisites.)

Arabic:	LANG2052. Arabic II (second year, 12 credits) LANG3049. Arabic III (third year, 12 credits)
French:	LANG2001. French Language II.1 (second year, 12 credits) LANG3001. French Language III.1 (third year, 12 credits)
German:	LANG2004. German II.1 (second year, 12 credits) LANG3007. German III.1 (third year, 12 credits)
Italian:	LANG2010. Italian II (second year, 12 credits) LANG3012. Italian III (third year, 12 credits)
Portuguese:	LANG2024. Portuguese II (second year, 12 credits) LANG3026. Portuguese III (third year, 12 credits)
Spanish:	LANG2011. Spanish II (second year, 12 credits) LANG3013. Spanish III (third year, 12 credits)
Swedish:	LANG2023. Swedish II (second year, 12 credits) LANG3025. Swedish III (third year, 12 credits)
Thai:	LANG2022. Thai II (second year, 12 credits) LANG3024. Thai III (third year, 12 credits)

### **Arabic Courses**

#### **First Year**

#### **LANG1036. Arabic for beginners - Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to teach complete beginners the basics of Arabic with respect to the four linguistic skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing. Students will also be introduced to the cultures and societies of the Arabic speaking world. Vocabulary and grammar will be presented in a communicative way for a variety of situations, e.g. making introductions, leave-taking, giving directions, buying things, making telephone calls and so on. The emphasis will be on the spoken language, as well as on providing a foundation of basic Arabic script.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**LANG1037. Arabic for beginners - Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of **Arabic for beginners – Part I**.

Pre-requisite: Arabic for beginners – Part I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**Second Year****LANG2052. Arabic II (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Arabic for beginners – Part II**. The aim of this course is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate materials and a variety of teaching techniques including work with authentic audiovisual resources. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Arabic and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Arabic II** without having previously completed **Arabic for beginners – Part II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Arabic II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

**Third Year****LANG3049. Arabic III (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of Arabic language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding the contemporary Arabic-speaking world, as well as the history and cultural backgrounds.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Arabic III** without having previously completed **Arabic II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Arabic III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

**LANG3050. Arabic in an Arabic-speaking country (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Middle Eastern universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Arabic B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **LANG2052 (Arabic II)**, or establish that they have attained a similar standard.



Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

## French Courses

### First Year

#### **LANG1001. French I.1 (6 credits)**

This course is intended for complete beginners in French and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills. Classes will be conducted in small groups in order to ensure a high degree of interactivity between participants and teachers. Conversation groups and laboratory groups will also be arranged separately on a regular basis.

Prerequisite: Nil

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **LANG1002. French I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **French I.1**. It will further develop the four areas of competence with the view of expanding students' linguistic, pronunciation and communicative skills. As in **French I.1**, separate conversation and laboratory groups will be arranged to complement classroom tuition. In addition, participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the Centre's self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as take advantage of resources accessible through various Internet sites.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **French I.1** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

#### **LANG1035. France today: an overview (3 credits)**

The objective of this one-semester course is to present a broad introduction to contemporary France, its geographical features, its institutions and customs, its people and society. The lectures will be arranged as a series of discussions on selected topics which will include, where needed, insights into France's history and evolution, so as to enable a better understanding of the country's identity and characteristics today. France's current relationship with, and presence in, China and Hong Kong will also be discussed.

This course is essentially intended for First Year students. The medium of instruction is English, no previous knowledge of French is required.

Prerequisite: Nil

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### Second Year

#### **LANG2001. French language – II.1 (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the first-year work. It offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition, reading and textual

analysis, listening comprehension, composition, translation, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques and materials is used. Small groups are arranged throughout the year to ensure maximum opportunities for interactive practice. All students intending to continue the study of French in their third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in France.

Prerequisites: (i) **French II.1** is open to students who have successfully completed **French I.1** and **I.2**

. (ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

Assessment: One Examination and a Coursework element which shall count respectively 60% and 40% of the final grade awarded.

The Examination for **French II.1** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

### **LANG2035. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I (3 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to the task of translating French into Chinese and, to a lesser extent, Chinese into French. Particular attention will be paid to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, especially at grammatical and syntactical levels, between French and Chinese.

One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants' knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with Chinese on key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into Chinese and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide the students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2035** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2035** without enrolling in **LANG2001**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

### **LANG2036. Introduction to French/English translation – Part I (3 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to the task of translating French into English and, to a lesser extent, English into French. Particular attention will be paid to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, at grammatical and lexical levels, between French and English.

One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants' knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with English on key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into English and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2036** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2036** without enrolling in **LANG2001**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**LANG2037. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part II (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of LANG2035 (Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I) taught in the first semester. The objective is to build on the initial work and to widen the scope of investigation regarding the task of translating French into Chinese and, to a lesser extent, Chinese into French. Particular attention will be paid again to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, especially at grammatical and syntactical levels, between French and Chinese.

One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants' knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with Chinese in key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into Chinese and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide the students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2037** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG2035** (Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I) in the first semester. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2037** without enrolling in **LANG2001**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG2038. Introduction to French/English translation – Part II (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of LANG2036 (Introduction to French/English translation – Part I) taught in the first semester. The objective is to build on the initial work and to widen the scope of investigation regarding the task of translating French into English and, to a lesser extent, English into French. Particular attention will be paid again to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, at grammatical and lexical levels, between French and English.

One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants' knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with English in key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into English and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2038** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG2036** (Introduction to French/English translation – Part I) in the first semester. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2038** without enrolling in **LANG2001**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG2043. French language and culture I (3 credits)**

This course is designed to review key aspects of France's contemporary society and culture. The lectures will offer a concise introduction to the country's present institutions and society (government, education, politics, economy, work, current affairs, etc.), and discuss essential cultural features (festivals, customs, traditions, etiquette, colloquialisms, way of life, leisure, etc.) The investigation will be supported by an array of documentation drawn from the media, video footage and web sources. This course is also meant to prepare students for the period of time they are advised to spend in the country during the summer. The teaching material used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

- Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2043** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1001** (French I.1) and **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.
- (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2043** without also enrolling in **LANG2001** (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the first semester.

---

#### **LANG2044. French language and culture II (3 credits)**

This course offers a concise description of the main stages of France's historical development. Key events that have contributed to the shaping of the country throughout its various periods will be presented and their significance discussed. The role and place of the regions within this process will also be discussed, so as to understand the correlation of distinct regional characteristics (e.g., culture, traditions, dialects, architectural heritage, religions) with related historical developments (e.g., invasions and migrations, wars and alliances, social upheavals, regionalisms). The teaching material used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

- Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2044** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1001** (French I.1) and **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.
- (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2044** without also enrolling in **LANG2001** (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the second semester.

---

#### **LANG2045. French speech and sounds – Part I (3 credits)**

The general objectives of this course are as follows: i. to introduce the fundamental notions of French phonetics; ii. to account for typical pronunciation difficulties encountered by students due to the interference of French, Chinese and English, and iii. to improve students' preception and production of French sounds so as to step up their proficiency in spoken French. Class activities and tutorials will be organized in small groups. The course material will be in French, and French will be used as the medium of instruction.

- Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2045** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1001** (French I.1) and **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.
- (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2045** without also enrolling in **LANG2001** (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the first semester.

---

#### **LANG2046. French speech and sounds – Part II (3 credits)**

The general objectives of this course are as follows: i. to discuss important phonological aspects of the French language which generally cause difficulties of perception among students; ii. to step up students' proficiency in French with respect to the spoken and aural dimensions; and iii. to prepare

students for the period of time they are advised to spend in France during the summer. Discussion topics will cover various phonological phenomena in French connected speech, such as elision and assimilation, *liaison and enchaînement*, as well as prosodic features and their paralinguistic implications. Class activities and tutorials will be organized in small groups. The course material will be in French, and French will be the medium of instruction.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2046** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG2045** (French speech and sounds – Part I).

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2046** without also enrolling in **LANG2001** (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the second semester.

---

### **LANG2047. French reading course (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to present and discuss a range of genres and styles of writing (literary and non-literary) so as to reinforce reading skills in French. In this process, the participants will familiarize themselves with specific forms and conventions that relate to and/or define these genres. The investigation will also lead to the analysis of how important acts of communication and types of discourses (viz., descriptive, informative, narrative, prescriptive and argumentative) may appear in these various genres and/or mutate across several genres. This course is very practical in nature and will largely rely on small group activities. The teaching material used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2047** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1001** (French I.1) and **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2047** without also enrolling in **LANG2001** (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the second semester.

---

### **LANG2048. French songs and lyrics (3 credits)**

This course offers a review of key authors who have marked the popular music of the French-speaking world (*la Chanson française*), from the early 20th century to the present day. Through a selection of representative works, the discussion will focus on the reading of texts, their reception by the public, the social context and how, in many instances, particular song lyrics have interacted with and been incorporated into the French language. The literary nature and the cultural dimension of these lyrics will be emphasized throughout the course. Short biographies of important authors will also be examined. In this course, participants will be able to enhance their proficiency in the language and will gain more understanding of French contemporary popular culture. The teaching material used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2048** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1001** (French I.1) and **LANG1002** (French I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2048** without also enrolling in **LANG2001** (French II.1).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the second semester.

### Third Year

#### **LANG3001. French language – III.1 (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year in lectures and tutorials and continues to build on the first- and second-year work. Lectures will make use of literary texts and authentic documents (press clippings, etc.) from France and other French-speaking countries, with the aim of stimulating critical reading. This study of authentic materials will also help students to investigate further French civilization and contemporary culture.

Prerequisite: (i) **French III.1** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**  
 (ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

Assessment: One Examination and a Coursework element which shall count respectively 60% and 40% of the final grade awarded.

The Examination for **French III.1** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

#### **LANG3003. French/English translation: practical skills (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to reinforce students' language skills in French while making them aware of problems arising from transferring meaning from French to English and conversely. Most of the work will focus on common translation difficulties between the two languages and will propose various ways of dealing with them. This course, very practical in nature, will make use of materials drawn from various sources, e.g., literature, press articles, movies, bilingual documents, business correspondence etc.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3003** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**.  
 Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.  
 (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3003** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **LANG3004. French/Chinese translation: practical skills (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to reinforce students' language skills in French while making them aware of problems arising from transferring meaning from French to Chinese, and conversely. Most of the work will focus on common translation difficulties between the two languages and will propose ways of dealing with them. This course, very practical in nature, will make use of materials drawn from various sources, e.g., literature, press articles, movies, bilingual documents, business correspondence, etc.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3004** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**.  
 Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.  
 (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3004** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

#### **LANG3005. French and business (3 credits)**

This course is an introduction to the use of French in a business context. A variety of topics and situations will be studied, such as the structure of a firm and the way it operates both internally and with its partners, job application etc. The teaching materials used for this course will be drawn from

actual sources and discussions will also focus on the local region, with the particular aim to provide the participants with first-hand facts and information on the business relationship between France and Hong Kong.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3005** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3005** without enrolling in **French III.1**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **LANG3022. French eastern narratives (3 credits)**

This course offers an overview of how French writers and travellers wrote about China, Indochina and Japan over the last three centuries, from the debut of French global travelling (early 18th century) to recent periods. Through the close study of depictions and narrations of encounters, the objective will be to recognize trends, contradictions and invariants in this process of channeling home the Far East, either as a romanticized cultural alternative or as a strong repellent. The extent to which these various accounts and representations have inspired the aesthetics and literary productions of contemporary France will also be examined in some instances. The medium of discussion will be mainly French, and the texts (novel excerpts, press, films, iconography) will be in French or, where appropriate, provided with translation.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3022** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3022** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LANG3033. French media and advertising (3 credits)**

The discussion will start with an inventory of the media in France with a particular focus on newspapers and magazines, including web-based publications. It will examine how the press targets the public, using various areas of specialization (e.g. political affiliation, social and current affairs, women issues, family and domestic sphere, etc.). In a second phase, we shall look into how advertising techniques convey information as well as messages of various natures. While studying a large range of selected materials, we will aim at disclosing the rhetorical devices at work in the process of construction of images, mainly inspired by prevalent social mythologies and stereotyped representations.

The discussion will make extensive use of materials under various forms, such as pictures, posters, advertisements, videos, TV excerpts, press samples, webpages etc. The main medium of instruction is French.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3033** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3033** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LANG3034. French essay writing (3 credits)**

In this course, participants will receive tuition and guidance to complete an extended piece of writing in French based on a topic of their choice and in connection with France. Participants will be also encouraged to make use of any materials they may have collected in the course of their stay in the country. The objectives of this course are to increase students' confidence in their handling of written French, to stimulate creative writing and to enhance composition skills.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3034** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.  
 (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3034** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LANG3036. French society and cinema (3 credits)**

This course will make use of films to examine French contemporary society. Cinema will be discussed in connection with social changes brought about since the Second World War. The aim of this course is to use images to analyse how cinema through its language and technical evolution reflected the transformations of modern society.

The discussion will start with 'conventional films', e.g., narratives following the nineteenth century literary tradition focusing on plots and characters. The '*Nouvelle Vague*' and its celebrated directors François Truffaut and Eric Rohmer will help to give a better understanding of the revolution triggered by the post war period and marking the birth of a new film language. Students will use films to discuss social, cultural and gender issues. The role of women in French society will be examined through a series of recent films. The main medium of instruction is French.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3036** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.  
 (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3036** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LANG3038. French in France (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several French universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the French B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **LANG2001** (French Language II.1), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

### **LANG3053. French literature: the 19th century (3 credits)**

French writers such as Chateaubriand, Balzac, Stendhal, Flaubert, Baudelaire and Mallarmé were instrumental in shaping new directions in French and world literatures. The 19th century is a period of overwhelming transformation, with literature and arts at the heart of this wave of changes. In this course, we shall provide a concise introduction to the key figures and works that have marked the literary scene, as well as to the main schools of thought to which contemporary writers are still indebted. The course is particularly designed to enhance participants' reading and analytical skills in the French language and to broaden their knowledge of French life and culture. The discussion will concentrate on texts and excerpts from works in a variety of genres (fiction, drama and poetry) chosen for their representativeness. Biographies of writers will be discussed too. The medium of instruction and discussion will be French, and the texts examined will be in French.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3053** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, students must provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite course.  
 (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3053** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessments: 100% coursework.



**LANG3054. French literature: the 20th century (3 credits)**

French literature was the scene of radical explorations and experiences in the 20th century, from the early surrealists to the oulipian generation. Writers were closely connected to social and political developments in France and outside France, as well as open to other forms of art, such as painting and cinema. This course will introduce the participants to the major writers and movements of this period. The course is particularly designed to enhance participants' reading and analytical skills in the French language and to broaden their knowledge of French life and culture. The discussion will concentrate on texts and excerpts from works in a variety of genres (fiction, drama and poetry) chosen for their representativeness. Biographies of writers will be discussed too. The medium of instruction and discussion will be French, and the texts examined will be in French.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG3054** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, students must provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite course.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG3054** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessments: 100% coursework.

---

**German Courses****First Year****LANG1003. German I.1 (6 credits)**

This beginners course in German language does not require any previous knowledge of German. Students will acquire basic linguistic and communicative skills in German in speaking, listening, reading and writing. Apart from their regular language classes students will be taught in small tutorial groups to ensure an environment highly conducive to practising language skills.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**LANG1004. German I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **German I.1**. It combines linguistic and communicative skills in German with a balanced emphasis on speaking, listening, reading and writing. Small tutorial groups, which will be arranged in addition to the regular language classes, will provide the students with an environment highly conducive to practising their language skills. The course will also encourage students to exploit resources available on the *Internet* and in the Centre's self-practice facilities (*Language Resource Centres* and *Practice Lab*) which provide a wide range of materials for language practice, including audio and videotapes, CD-ROMs and computer programmes. Students intending to proceed to the second year will be provided with a range of self-access materials to maintain and enhance their skills during the summer break.

Prerequisite: **German I.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German I.2** without having enrolled in **German I.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG1040. Contrastive language studies: German – Chinese (3 credits)**

This course looks at the major structural and lexical similarities and differences between the first (Chinese) and target (German) language. Students will be provided with a systematic comparison and

exploration of the languages which cover various linguistic aspects such as phonology, morphology, syntax etc. Special attention will be given to some typical difficulties and frequent mistakes of learning German for Chinese learners with the aim of avoiding those problems in their further studies.  
 Assessment: 100% Coursework.  
 This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## Second Year

### LANG2004. German II.1 (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and builds on the first year work. It offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition; reading and text analysis, listening comprehension, composition, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques is used. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the year to ensure maximum opportunities for interactive practice. All students continuing their studies in the third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in Germany.

Prerequisites: **German I.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German II.1** without having enrolled for **German I.2** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element. In addition, the examination also includes an oral examination.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 40% of the grade awarded for **German II.1**.

---

### LANG2039. Translation exercise I (3 credits)

Students will practise written translations from German to Chinese and Chinese to German using a variety of texts written in different styles. The main aim is to make students aware of the major structural differences between German and Chinese and to provide them with additional information on contemporary German topics.

Co-requisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Translation exercise I** without having enrolled in **German II.1** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course is taught in the first semester only.

---

### LANG2040. Translation exercise II (3 credits)

This course is taught in the second semester only. It is a continuation of **Translation exercise I** and students will practise additional structures and texts.

Prerequisite: **LANG2039** Translation exercise I

Co-requisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Translation exercise II** without having enrolled in **German II.1** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LANG2041. Representations of contemporary German society in the media (3 credits)**

This course will look at representations of various aspects of contemporary German society in the media over the past 50 years. Topics will include: The changing role of women in advertisements since the 50s, American influences on youth culture and everyday life, society in film, society in music, and contemporary German comedians. For each topic students will study authentic materials in German such as advertisements, TV commercials, newspaper texts, songs, film clips and movies.

Co-requisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **LANG2041** without having enrolled in **German II.1** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**LANG2042. Producing German texts I (3 credits)**

This course will provide students with the skills needed to produce texts of different styles such as postcards, personal letters, formal letters, short essays, etc. It will strengthen their vocabulary base and at the same time improve and enhance their ability to write in German.

Co-requisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **LANG2042** without having enrolled in **German II.1** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG2056. Understanding Germany and the Germans (3 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to geographical, political, social and cultural aspects of contemporary Germany. The topics will include: Germany's political system, contemporary life in the unified Germany, family and social life, German customs and traditions and multicultural aspects of Germany society. Emphasis will be given to topics that relate to major current events / developments in Germany. The aim is to assist students in developing a better understanding of contemporary life in Germany and its society as well as to broaden their vocabulary and enhance their German language skills. Guest speakers will be invited to give talks on selected topics. Students will be given the opportunity to discuss and raise in-depth questions during the talks. Classes will be conducted in German and English.

Co-requisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students may not enroll in **Understanding Germany and the Germans** without enrolling in **German II.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG2061. German for business I (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to provide students with the German vocabulary necessary to communicate efficiently in a wide range of business situations and to develop their communication and writing skills in this field. A variety of issues and situations will be addressed such as dealing with and entertaining customers, making contact and travelling, conducting negotiations, describing and introducing a company. In addition, students will be introduced to German commercial correspondence and German trading terminology. Authentic materials and video clippings will be used and field trips to German companies organised to provide students with insights into the actual business conduct in German companies not only in Germany but also in Hong Kong as well as with information about German-Hong Kong business relations.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

## Second/Third Years

### LANG0002. Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides an introduction to contemporary life in Germany. Topics to be covered include: The German Language, Outline of German History, Geographical Diversity, Housing and Urban Development, Federalism, Germany's Political System, Festivals, Family, Youth, Education, Arts and Music, Leisure Time and Sports, Protection of the Environment, Women and Society, and Cultural Representations in Advertising. All lectures will be conducted in English.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

## Third Year

### LANG3007. German III.1 (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **German II.1**. It offers a balanced range of language skills, and furthers the exploration of various linguistic aspects of the language. Special attention will be given to language registers and patterns, specific terminology and structures used in a variety of fields (literature, press reports, business documents etc.) with the aim of stimulating critical reading. As in **German II.1** small tutorial groups will be arranged to ensure oral fluency and writing techniques as well as the development of oral skills in the context of argued discourses and presentations.

Prerequisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German III.1** without having enrolled in **German II.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element. In addition, the examination also includes an oral examination.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 40% of the grade awarded for **German III.1**.

---

### LANG3008. Reading course (3 credits)

This course will only be offered during the first semester. It enhances and extends the language skills acquired during the first and second year through systematic study in the form of text analysis, discussion, translation, etc. of contemporary texts and documents written in different styles such as newspaper and magazine articles, songs etc. drawn from current affairs and life in Germany.

Prerequisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Reading course** without having enrolled in **German II.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in **Reading course** without enrolling in **German III.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 100% of the grade awarded for **Reading course**

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### LANG3010. German project (3 credits)

In this course students will study in depth an approved topic of their choice in German. They will present their findings in class and submit a written project of around 2,000 words in German at the end of the course. Students wishing to enrol in this course are encouraged to make use of their stay in Germany to collect materials for their project.

Prerequisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German project** without having enrolled in **German II.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in **German project** without enrolling in **German III.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 100% of the grade awarded for **German project**. This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

#### **LANG3039. German in Germany (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several German universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the German B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **LANG2004** (Deutsch II.1), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

#### **LANG3045. Translation exercise III (3 credits)**

Students practise translations mainly from English to German using a variety of texts written in different styles. The texts discussed refer to contemporary life in Germany and other German-speaking countries and usually include the following topics: culture, politics and social life. The aim is to make students aware of the major structural and lexical differences between German and English as well as to provide them with some information on contemporary German topics and life-style.

Co-requisites: **German III.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Translation exercise III** without having enrolled in **German III.1** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester only.

---

#### **LANG3046. Translation exercise IV (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **LANG3045 Translation exercise III** enhancing and extending the acquired translation skills. Major topics to be discussed are: German customs and traditions, life experiences of foreigners studying or working in Germany, and integration of immigrants in Germany.

Prerequisite: **LANG3045** Translation exercise III

Co-requisites: **German III.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Translation exercise IV** without having enrolled in **German III.1** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester only.

---

#### **LANG3047. Producing German texts II (3 credits)**

This course will enable students to produce longer texts such as critical essays, short stories, etc. It will provide students with strategies to structure texts of various styles and topics. Sessions will be divided into two parts: Part I will be a discussion and analysis of texts prepared by the students

following the introduction of the topic in the previous session. Part II will introduce the topic of the following session. It will teach students how to approach the topic and how to structure their texts. This will be illustrated by a critical reading of sample texts.

Co-requisites: **German III.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **LANG3047** without having enrolled in **German III.1** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester only.

---

**LANG3048. Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries – The German Romantics (3 credits)**

This course explores one of the most popular periods in German literature - German Romanticism. While this period is well known for its emotional and imaginative descriptions of nature and expressions of feelings, many of its writers also had been deeply affected by the historical, political and social events of their times. The course begins with providing a short overview over the literary and historical developments leading up to and following this period, followed by an in-depth study of authentic texts from various authors representing the two main streams of German Romanticism and it concludes by tracing Romantic influences in modern society.

Co-requisites: **German III.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **LANG3048** without having enrolled in **German III.1** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester only.

---

**LANG3056. German for business II (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **LANG2061**. The objective of this course is to build on and enhance the competence and skills acquired in **LANG2061**. Like in **LANG2061**, authentic materials and video clippings will be used and field trips to German companies organised to provide students with insights into the actual business conduct in German companies not only in Germany but also in Hong Kong as well as with information about German-Hong Kong business relations.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester only.

---

## **Italian Courses**

### **First Year**

**LANG1007. Italian I.1 (6 credits)**

This course is intended for complete beginners in Italian and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills.

Prerequisite: Nil

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**LANG1008. Italian I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **Italian I.1**. It will further develop the four areas of competence with the view of expanding students' linguistic, pronunciation and communicative skills. Participants will

be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the Centre's self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as to take advantage of resources accessible through Internet

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **Italian I.1** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## Second Year

### LANG2010. Italian II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Italian I.2**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Italian language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Italian II** without having previously completed **Italian I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Italian II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

### LANG2031. Italian reading course (3 credits)

This course is offered to the students at intermediate and advanced levels in order to improve their skills in textual analysis, discussion and translation of contemporary texts and documents such as magazines, newspaper, songs and articles related to current Italian life.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **Italian I.2** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Students may not enrol in the Italian reading course without enrolling in **Italian II**.

It is also open to students currently studying LANG3012 Italian III or an equivalent certificate course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### LANG2032. Italian and business (3 credits)

This course is offered to students at intermediate and advanced levels. It will focus on a variety of topics, such as commercial correspondence, marketing strategies, advertising campaigns, job applications, banking terminology, etc.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **Italian I.2** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Students may not enrol in the Italian and business course without enrolling in **Italian II**.

It is also open to students currently studying LANG3012 Italian III or an equivalent certificate course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LANG2050. A profile of Italian literature I (3 credits)**

This course presents a broad introduction to Italian Literature from the 13th to the 20th century. It will examine works of the prominent Italian writers through the study of excerpts and is particularly designed to enhance students' reading and analytical skills in the Italian language. The medium of instruction and discussion will be Italian.

Prerequisites: (i) the course is open to students who have successfully completed **Italian I.2**;

(ii) students may not enrol without enrolling in **Italian II.1**.

It is also open to students currently studying LANG3012 Italian III or an equivalent certificate course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**LANG2051. A profile of Italian literature II (Contemporary Italian literature) (3 credits)**

This course offers an introduction to the major movements and authors of Italian Literature over the last fifty years. The selection of texts will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Italy. The medium of instruction and discussion will be Italian.

Prerequisites: (i) the course is open to students who have successfully completed **Italian I.2**;

(ii) students may not enrol without enrolling in **Italian II.1**.

It is also open to students currently studying LANG3012 Italian III or an equivalent certificate course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**Second/Third Years****LANG0001. Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will give an outline of Italian civilization and contemporary culture in its manifold aspects, ranging from arts, history, music, Italian customs and traditions in the different regions and cities, to cinema and tourism, food, fashion, environment, education, sport and politics with particular focus on the youth world. The teacher will present a variety of subjects making use of videos and authentic materials (music, magazines, advertising, etc.), from which the students will choose topics and discuss them in discussion groups. Each group will then present, at the end of the course, a project on a particular subject. In case the students should be interested, some basic knowledge of the Italian language will be offered.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Medium of instruction: English. Knowledge of Italian is not necessary.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG0006. Italian classical roots of European civilization (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Touching on different subjects such as Latin Language and Philosophy, Architecture and Law, Literature and History, Religion and Politics, the course will examine how Europe was shaped by its Roman heritage and how classical roots contributed to create a multifaced but unique civilization. All lectures will be conducted in English.

Prerequisite: Nil

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.



### Third Year

#### LANG3012. Italian III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Italian language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Italy, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Italian III** without having previously completed **Italian II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Italian III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

#### LANG3040. Italian in Italy (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several Italian universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Italian B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **LANG2010** (Italian II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

### Portuguese Courses

#### First Year

#### LANG1025. Portuguese for beginners - Part I (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to enable students to reach a basic communicative competence in Portuguese, while developing their listening, speaking, writing and reading skills. Development of self-learning strategies will also be introduced in the later part of the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### LANG1026. Portuguese for beginners - Part II (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of **Portuguese for beginners I**. Pre-requisite for Portuguese for beginners II: Portuguese for beginners I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

## Second Year

### LANG2024. Portuguese II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Portuguese for beginners – Part II**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Portuguese language and develop further their production and reception skills.

**Prerequisites:** Students wishing to be admitted to **Portuguese II** without having previously completed **Portuguese for beginners – Part II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

**Examination:** The examination for **Portuguese II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

## Third Year

### LANG3026. Portuguese III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Portuguese language through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Portugal, as well as her history and cultural background.

**Prerequisites:** Students wishing to be admitted to **Portuguese III** without having previously completed **Portuguese II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

**Examination:** The examination for **Portuguese III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

### LANG3041. Portuguese in Portugal (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several Portuguese universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Portuguese B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

**Prerequisite:** Students must have completed **LANG2024** (Portuguese II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

## Spanish Courses

### First Year

#### **LANG1038. Spanish language I.1 (6 credits)**

The main objective of the course is to teach students the basics of Spanish and to provide the participants with a firm foundation in the spoken and written language as well as to offer insights into Spanish culture. Through a communicative approach this course should quickly enable participants to engage in simple conversations and understand a variety of interactive situations at both linguistic and cultural levels. Emphasis will also be put on the acquisition of a sound grammar base for more advanced work.

Prerequisite: Nil

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **LANG1039. Spanish language I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **Spanish language I.1**. The objective of the course is to build on the work completed in the first semester so as to consolidate and broaden participants' foundation in spoken and written Spanish. Emphasis will be put on expanding the four skills as well as on the development of autonomous learning.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **Spanish language I.1** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) progress tests, ii) participation in class, iii) a brief oral test and iv) other assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### Second Year

#### **LANG2011. Spanish II (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Spanish I.2**. The course builds further on the first year's work and widens the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Spanish and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Spanish II** must have completed **Spanish I.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **Spanish II** without having previously completed **Spanish I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: The examination and coursework elements count 60% and 40% respectively.

Examination: The examination for **Spanish II** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

#### **LANG2055. Spanish for business I (3 credits)**

This course is aimed to provide students with a relevant knowledge of the specific vocabulary and language skills necessary to successfully communicate in Spanish in the most common situations of international business. This course will also allow students to become familiar with the main characteristics of the economy in Spanish-speaking countries, focusing on the commercial relations between Asia and these countries.

- Prerequisite: (i) This course is open to students who have successfully completed **Spanish I.2** and are currently enrolled in **Spanish II**.  
 (ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a comparable standard in Spanish.  
 (iii) Knowledge in the field of business and economics is not necessary.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **LANG2057. Spanish language and culture I (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to give an introduction to contemporary Spain. Through a variety of texts, students will learn about Spanish society (politics, economy, education, etc.) and culture (customs, festivals, family, etc.) as well as more intrinsic aspects of the Spanish language. The course will explore subjects such as the transition from a dictatorship to a democratic government, the changes in society and the challenges in the XXI century. This course can help students intending to go to Spain in the summer to learn more about the country. Teaching materials and medium of instruction will be Spanish.

- Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2057** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1038** (Spanish Language I.1) and **LANG1039** (Spanish Language I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.  
 (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2057** without also enrolling in **LANG2011**

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **LANG2058. Spanish language and culture II (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **LANG2057** (Spanish Language and Culture I). The course will continue exploring different aspects of Spanish language and culture through authentic sources. This course can help students intending to go to Spain in the summer to learn more about the country. Teaching materials and medium of instruction will be Spanish.

- Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2058** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1038** (Spanish Language I.1) and **LANG1039** (Spanish Language I.2) as well as **LANG2057** (Spanish Language and Culture I). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.  
 (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2058** without enrolling in **LANG2011**

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **LANG2059. Spanish phonetics I (3 credits)**

This course will describe and classify the sounds of Spanish, study the Spanish sound system and deal with phonological problems related to the Spanish language. It will focus on eradicating the most typical pronunciation difficulties encountered by students, with special attention to the specific problems of Asian students. The course will also help students to improve their accent in Spanish. Although there will be a theoretical part, this is mainly a practical course, and no previous knowledge of Linguistics is required.

Class activities will be organized in small groups, allowing the teacher to work closely with each student. Teaching materials and medium of instruction will be Spanish.

- Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2059** is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1038** (Spanish Language I.1) and **LANG1039** (Spanish Language I.2). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

- (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2059** (Spanish Phonetics I) without enrolling in **LANG2011**

Assessment: 100% Coursework which will include the following:

- a) One progress test at the end of the course (40% of the final mark)
- b) Assignments (60% of the final mark). Assignments may include:
  - Quizzes
  - Evaluation of recorded material
  - Phonetic transcription activities

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **LANG2060. Spanish phonetics II (3 credits)**

This second part of the course will still focus on improving students' pronunciation of Spanish, covering more advanced features such as intonation patterns, phonetic transcription and sounds which are particularly difficult for Asian Students.

It will also aim at providing students with language samples of different accents and norms of Spanish around the world. Students will be exposed to different Spanish accents from Spain and Latin America. They will receive training on how to identify and understand the different pronunciation of words.

Prerequisites: (i) **LANG2060** (Spanish Phonetics II) is open to students who have successfully completed **LANG1038** (Spanish Language I.1) and **LANG1039** (Spanish Language I.2) as well as **LANG2059** (Spanish Phonetics I). Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

- (ii) Students may not enrol in **LANG2060** (Spanish Phonetics II) without enrolling in **LANG2011**

Assessment: 100% Coursework which will include the following:

- a) One progress test at the end of the course (40% of the final mark)
- b) Assignments (60% of the final mark). Assignments may include:
  - Quizzes
  - Evaluation of recorded material
  - Phonetic transcription activities

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## **Second/Third Years**

### **LANG0003. Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to give students an insight into Spanish culture and traditions with an emphasis on Spain. Guest speakers will give talks about different aspects of culture and discussion about the topics seen in the course will be encouraged.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

Medium of instruction: English. Knowledge of Spanish is not necessary.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **LANG0005. Hispanic film and literature (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The goal of this course is to introduce Spanish and Spanish American cinema and literature as well as to improve students' analytical and critical thinking skills. At the same time, this course may be very useful to students who wish to improve their language skills by themselves and learn more about the culture of Spanish speaking countries from direct sources, such as writers and film makers. The

course objectives will be tackled in three ways: a) with a focus on film and literature as a representation of Hispanic culture; b) by analyzing a selection of representative cinematographic and literary texts; and c) by considering how literature written in Spanish has inspired films.

Prerequisite: Nil. Students of all faculties are welcome.

Medium of Instruction: English. Knowledge of Spanish is not necessary.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

### Third Year

#### LANG3013. Spanish III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Spanish language through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Spain, as well as her history and culture.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Spanish III** must have completed **Spanish II**.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Spanish III** without having previously completed **Spanish II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: The examination and coursework elements count 60% and 40% respectively.

Examination: The examination of **Spanish III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

#### LANG3042. Spanish in Spain (3 credits)

This course is taught and organized by several Spanish universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Spanish B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **LANG2011** (Spanish II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

#### LANG3055. Spanish for business II (3 credits)

This course is a continuation of **Spanish for Business I** and it is aimed at facilitating students' acquisition of the necessary skills to work in companies that require the knowledge of Spanish to deliver their business. The focus is skill development, such as letter writing, phone conversations and product presentation. Guest speakers will be invited to present topics relevant to the course contents, in order to allow students to have a close contact with the Hispanic business community in Hong Kong.

Prerequisite: (i) This course is open to students who have successfully completed **Spanish II** and are currently enrolled in **Spanish III**.

(ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a comparable standard in Spanish.

(iii) Students may not enroll in **Spanish for business II** without having completed **Spanish for business I**.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

## Swedish Courses

### First Year

#### LANG1023. Swedish for beginners - Part I (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is for beginners of Swedish and will introduce the students to the essentials of the Swedish language through a communicative approach. The course will cover speaking, listening, reading and writing but with emphasis on speaking. Students will learn how to interact in everyday situations such as shopping, taking the bus, asking for directions, making a phone call etc. Apart from using textbooks, additional classroom materials, such as videos, and other audio-visuals will be used.

The course will also give students an insight to Swedish culture and society. Since Sweden, Norway and Denmark are closely related in culture and language, the course will also give a wider understanding of Scandinavia.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### LANG1024. Swedish for beginners - Part II (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of **Swedish for beginners I**. Pre-requisite for Swedish for beginners II: Swedish for beginners I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### Second Year

#### LANG2023. Swedish II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Swedish for beginners – Part II**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Swedish language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Swedish II** without having previously completed **Swedish for beginners – Part II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Swedish II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

### Second/Third Year

#### LANG0007. From Vikings to Volvo: an introduction to the development of contemporary Sweden (3 credits)

This course will give an insight into historical and cultural developments leading up to present day Sweden and also a closer look at different aspects of contemporary Sweden and the role of the Swedish Model in the 21st century. A variety of materials will be used and the students are expected to present a project at the end of the semester.

Prerequisite: Nil  
 Medium of Instruction: English  
 Assessment: 100% coursework.  
 This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### Third Year

#### **LANG3025. Swedish III (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Swedish language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Sweden, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Swedish III** without having previously completed **Swedish II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Swedish III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

#### **LANG3043. Swedish in Sweden (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Swedish universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Swedish B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **LANG2023** (Swedish II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

### Thai Courses

#### First Year

#### **LANG1021. Thai for beginners - Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to teach complete beginners the basics of Thai with respect to the four linguistic skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing. Students will also be introduced to Thai culture and society. Vocabulary and grammar will be presented in a communicative way for a variety of situations, e.g. making introductions, leave-taking, giving directions, buying things, making telephone calls and so on. The emphasis will be on the spoken language, as well as on providing a secure foundation for basic Thai.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.



**LANG1022. Thai for beginners - Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of **Thai for beginners I**. Pre-requisite for Thai for beginners II: Thai for beginners I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**Second Year****LANG2022. Thai II (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Thai for beginners – Part II**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Thai language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Thai II** without having previously completed **Thai for beginners – Part II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Thai II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

**Third Year****LANG3024. Thai III (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Thai language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Thailand, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Thai III** without having previously completed **Thai II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Thai III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

---

**LANG3044. Thai in Thailand (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Thai universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Thai B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **LANG2022** (Thai II), or establish that they have attained a similar standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

## INTERDISCIPLINARY MINORS

Candidates proceeding to their second year (or third semester, in respect of those admitted in or after 2002-03) of study of the curriculum in or after the academic year 2001-02 may select courses from the lists specified in the syllabuses to satisfy the requirements for up to two interdisciplinary minors but shall not be permitted to take more than 12 credits from one department/programme to satisfy the requirements of one minor. The same course shall not be taken to fulfil the requirements for a major and a minor, or for two minors.

The interdisciplinary minor programmes are as follows. Courses may have prerequisites; please refer to the syllabus of the relevant department/programme for the prerequisite(s).

### 1. Histories and Cultures of the Asia-Pacific Region

A minor in the histories and cultures of the Asia-Pacific region will provide you with a broad general knowledge about history and thought in the region of which Hong Kong is a part. This will be useful regardless of what you are studying as a major and can thus be recommended for all students in the Faculty of Arts.

- AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
- CHIN2231. Religious Daoism and popular religions in China (3 credits)
- CHIN2241. History of Chinese civilization (6 credits)
- CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)
- CHIN2264. Chinese eroticism (3 credits)
- CLIT2052. Chinese urban culture (6 credits)
- ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)
- FINE2048. Arts of Japan (6 credits)
- FINE2055. Crossing cultures: China and the outside world (6 credits)
- HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, Part I: from revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)
- HIST2035. The Bauhinia and the Lotus: Culture and history of the two SARs (6 credits)
- HIST2066. Narcotic culture: A history of drugs (6 credits)
- JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)
- LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)
- MUSI2009. Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)
- MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)
- MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)
- MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: Ethics (6 credits)
- PHIL2450. Zhuangzi (6 credits)

### 2. Contemporary China and Hong Kong

This minor gives students with a general interest in China and Hong Kong a better understanding of physical, cultural and human environments of the two societies within the larger global and regional settings. The courses offered examine a range of contemporary development issues and future challenges faced by China and Hong Kong in an increasingly globalized world.

CHIN2131.	Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)
CHIN2132.	Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)
CHIN2133.	Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)
CLIT2064.	Hong Kong culture: popular culture (6 credits)
CLIT2074.	Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)
ENGL2075.	The idea of China (6 credits)
ENGL2097.	Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)
FINE2034.	Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)
FINE2036.	Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)
FINE2051.	Art, politics, and society in modern China (6 credits)
GEOG2054.	Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)*
GEOG2062.	Globalizing China I: resources, politics, and population (6 credits)*
HIST2004.	Twentieth-century China, Part II: from revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)
HIST2052.	Social issues in Hong Kong history (6 credits)
HIST2068.	The intellectual history of twentieth-century China (6 credits)
LING2010.	Language and dialect (6 credits)
LING2033.	Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)
MUSI2010.	Music of China (6 credits)
MUSI2016.	Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)
MUSI2056.	Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)

### 3. The West in Asia

In 'The West in Asia,' courses examine various ways in which Western nations and people have influenced Asia in the past and present. You will gain a general appreciation for the many ways in which cross-cultural interaction affects societies, cultures, and individuals, as well as a specific understanding of how Euroamerican engagement with Asia has shaped the modern world.

AMER2014.	A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
CHIN2254.	Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)
CLIT2045.	Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)
ENGL2066.	Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)
ENGL2095.	The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)
FINE2033.	Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)
FINE2034.	Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)
HIST2008.	Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)
HIST2032.	Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the US (6 credits)
HIST2053.	The Cold War (6 credits)
LANG3022.	French eastern narratives (3 credits)
LING2041.	Language and information technology (6 credits)
PHIL2027.	Rousseau (6 credits)
PHIL2040.	Nietzsche (6 credits)
PHIL2080.	Marxist philosophy (6 credits)

\* The counting of Geography courses as Arts courses applies only to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic year 2006-07 and before.

#### 4. Critical Thinking, Reading, and Writing

'Critical thinking, reading and writing' refers to a set of skills for examining, evaluating and expressing ideas. These skills include knowing how to collect and present evidence, apply standards of logic and probability, compare opinions, decide what is relevant or irrelevant, and draw reasonable conclusions. This minor programme includes a selection of courses from different subject disciplines that either discuss these critical skills in detail or demonstrate them in action.

- CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)
- CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)
- CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory (6 credits)
- CLIT2066. Postmodernism (6 credits)
- ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL2058. Narrative prose: a linguistic investigation (6 credits)
- ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)
- FINE3006. Art history methodology workshop (6 credits)
- HIST3015. The theory and practice of history (6 credits)
- JAPN2034. Education in contemporary Japanese society (6 credits)
- LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)
- PHIL2110. Knowledge (6 credits)
- PHIL2130. Philosophy of the sciences (6 credits)

#### 5. The Culture of Business in the Modern World

The minor in The Culture of Business in the Modern World will prepare you to understand better the cultural dimensions of the economic processes affecting all of us. You will see that business is more than just economics; and money, stocks, and advertising are cultural forms that people and social institutions interpret and use in work, recreation, and commercial activities that are part of everyday life in the modern world.

- AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)
- CHIN2337. Journalistic translation (3 credits)
- CHIN2338. Translation of promotional material (3 credits)
- CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (3 credits)
- EUST2010. European identity (6 credits)
- GEOG2045. Retail location (6 credits)\*
- GEOG2056. Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)\*
- GEOG2057. Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)\*
- HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
- HIST2064. Sweat and abacus: Overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia (6 credits)
- JAPN2010. Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)
- JAPN2015. Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)
- LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2028. The business of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)
- MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- PHIL2070. Pragmatism (6 credits)

\* The counting of Geography courses as Arts courses applies only to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic year 2006-07 and before.

## 6. Technology in the Humanities

The aim of this minor is to provide students with the opportunity to explore the relationship between technology and the humanities. Different aspects of technology will be examined in order to give students multiple perspectives on how the relationship between technology and the humanities has evolved, to critically evaluate the role of technology in the humanities, and to examine the range of opportunities available regarding the application of technology in the humanities.

- AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)
- AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)
- CHIN2243. History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)
- CLIT2026. Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)
- CLIT2081. Becoming Post-Human: animal bodies and virtual bodies (6 credits)
- ENGL2037. Science fiction (6 credits)
- GEOG2019. Environmental GIS (6 credits)\*
- GEOG2059. People, society and the internet (6 credits)\*
- HIST2065. Workshop in historical research (6 credits)
- HIST2074. Historical studies using computers (6 credits)
- LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)
- MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- PHIL2220. The mind (6 credits)
- PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)

## 7. Globalism: Cultures, Spaces, Languages

The term 'Globalism' suggests an organized phenomenon that could be studied through a coherent set of theoretical frameworks. The courses in this 'Minor' explore and challenge this understanding of 'Globalism'. They show how a global dynamic runs with varying intensities in visual and literary representations, in different times and places, and how the impact on each other of the 'global' and the 'local' can have very diverse effects on and meanings for different cultures and societies.

- AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
- AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)
- AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)
- CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)
- CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)
- CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (3 credits)
- CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)
- CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)
- ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)
- ENGL2092. Postcolonial English (6 credits)
- EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)
- FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)
- FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)
- FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan (6 credits)

\* The counting of Geography courses as Arts courses applies only to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic year 2006-07 and before.

GEOG2061.	Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)*
GEOG2079.	Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)*
HIST2027.	The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
HIST2046.	The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)
HIST2063.	Europe and modernity: cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)
JAPN2018.	Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)
LANG0001.	Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)
LANG0002.	Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)
LANG0003.	Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)
LANG0006.	Italian classical roots of European civilization (3 credits)
LCOM3001.	Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)
LING2009.	Languages of the world (6 credits)
MUSI2015.	Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
MUSI2019.	Music in society (3 credits)
MUSI2031.	American music (6 credits)
MUSI2049.	Music and power (3 credits)
MUSI2051.	Rhythms of life: music and culture in West Africa (3 credits)
MUSI2054.	The piano (6 credits)
MUSI2055.	Chinese opera (6 credits)
MUSI2056.	Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
PHIL2362.	Liberal democracy (6 credits)
PHIL2610.	Philosophy of language (6 credits)

## 8. Women and Gender

Adopting both feminist and other cultural approaches, this 'Minor' offers in-depth explorations of women and gender issues. Questions of representation, history, language, and demographics will be raised across a number of disciplines and societies.

CHIN2264.	Chinese eroticism (3 credits)
CLIT2037.	Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film (6 credits)
CLIT2051.	Jane Austen and popular culture (6 credits)
CLIT2076.	Fashioning femininities (6 credits)
ENGL2022.	Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)
ENGL2039.	Language and gender (6 credits)
ENGL2080.	Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)
FINE2027.	The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)
FINE2032.	Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)
FINE2049.	Art and gender in China (6 credits)
HIST2032.	Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)
HIST2067.	Sex, gender and modernity in China (6 credits)
HIST2081.	Gender and history: beauty, fashion and sex (6 credits)
JAPN2035.	Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)
LING2011.	Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)
LING2036.	Child language (6 credits)
MUSI2035.	Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)
PHIL2011.	Aristotle (6 credits)
PHIL2035.	Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)

\* The counting of Geography courses as Arts courses applies only to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic year 2006-07 and before.

## 9. Self-expression, Communication, and the Human Subject

What is a self? Do different cultures have different selves? What does the self 'express' when we engage in creative thought and how are cultural forms used and changed. Are we limited by those cultural forms? In this minor, you will explore answers to these and related questions by investigating creative expression in various arts and cultural forms.

- AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)
- CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)
- CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)
- CLIT2003. Modern European drama (6 credits)
- CLIT2065. Hong Kong culture: representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)
- ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)
- FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)
- FINE2046. Art and the human body (6 credits)
- HIST2031. History through film (6 credits)
- HIST2042. The history of sport (6 credits)
- HIST2070. Stories of self: history through autobiography (6 credits)
- JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1) (3 credits)
- JAPN3055. Japanese language II(b) (Part 2) (3 credits)
- JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)
- JAPN3077. Japanese language III(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)
- LANG0005. Hispanic film and literature (3 credits)
- LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)
- LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)
- MUSI2018. Understanding music (3 credits)
- MUSI2035. Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)
- MUSI2048. Music, language, and meaning (6 credits)
- MUSI2050. Representation of the supernatural in music (3 credits)
- MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)
- PHIL2140. Philosophy of social science (6 credits)
- PHIL2375. Philosophy of art (6 credits)

## MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF BUSINESS AND ECONOMICS

### Economics and finance

#### A. Structure of Minor and Major Programmes in Economics and Finance 2007-08

Students outside the School of Economics and Finance are given an option to pursue minor(s) and major(s) offered by the School of Economics and Finance according to the course requirements listed below.

**The following are applicable to students admitted to 1<sup>st</sup> year of study in 2004-05 and 2005-06:**

(Note that the structures for Majors in Economics and in Finance are not applicable to BA, BSocSc and BSc(Statistics) students admitted to 1<sup>st</sup> year of study in 2004-05, who are allowed to follow old structure for 2<sup>nd</sup> major in Economics and Finance.)

- (i) **Minor in Economics** by taking and gaining not less than 36 credits of approved courses offered by the School of Economics and Finance with the following distribution:

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Year 1 courses: 12 credits		
ECON1001	Introduction to economics I	6
ECON1002	Introduction to economics II	6
Year 2 and Year 3 courses: 24 credits		
ECON2101 ECON2113	Microeconomic theory <u>or</u> Microeconomic analysis	6
ECONxxxx/ FINAxxxx	Additional Year two/Year three courses from those listed in <b>List A</b>	18

Notes:

1. ECON1002 Introduction to economics II can be taken in the first year or the second year.
2. ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.

- (ii) **Minor in Finance** by taking and gaining not less than 36 credits of approved courses offered by the School of Economics and Finance with the following distribution:

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Year 1 courses: 12 credits		
ECON1001	Introduction to economics I	6
FINA1002 BUSI0016	Introduction to finance <u>or</u> Introduction to finance	6
Year 2 and Year 3 courses: 24 credits		
FINA2802	Investments <u>or</u> Investments and portfolio analysis	6
ECONxxxx/ FINAxxxx	Additional Year two/Year three courses from those listed in <b>List B</b>	18

Notes:

1. FINA1002 Introduction to finance/BUSI0016 Introduction to finance can be taken in the first year or the second year.
2. Students are advised to take introductory courses in accounting, statistics and mathematics.

- (iii) **Major in Economics** by taking and gaining not less than 12 credits of year 1 courses and 48 credits of year 2 and year 3 courses with the following distribution:

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Year 1 courses: 12 credits		
ECON1001	Introduction to economics I	6
ECON1002	Introduction to economics II	6
Year 2 and Year 3 courses: 48 credits		
ECON2101 ECON2113	Microeconomic theory <u>or</u> Microeconomic analysis	6
ECON2102 ECON2114	Macroeconomic theory <u>or</u> Macroeconomic analysis	6
ECONxxxx/ FINAxxxx	Additional Year two/Year three courses from those listed in <b>List A</b>	36



Notes:

1. ECON1002 Introduction to economics II can be taken in the first year or the second year.
2. ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis and ECON2102 Macroeconomic theory/ECON2114 Macroeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.

- (iv) **Major in Finance** by taking and gaining not less than 12 credits of year 1 courses and 48 credits of year 2 and year 3 courses with the following distribution:

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Year 1 courses: 12 credits		
ECON1001	Introduction to economics I	6
FINA1002	Introduction to finance <u>or</u>	6
BUSI0016	Introduction to finance	
Year 2 and Year 3 courses: 48 credits		
ECON2101	Microeconomic theory <u>or</u>	6
ECON2113	Microeconomic analysis	
FINA0302	Corporate finance <u>or</u>	6
	Theories of corporate finance	
FINA2802	Investments <u>or</u>	6
	Investments and portfolio analysis	
ECONxxxx/ FINAxxxx	Additional Year two/Year three courses from those listed in <b>List B</b>	30

Notes:

1. FINA1002 Introduction to finance/BUSI0016 Introduction to finance can be taken in the first year or the second year.
2. ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.
3. Students are advised to take introductory courses in accounting, statistics and mathematics.

**The following are applicable to students admitted to 1<sup>st</sup> year of study in 2006-07 and thereafter:**

- (i) **Minor in Economics** by taking and gaining not less than 36 credits of approved courses offered by the School of Economics and Finance with the following distribution:

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Year 1 courses: 12 credits		
ECON1001	Introduction to economics I	6
ECON1002	Introduction to economics II	6
Year 2 and Year 3 courses: 24 credits		
ECON2101	Microeconomic theory <u>or</u>	6
ECON2113	Microeconomic analysis	
ECONxxxx/ FINAxxxx	Additional Year two/Year three courses as prescribed in the syllabuses	18

Notes:

1. ECON1002 Introduction to economics II can be taken in the first year or the second year.
2. ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.

- (ii) **Minor in Finance** by taking and gaining not less than 36 credits of approved courses offered by the School of Economics and Finance with the following distribution:

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Year 1 level courses: 18 credits		
BUSI1002	Introduction to accounting	6
ECON1001	Introduction to economics I	6
FINA1003	Corporate finance	6
Year 2 and Year 3 level courses: 18 credits		
FINA2802	Investments and portfolio analysis	6
ECONxxxx/ FINAxxxx	Additional Year two/Year three courses as prescribed in the syllabuses	12

Note:

1. BUSI1002 Introduction to Accounting can be taken in the first year or the second year.
2. FINA1003 Corporate finance can be taken in the second year.
3. Students are advised to take introductory courses in statistics and mathematics.

- (iii) **Major in Economics** by taking and gaining not less than 12 credits of year 1 courses and 48 credits of year 2 and year 3 courses with the following distribution:

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Year 1 courses: 12 credits		
ECON1001	Introduction to economics I	6
ECON1002	Introduction to economics II	6
Year 2 and Year 3 courses: 48 credits		
ECON2101 ECON2113	Microeconomic theory <u>or</u> Microeconomic analysis	6
ECON2102 ECON2114	Macroeconomic theory <u>or</u> Macroeconomic analysis	6
ECONxxxx/ FINAxxxx	Additional Year two/Year three courses as prescribed in the syllabuses	36

Notes:

1. ECON1002 Introduction to economics II can be taken in the first year or the second year.
2. ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis and ECON2102 Macroeconomic theory/ECON2114 Macroeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.

- (iv) **Major in Finance** by taking and gaining not less than 18 credits of year 1 level courses and 42 credits of year 2 and year 3 level courses with the following distribution:

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course</i>	<i>Credits</i>
Year 1 level courses: 18 credits		
BUSI1002	Introduction to accounting	6
ECON1001	Introduction to economics I	6
FINA1003	Corporate finance	6
Year 2 and Year 3 level courses: 42 credits		
ECON2101 ECON2113	Microeconomic theory <u>or</u> Microeconomic analysis	6
FINA0301	Derivative securities	6
FINA2802	Investments and portfolio analysis	6
ECONxxxx/ FINAxxxx	Additional Year two/Year three courses as prescribed in the syllabuses	24

## Notes:

1. BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting can be taken in the first year or the second year.
2. FINA1003 Corporate finance can be taken in the second year.
3. ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.
4. Students are advised to take introductory courses in statistics and mathematics.

**LIST A: Year two and Year three courses for minor and major in Economics for 2006-07 and thereafter**

**Year two courses**

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>	<i>Credits</i>
ECON2102.	Macroeconomic theory or ) for minor in	6
ECON2114.	Macroeconomic analysis ) economics only	

**Year two or year three courses**

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>	<i>Credits</i>
ECON0103.	Economics of human resources	6
ECON0104.	Public finance	6
ECON0106.	Games and decisions	6
ECON0107.	History of economic thought	6
ECON0109.	Topics in macroeconomics	6
ECON0204.	The economics of finance	6
ECON0205.	Theories of investment	6
ECON0206.	Capital theory	6
ECON0207.	Monetary economics	6
ECON0208.	Economics of banking	6
ECON0209.	Finance and development	6
ECON0210.	Investment, technology, and economic growth	6
ECON0301.	Theory of international trade	6
ECON0302.	International finance	6
ECON0401.	Comparative economic systems	6
ECON0402.	Industrial organization	6
ECON0403.	The economics of property rights	6
ECON0405.	The economics of law	6
ECON0406.	The economy and the state	6
ECON0501.	Economic development	6
ECON0503.	Urban economics	6
ECON0504.	Transportation economics	6
ECON0601.	Economic development of China	6
ECON0602.	Foreign trade and investment in China	6
ECON0603.	The economic system of Hong Kong	6
ECON0605.	Economic history of China	6
ECON0606.	Current economic affairs	6
ECON0701.	Introductory econometrics	6
ECON0702.	Mathematical methods in economics	6
ECON0703.	Mathematical economics	6
ECON0706.	Uncertainty and information	6
ECON0707.	Economic forecasting	6
ECON3108.	Selected topics in price theory	6
ECON3505.	Project evaluation	6
FINA0103.	International banking	6

**Year three courses**

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>	<i>Credits</i>
ECON3801.	Reading course	6
ECON3802.	Dissertation (for major in economics only)	12

**LIST B: Year two and Year three courses for minor and major in Finance for 2006-07 and thereafter****Year two courses**

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>	<i>Credits</i>
ECON2101.	Microeconomic theory <u>or</u> ) for minor in	6
ECON2113.	Microeconomic analysis ) finance only	
ECON2102.	Macroeconomic theory <u>or</u>	6
ECON2114.	Macroeconomic analysis	

**Year two or year three courses**

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>	<i>Credits</i>
ECON0204.	The economics of finance	6
ECON0205.	Theories of investment	6
ECON0206.	Capital theory	6
ECON0207.	Monetary economics	6
ECON0208.	Economics of banking	6
ECON0209.	Finance and development	6
ECON0210.	Investment, technology, and economic growth	6
ECON0302.	International finance	6
ECON0602.	Foreign trade and investment in China	6
ECON0701.	Introductory econometrics	6
ECON0707.	Economic forecasting	6
ECON3505.	Project evaluation	6
FINA0102.	Financial markets and institutions	6
FINA0103.	International banking	6
FINA0104.	Management of commercial banks	6
FINA0105.	International financial management	6
FINA0106.	Insurance: theory and practice	6
FINA0301.	Derivative securities (for minor in finance only)	6
FINA0302.	Theories of corporate finance *	6
FINA0401.	Empirical finance	6
FINA0402.	Mathematical finance	6
FINA0501.	Asian financial institutions	6
FINA0804.	Fixed income securities	6
FINA0805.	Real estate finance	6
FINA1001.	Financial statement analysis	6
FINA3806.	Risk management	6
FINA3807.	Special topics in finance	6
FINA0303.	Case studies in corporate finance	6
FINA0403.	Financial engineering	6
FINA0404.	Financial modeling with EXCEL	6
FINA0405.	Interest rate models	6

**Year three courses**

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>	<i>Credits</i>
FINA3601.	Reading course	6
FINA3602.	Dissertation (for major in finance only)	12

\* only open to students admitted to first year of study in 2004-05 and 2005-06.

For course details, please visit <http://www.hku.hk/student/uregcourse/>

## MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF EDUCATION

### Minor in Applied Child Development

This minor offers a coherent academic program focusing on the knowledge, attitudes and skills central to improving the well-being of children and their families. Specifically, the minor will help you (i) acquire scientifically-based knowledge about early childhood development and education; and (ii) enable you to apply theories, research methods, and research findings to practical concerns.

Pre-requisite for Applicants:

**PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits) OR**  
**PSYC1002. How the mind works: explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits) AND**  
**PSYC1003. Psychology and life: personality and social influence (6 credits)**

Courses to be taken:

**PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)**  
**EDUC8001. Understanding and guiding the development of young children (6 credits)**  
**EDUC8002. Planning, managing and assessing services for young children (6 credits)**  
**PSYC0057. Internship in applied child development (6 credits) with concurrent seminar**

### Minor in Educational Studies

This Minor in Educational Studies provides an introductory foundation in education from philosophical, historical, sociological and psychological perspectives for BA students.

There are two compulsory courses:

EDUC1002. Hong Kong education: systemic features and social approaches (6 credits)  
 and  
 EDUC2001. Psychology of teaching and learning (6 credits)

In addition to these 12 credits, students complete at least 12 more credits from a pool of Educational Studies courses, as follows:

EDUC1001. Language and learning (6 credits)  
 EDUC3001. Children with learning difficulties (3 credits)  
 EDUC3002. Understanding and guiding adolescent development (6 credits)  
 EDUC3003. Designing small scale educational research (3 credits)  
 EDUC4001. Education and curriculum: values, concepts and issues (6 credits)

### Minor in Information Management

Introduction:

This Minor in Information Management provides an introductory foundation for students in other faculties to consider a career in the dynamic field of information management. The courses listed below are existing BSc[IM] courses and students in this Minor programme will take them with BSc[IM] students.

Requirement:

Minimum Entry Requirement: Nil

Minimum Credit Requirement: 36 credits

Impermissible Combination: Nil for the Minor as a whole; no pre-requisites for any of the courses

Quota: 10 students

Programme structure and courses available:

Students may select 36 credits from any of the courses below. They may focus on one of the three areas listed below or choose courses from different areas.

a. Information design and architecture

- BSIM0004. Information retrieval (6 credits)
- BSIM0007. Metadata (6 credits)
- BSIM0008. Networks and telecommunications (6 credits)
- BSIM0009. Database systems and information warehousing (6 credits)
- BSIM0010. Digital libraries: principles and applications (6 credits)
- BSIM0012. Records management (6 credits)
- BSIM0013. Web services & digital publishing (6 credits)
- BSIM0014. User-based systems analysis (6 credits)

b. Management and policy

- BSIM0001. Information management foundations (6 credits)
- BSIM0002. Information literacy (3 credits)
- BSIM0003. Information policy (6 credits)
- BSIM0005. Information society issues (6 credits)
- BSIM0006. Knowledge management (6 credits)
- BSIM0011. Project management (6 credits)
- BSIM0012. Records management (6 credits)
- BSIM0016. Social and organizational issues of information management (6 credits)

c. Users and society

- BSIM0002. Information literacy (3 credits)
- BSIM0004. Information retrieval (6 credits)
- BSIM0005. Information society issues (6 credits)
- BSIM0006. Knowledge management (6 credits)
- BSIM0010. Digital libraries: principles and applications (6 credits)
- BSIM0014. User-based systems analysis (6 credits)
- BSIM0015. Reading and understanding research in information management (3 credits)
- BSIM0016. Social and organizational issues of information management (6 credits)

\* Students in their final year of study may choose to do a project (worth 6 credits) in the area of information management.

For course details, please visit <http://www.hku.hk/student/uregcourse/>

## MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF ENGINEERING

### COMPUTER SCIENCE

#### Introduction

The Department of Computer Science has a long tradition of offering IT courses to students of other departments. To declare a “Minor in Computer Science”, students are required to pass 2 core courses and at least 4 elective courses in computer science. All these courses are of 6 credit-units. They will be taught in a single semester with 3 hours of lectures per week. Assessment of each course will be based on a three-hour written examination and in-course assessment in a ratio as indicated below.

Students are also welcome to take any of the following courses as broadening courses.

**Core Courses:**

- CSIS1117 - Computer programming I
- CSIS1119 - Introduction to data structures and algorithms [for intake of 2005 and before]
- CSIS1122 - Computer programming II [for intake of 2006 and after]

**Elective Courses:**

- CSIS1119 - Introduction to data structures and algorithms [for intake of 2006 and after]
- CSIS0250 - Design and analysis of algorithms
- CSIS0270 - Artificial intelligence
- CSIS0271 - Computer graphics
- CSIS0278 - Introduction to database management systems
- CSIS0293 - Introduction to theory of computation
- CSIS0297 - Introduction to software engineering
- CSIS0311 - Legal aspects of computing
- CSIS0315 - Multimedia computing and applications
- CSIS0317 - Computer vision
- CSIS0320 - Electronic commerce technology
- CSIS0322 - Internet and the World Wide Web
- CSIS0396 - Object-oriented programming and Java
- CSIS0521 - Concepts and tools for software development

**Other CSIS Courses**

Students may apply to enrol in other CSIS courses not listed above, subject to the approval of the Head of the Department of Computer Science.

For course details, please visit <http://www.hku.hk/student/uregcourse/>

**MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF SCIENCE**

(for students admitted in academic year 2007 and thereafter)

**Majors****1. Major in Biochemistry**

Biochemistry, strengthened with molecular biology, is a field with enormous applications to our daily lives. It also is a discipline of sublime fascination. Our understanding of the biochemical bases of various life processes has greatly improved human welfare, particularly the medical and nutritional aspects. Further advances in this rapidly expanding field of knowledge, including building and establishing new conceptual frameworks, development of novel methodologies and techniques, should pave way to even more spectacular insights into nature and lead to a better control of our destiny.

The Major in Biochemistry offered by the Department of Biochemistry is designed to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in modern biochemistry and molecular biology. Our goal is to develop and equip students with enough critical thinking and analytical skills so that they can embark on a career in biochemical sciences.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Chemistry or a pass in CHEM0004 Fundamental Chemistry or equivalent
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
Impermissible Combination	: Minor in Biochemistry

**Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

BIOC1001.	Basic Biochemistry	6
BIOC1003.	Introduction to Molecular Genetics	6
CHEM1406.	Basic Organic Chemistry	6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOC2601.	Metabolism	6
BIOC2603.	Principles of Molecular Genetics	6
BIOC2604.	Essential Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOC3610.	Advanced Biochemistry I	6
BIOC3611.	Advanced Biochemistry II	6
BIOC3613.	Molecular Biology of the Gene	6
BIOC3615.	Advanced Techniques in Biochemistry & Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2301.	Protein Structure and Function	6

**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

-	BIOC2616. Directed Studies in Biochemistry	6
-	BIOC3614. Biochemistry Project	12
-	Internship within and/or outside the Department of Biochemistry	(non-credit bearing)
-	Professional training programmes by biotechnology companies in Hong Kong	(non-credit bearing)
-	Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year)	(non-credit bearing)
-	Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience	(non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra- ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biochemistry course (BIOC2000 or BIOC3000 level).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**2. Major in Biology**

Biology has developed into a broad and diverse field of study. This Major provides students with a solid foundation in key biological subject areas, and then allows freedom to choose from a wide variety of interesting courses in year two and three. Students may select courses on molecular, physiological or organism biology, plus applied aspects such as biotechnology, conservation, food science and environmental protection.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Biology or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126. Fundamentals of Biology
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Biotechnology; Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection; Food & Nutritional Science; Microbiology (from 2008) Minor in Biology



**Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

BIOL1122. Functional Biology	6
------------------------------	---

**Plus** at least 12 credits from the following courses:

BIOL0129. (BIOL1119.) Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.) Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.) Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL1106. Genetics	3

(students are strongly recommended to take “BIOC1001 Basic Biochemistry or BIOL1125. Introduction to Biochemistry” as an elective.)

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2303. Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
---	---

**Plus** 42 credits of BIOL2000 or 3000 level course, with at least 18 credits at 3000 level**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| - BIOL2318. Biological Sciences Field Course  | 6                    |
| - BIOL2319. Biological Sciences Internship  | 6                    |
| - BIOL2320. Directed Studies in Biological Sciences   | 6                    |
| - BIOL3321. Biological Sciences Project   | 12                   |
| - Site visits to Mainland/overseas universities, research centres, non-profit organizations or industries in summer | (non-credit bearing) |
| - Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year)   | (non-credit bearing) |
| - Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience                 | (non-credit bearing) |

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**3. Major in Biotechnology**

As the 21st Century opens, advances in biotechnology are accelerating at a remarkable pace. There are many exciting discoveries that have improved modern society, in terms of health, nature and economic development. This Major will first equip you with a solid background in molecular biology, microbiology, biochemistry and cell biology. Based on your interests, you will then further acquire knowledge in the specialized fields of medicine, diagnostics, agriculture, aquaculture, etc, from the advanced courses. Employment opportunities in various sectors of industry and Government, including R&D, manufacturing, sales, and customer service, are available to our students.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Biology or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126. Fundamentals of Biology

Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology;  
Food & Nutritional Science  
Minor in Biotechnology

**Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

BIOL1122.	Functional Biology	6
BIOC1001.	Basic Biochemistry <b>OR</b> BIOL1125. Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0129. (BIOL1119.)	Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL1106.	Genetics	3

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2115.	Cell Biology & Cell Technology	6
BIOL2301.	Protein Structure and Function	6
BIOL2303.	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL3315.	Animal Biotechnology	6
BIOL3316.	Plant Biotechnology	6
BIOL3317.	Microbial Biotechnology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits from the following courses:

BIOL2004.	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111.	Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2112.	Plant Physiology	6
BIOL2114.	Plant Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2116.	Genetics I	6
BIOL2203.	Reproduction & Reproductive Biotechnology	6
BIOL2205.	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2207.	Endocrinology	6
BIOL2209.	Developmental Biology	6
BIOL2215.	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2217.	General Parasitology	3
BIOL2302.	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2515.	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL3212.	Applied Immunology	6
BIOL3214.	General Virology	6
BIOL3307.	Biotechnology Industry	6
BIOL3522.	Nutrigenomics	3

**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

-	BIOL2318. Biological Sciences Field Course	6
-	BIOL2319. Biological Sciences Internship	6
-	BIOL2320. Directed Studies in Biological Sciences	6
-	BIOL3321. Biological Sciences Project	12
-	Site visits to Mainland/overseas universities, research centres, non-profit organizations or industries in summer	(non-credit bearing)
-	Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year)	(non-credit bearing)
-	Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience	(non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

#### 4. Major in Chemistry

The dictionary defines chemistry as “the scientific study of the structure of substances, how they react when combined or in contact with one another, and how they behave under different conditions”. How chemists actually do this to investigate the properties and reactions of matter vary widely and are constantly undergoing change as new methods are discovered, new equipment is invented, and new techniques are developed. Chemistry is a central science, which interacts with many other disciplines. The aim of this Major is to provide students with a solid training in the basic areas of chemistry such as physical, inorganic, organic, applied and analytical chemistry. Through a variety of training, the Major can equip students with skills and experience in both theoretical and experimental investigations that are very important for their future career goals in the hi-tech and knowledge-based economy.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Chemistry or equivalent or a pass in CHEM0004. Fundamental Chemistry
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
Impermissible Combination	: Minor in Chemistry

##### **Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

##### **a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

CHEM1002. Chemistry: Principles and Concepts	6
CHEM1003. Chemistry: The Molecular World	6
CHEM1004. Chemistry: An Experimental Science I	6

##### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

CHEM2202. Chemical Instrumentation	6
CHEM2302. Intermediate Inorganic Chemistry	9
CHEM2402. Intermediate Organic Chemistry	9
CHEM2503. Intermediate Physical Chemistry	9
CHEM2510. (CHEM2507.) Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic and Analytical Techniques	6

**Plus** at least 9 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level) of which 6 credits must be at CHEM3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.<sup>1</sup>

##### **c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- CHEM2111. Directed Studies in Chemistry	6
- CHEM3105. Chemistry Project	12
- Summer Research Chemistry Project	(non-credit bearing)
- Summer Chemistry Internship	(non-credit bearing)
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year)	(non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience	(non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level chemistry course (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level).

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students who wish to specialize in a certain area are recommended to choose courses from the following lists.

- (i) For students who are interested in Analytical Chemistry: CHEM2102, CHEM2207, CHEM3203, CHEM3204.
- (ii) For students who are interested in Applied Chemistry: CHEM2103, CHEM3107, CHEM3110, CHEM3204.
- (iii) For students who are interested in Medicinal Chemistry: CHEM3403, CHEM3404, CHEM3405, CHEM3407.
- (iv) For students who are interested in Pure Chemistry: CHEM3106, CHEM3303, CHEM3403, CHEM3504.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 5. Major in Earth Sciences

In Earth Sciences, we study the nature and evolution of our planet. Geoscientists use their knowledge to increase our understanding of Earth processes and resources to improve the quality of human life. The Earth Science Major offers students an opportunity to learn about local and regional geological and environmental problems. The primary objective is to give students a robust training in the basics of Earth sciences as well as technical skills in certain specialized areas. Both theoretical and applied subjects such as mineralogy (the study of minerals), petrology (the study of rocks), geophysics, geochemistry, surficial processes, sedimentology, earth history, structural geology, fieldwork, regional geology, earth resources, environmental geology, hydrogeology and engineering geology are offered.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)  
 Impermissible Combination : Minor in Earth Sciences

### **Required courses (72 credits)** Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

EASC0105. Earth Through Time	6
EASC0118. Blue Planet	6
EASC0119. Solid Earth	6

#### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

**Any** 48 credits of advanced-level Earth Sciences courses.

For students intending for a career in the geosciences or to apply for professional status in the future, they are strongly recommended to take the following courses:

EASC2108. Structural Geology	6
EASC2109. Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology	6
EASC2112. Earth Systems	6
EASC2113. Sedimentology	6
EASC2124. Geological Maps and Air Photographs	6
EASC2125. Global Tectonics	6
EASC2126. Mineralogy and Geochemistry	6
EASC3134. Regional Geology	6

#### **c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- EASC2301. Field Camps 6
- EASC2307. Directed Studies in Earth Sciences 6
- EASC3308. Earth Sciences Project 12
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level earth sciences course (EASC2000 or EASC3000 level).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 6. Major in Ecology & Biodiversity

Understanding biological diversity, the relationships between organisms and their environments, and how humans interact with both is critical for conserving the social and economic benefits yielded by the natural world, without irreversibly destroying or degrading it. This Major explores the biodiversity of microorganisms, plants and animals, with particular reference to Hong Kong and Southeast Asia. Natural ecological interactions between these organisms and their environment are considered, along with how the problems associated with environmental degradation and management can be approached from a scientific viewpoint. There are many opportunities, both within Hong Kong and internationally, for graduates in this field.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil

Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology;  
Environmental Protection  
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

BIOL0129. (BIOL1119.) Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.) Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.) Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605. (ECOL0042.) Ecology Field Course	3

**Plus** at least 3 credits from the following courses:

BIOL0601. (ECOL0020.) Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0602. (ECOL0036.) Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
CHEM1007. Basic Chemistry for Biological Sciences	6
EASC0105. Earth through Time	6

#### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2608. (ECOL2006.) Biometrics	6
BIOL2611. (ECOL2013.) Systematics & Phylogenetics	6
BIOL2612. (ECOL2014.) Conservation Biology	6

**Plus** at least 30 credits from the following courses <sup>1</sup>:

BIOL2210. Evolution	6
---------------------	---

BIOL2606. (ECOL2004.) Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2607. (ECOL2005.) Fish Biology	6
BIOL2610. (ECOL2011.) Biological Oceanography	6
BIOL2613. (ECOL2015.) Fungal Diversity	3
BIOL2615. (ECOL2023.) Freshwater Ecology	6
BIOL2616. (ECOL2024.) Plant Structure and Evolution	3
BIOL2617. (ECOL2028.) Coastal Ecology	6
BIOL2618. (ECOL2029.) How Humans Evolved	6
BIOL2619. (ECOL2032.) Terrestrial Ecology	6
BIOL2620. (ECOL2044.) Extremophiles	3
BIOL3621. (ECOL3018.) Fisheries and Mariculture	6
BIOL3624. (ECOL3034.) Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6

**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- BIOL2318. Biological Sciences Field Course 6
- BIOL2319. Biological Sciences Internship 6
- BIOL2320. Directed Studies in Biological Sciences 6
- BIOL3321. Biological Sciences Project 12
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Major Coordinator to conform to the (non-credit bearing) spirit of capstone experience.

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level).

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students who wish to specialize in a certain area are recommended to choose courses from the following lists.

- (i) For students who are interested in ecology & evolution: BIOL2210, BIOL2606 (ECOL2004), BIOL2615 (ECOL2023), BIOL2616 (ECOL2024), BIOL2617 (ECOL2028), BIOL2618 (ECOL2029), BIOL2619 (ECOL2032).
- (ii) For students who are interested in marine biology: BIOL2607 (ECOL2005), BIOL2610 (ECOL2011), BIOL2617 (ECOL2028), BIOL3621 (ECOL3018).
- (iii) For students who are interested in microbiology: BIOL2606 (ECOL2004), BIOL2613 (ECOL2015), BIOL2620 (ECOL2044), BIOL3624 (ECOL3034).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **7. Major in Environmental Protection**

Humans are responsible for modification and degradation of nature yet it is only by human actions that we can protect habitats, ecosystems and the organisms that they contain for future generations. This Major helps students understand the causes of environmental degradation, and the ways in which they can be reduced or mitigated, including topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology and bioremediation. Conservation biology and fisheries are also important components of this Major, which aims to provide the intellectual and practical skills needed for professionals working in environmental protection and related jobs.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil

Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology;  
Ecology & Biodiversity  
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

At least 18 credits from the following courses:

BIOL0129. (BIOL1119.)	Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL0601. (ECOL0020.)	Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0602. (ECOL0036.)	Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605. (ECOL0042.)	Ecology Field Course	3
CHEM1007.	Basic Chemistry for Biological Sciences	6
EASC0105.	Earth through Time	6

#### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

At least 48 credits from the following courses:

BIOL2606. (ECOL2004.)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2608. (ECOL2006.)	Biometrics	6
BIOL2612. (ECOL2014.)	Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2614. (ECOL2016.)	Environmental Toxicology	6
BIOL3621. (ECOL3018.)	Fisheries and Mariculture	6
BIOL3622. (ECOL3027.)	Environmental Impact Assessment	6
BIOL3624. (ECOL3034.)	Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6
CHEM2102.	Environmental Chemistry	6
CHEM2202	Chemical Instrumentation	6

#### **c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

-	BIOL2318. Biological Sciences Field Course	6
-	BIOL2319. Biological Sciences Internship	6
-	BIOL2320. Directed Studies in Biological Sciences	6
-	BIOL3321. Biological Sciences Project	12
-	Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year)	(non-credit bearing)
-	Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience	(non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **8. Major in Food & Nutritional Science**

This is a challenging area of interdisciplinary study. The science of food and nutrition aims at improving the quality of life through the understanding of interactions among food, environment and the human body. This Major will appeal to those who have a genuine interest in the food system

and/or nutrition. Beginning with a handful of core courses, you will be able to mix and match advanced courses that suit your personal interest, be it food product development and analysis, metabolism and body function or nutrient-gene interaction. In the era where food safety, and diet and health take up news headlines this Major has been extremely popular.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL / AS Biology and AL / AS Chemistry or equivalent; or a pass in BIOL0126. Fundamentals of Biology and CHEM0004. Fundamental Chemistry
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Biology; Biotechnology Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

BIOC1001. Basic Biochemistry <b><u>OR</u></b> BIOL1125. Introduction to Biochemistry <b><u>OR</u></b>	6
CHEM1406. Basic Organic Chemistry	6
BIOL1123. Food Chemistry	3
BIOL1513. Food Science Laboratory	3
BIOL1514. Nutrition and Metabolism	6

(students are strongly recommended to take BIOL1122. Functional Biology as an elective.)

#### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2501. Food Processing and Preservation	6
BIOL2505. Food Safety and Quality Management	6
BIOL2515. Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2517. Food Analysis	3
BIOL2518. Laboratory in Nutritional Science	3
BIOL2519. Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods	6
BIOL3526. Advanced Laboratory in Nutritional Science	3

**Plus** at least 15 credits from the following courses:

BIOL2004. Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2205. Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2207. Endocrinology	6
BIOL2215. Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2302. Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2303. Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2503. Grain Production & Utilization	6
BIOL2507. Meat and Dairy Science	6
BIOL2520. Food Toxicology	3
BIOL2521. Food Engineering	3
BIOL3516. Nutrition and Brain Function	3
BIOL3522. Nutrigenomics	3
BIOL3523. Principles of Chinese Medicated Diet	3
BIOL3524. Diet and Disease	3
BIOL3525. Food Product Development	3
PBSL2229. Exercise Physiology	6

#### **c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- BIOL2318. Biological Sciences Field Course	6
--	---



- BIOL2319. Biological Sciences Internship 6
  - BIOL2320. Directed Studies in Biological Sciences 6
  - BIOL3321. Biological Sciences Project 12
  - Summer Internship (non-credit bearing)
  - Site visits to Mainland/overseas universities, research centres, non-profit organizations or industries in summer (non-credit bearing)
  - Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
  - Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)
- \* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 9. Major in Materials Science

In the past few decades, we have witnessed a rapid development in technology that has had a major impact on the way we live. For example, synthetic fabrics have revolutionized the clothing industry, and the on-board computers that helped guide the Apollo 11 mission to the moon were less powerful than the personal computers that sit on the desks in every office and in many homes today. All these changes were due to the fact that new materials were developed, which was the collective effort of scientists from many different areas. Materials science is an interdisciplinary subject that involves studies of the chemical and physical properties of materials. In this Major, students will be required to take basic courses in chemistry and physics. The chemistry of materials synthesis (e.g. organic and inorganic materials) and their physical properties (mechanical, electrical, and optical properties) will be introduced. In the second and third years, advanced courses will focus on polymeric materials, nanomaterials, semiconducting materials, and their characterization techniques. In addition, students are required to take advanced physics and chemistry courses as electives. The Major is designed for students who are interested in materials science and technology for postgraduate studies.

- Minimum Entry Requirement : 1. AL Chemistry; and AL / AS Physics or  
AL Engineering Science; or  
2. a pass in PHYS0625. Physics by Inquiry and  
CHEM0004. Fundamental Chemistry; or equivalent
- Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level  
courses including capstone requirement)
- Impermissible Combination : Nil

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| CHEM1002. Chemistry: Principles and Concepts | 6 |
| CHEM1005. Introduction to Materials Science  | 6 |
| PHYS1413. Physics in a Nutshell              | 6 |

#### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| CHEM2109. Introduction to Materials Chemistry   | 6 |
| CHEM2510. (CHEM2507.) Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic and<br>Analytical Techniques | 6 |
| CHEM3110. Advanced Materials  | 6 |
| PHYS2627. Introductory Quantum Physics  | 6 |

**Plus** at least 18 credits from the following courses:

PHYS2221. Introductory Solid State Physics	6
PHYS2222. Waves and Optics	6
PHYS2225. Solid State Devices	6
PHYS2227. Laser & Spectroscopy	6
PHYS2229. Thin Film Physics	6
PHYS2234. Sensors and Computer Control for Physical Measurements	6
PHYS2235. Physics of Nanomaterials	6
PHYS2426. Intermediate Experimental Physics	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- CHEM2111. Directed Studies in Chemistry	6
- CHEM3105. Chemistry Project	12
- PHYS2533. Directed Studies in Physics	6
- PHYS3531. Physics Project	12
- Summer Research Chemistry Project	(non-credit bearing)
- Summer Chemistry Internship	(non-credit bearing)
- Summer Physics Internship	(non-credit bearing)
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year)	(non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience	(non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level chemistry / physics course (CHEM2000 or PHYS2000 or CHEM3000 or PHYS3000 level).

Note: For students having major/major, or major/minor combinations of Materials Science / Chemistry, or Materials Science / Physics, a set of replacement courses from the Departments of Chemistry and Physics will be made available so that there will be no overlap with the core courses in this major.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 10. Major in Mathematics

Mathematics has been referred to as "our invisible culture". Most people agree mathematics finds applications ranging from traditional ones in the physical sciences and engineering to more recent ones in the life sciences, economics, finance and management. Yet, many are dazzled by achievements mathematics helps to bring about that they forget about mathematics itself! A Major in Mathematics provides a solid comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject and will nurture quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, problem-solving skill and innovative imagination. Different specializations are possible with our diverse courses, which lead to careers in education, economics and finance, logistics, management, research and further studies, etc.

Minimum Entry Requirement<sup>#</sup> : 1. HKCEE Additional Mathematics and AS Mathematics and Statistics; or

2. AL Pure Mathematics; or  
 3. a pass in MATH0201 (for those with HKCEE Math only) or a pass in MATH1804 (for those with AS Math & Stat only)
- Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
- Impermissible Combination : Minor in Mathematics

**Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

MATH1001. Fundamental Concepts of Mathematics	6
MATH1111. Linear Algebra	6
MATH1211. Multi-variable Calculus	6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

MATH2201. Introduction to Mathematical Analysis	6
MATH2301. Algebra I	6
MATH2401. Analysis I	6

**Plus** at least 18 credits from the following courses <sup>1</sup>:

MATH2304. Introduction to Number Theory	6
MATH2403. Functions of a Complex Variable	6
MATH2405. Differential Equations	6
MATH2600. Discrete Mathematics	6
MATH2601. Numerical Analysis	6
MATH2603. Probability Theory	6
MATH2901. Operational Research I	6
MATH2904. Introduction to Optimization	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- MATH2002. Mathematics Seminar <sup>2</sup> 6
- MATH2999. Directed Studies in Mathematics 6
- MATH3999. Mathematics Project 12
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level mathematics course (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level).

Note: <sup>#</sup> Students with different mathematics background must consult the Department of Mathematics for advice on the bridging courses.

<sup>1</sup> Students who wish to specialize in a certain area are recommended to choose courses from the following lists.

- (i) For students who are interested in pure mathematics: MATH2303, MATH2304, MATH2402, MATH2403, MATH3302, MATH3310, MATH3404, MATH3501, MATH3502.
- (ii) For students who are interested in computational mathematics, logistics, and/or operations research: MATH2303, MATH2600, MATH2601, MATH2603, MATH2901, MATH2904, MATH2905, MATH3602, MATH3902, MATH3903.

- (iii) For students who are interested in economics and finance, and plan to take some professional examinations in related fields: MATH2906, MATH2907, and non-mathematics courses BUSI1002, FINA1001, FINA2802, ECON0701, ECON2101, ECON2102.

<sup>2</sup> MATH2002 is for first year BSc students only.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 11. Major in Physics

The Major in Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a well-rounded foundation on the subject. It covers a wide range of basic courses in theoretical and experimental physics to prepare students for future careers which require a professional knowledge in physics, such as the semiconductor industry, education, and research. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

- Minimum Entry Requirement : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or  
2. A pass in PHYS0625 Physics by Inquiry; or equivalent
- Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
- Impermissible Combination : Minor in Physics

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

PHYS1414. General Physics I	6
PHYS1415. General Physics II	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics courses (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

#### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits) <sup>1</sup>**

PHYS2627. Introductory Quantum Physics <sup>2</sup>	6
---	---

**Plus** at least 12 credits from the following courses:

PHYS2321. Introductory Electromagnetism	6
PHYS2322. Statistical Mechanics and Thermodynamics	6
PHYS2323. Introductory Quantum Mechanics	6
PHYS2324. Classical Mechanics	6
PHYS2626. Introductory Classical Mechanics	6

**Plus** at least 30 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

#### **c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- PHYS2533. Directed Studies in Physics	6
- PHYS3531. Physics Project	12

- Summer Internship (non-credit bearing)
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level physics course (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level).

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students who intend to pursue further studies in Physics are recommended to take also PHYS3331 and PHYS3332.

<sup>2</sup> Students may consider taking PHYS2627 as early as possible to allow for maximum flexibility in course selection for advanced level courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 12. Major in Mathematics/Physics <sup>1</sup>

The Major in Mathematics/Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a solid foundation in both the subjects of physics and mathematics. This major is catered especially for students interested in the more theoretical aspects of physics. With the comprehensive training received, graduates from this major are expected to be well-prepared to go on further studies and to pursue careers in a many fields of science and engineering.

- Minimum Entry Requirement<sup>#</sup> : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
 2. HKCEE Additional Mathematics and AS Mathematics and Statistics, or AL Pure Mathematics;  
 3. a pass in PHYS0625 and pass in MATH0201 (for those with HKCEE only) or a pass in MATH1804 (for those with AS Math & Stat only)
- Minimum Credit Requirement : 78 credits (24 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
- Impermissible Combination : Major in Mathematics;  
 Physics  
 Minor in Mathematics;  
 Physics

### Required courses (78 credits)

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (24 credits) <sup>2</sup>**

MATH1111. Linear Algebra	6
MATH1211. Multi-variable Calculus	6
PHYS1414. General Physics I	6
PHYS1415. General Physics II	6

#### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits) <sup>3</sup>**

MATH2201. Introduction to Mathematical Analysis	6
MATH2301. Algebra I	6
MATH2403. Functions of a Complex Variable	6
MATH2405. Differential Equations	6
PHYS2321. Introductory Electromagnetism	6
PHYS2322. Statistical Mechanics and Thermodynamics	6
PHYS2626. Introductory Quantum Physics <sup>4</sup>	6
PHYS2627. Introductory Classical Mechanics	6

**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| - MATH2002. Mathematics Seminar <sup>5</sup>  | 6                    |
| - MATH2999. Directed Studies in Mathematics   | 6                    |
| - MATH3999. Mathematics Project   | 12                   |
| - PHYS2533. Directed Studies in Physics   | 6                    |
| - PHYS3531. Physics Project   | 12                   |
| - Summer Internship   | (non-credit bearing) |
| - Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year)   | (non-credit bearing) |
| - Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience | (non-credit bearing) |

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level mathematics / physics course (MATH2000 or PHYS2000 or MATH3000 or PHYS3000 level).

Note: <sup>#</sup> Students with different mathematics background must consult the Department of Mathematics for advice on the bridging courses.

<sup>1</sup> Students would have already satisfied requirements from Blocks A and B with this curriculum.

<sup>2</sup> Students are recommended to take also MATH1001.

<sup>3</sup> Students who intend to pursue further studies in Mathematics/Physics are recommended to take also MATH2401, MATH3501, PHYS3331, and PHYS3332.

<sup>4</sup> Students may consider taking PHYS2627 as early as possible to allow for maximum flexibility in course selection for advanced level courses.

<sup>5</sup> MATH2002 is for first year BSc students only.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**13. Major in Risk Management**

The Major in Risk Management enables students to gain an intellectual understanding of both financial and investment risks. Exposure to various statistical techniques for risk modelling is provided, with specific applications to financial and insurance problems. Career opportunities are available in financial institutions and large corporations including banks and consulting firms.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil

Minimum Credit Requirement : 72-78 credits (18-24 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Statistics  
Minor in Risk Management;  
Statistics

**Required courses (72 or 78credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (18 or 24 credits)**

(i) For students having A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or equivalent:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| STAT1301. Probability and Statistics I  | 6 |
| STAT1302. Probability and Statistics II | 6 |

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303.	Data Management	6
STAT1304.	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305.	Introduction to Demography	6

(ii) For students not meeting the pre-requisites in (i) above:

STAT0301.	Elementary Statistical Methods	6
STAT1301.	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302.	Probability and Statistics II	6

(STAT0301 and STAT1301 must be taken in the 1st semester of Year I)

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303.	Data Management	6
STAT1304.	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305.	Introduction to Demography	6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

STAT2301.	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT2309.	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310.	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT3301.	Time-series Analysis	6

**Plus** at least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2303.	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2315.	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806.	Financial Economics	6
STAT3305.	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3308.	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316.	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317.	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3812.	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

-	STAT2318. Directed Studies in Statistics	6
-	STAT3319. Statistics Project	12
-	Internship (at least 64 hours) via the Department or CPEC	(non-credit bearing)
-	Student researcher	(non-credit bearing)
-	Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year)	(non-credit bearing)
-	Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience	(non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level statistics course (STAT2000 or STAT3000 level).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 14. Major in Statistics

The Major in Statistics equips students with powerful mathematical, analytic and computational skills, which are in great demand in many practical areas. It establishes for students a strong background in

statistical concepts, and aims to provide a broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. Career opportunities are available in business, finance, industry, computing, marketing, communications, environmental protection, health organizations, as well as in scientific and academic research.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: Nil
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 72-78 credits (18-24 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Risk Management Minor in Risk Management; Statistics

### **Required courses (72 or 78 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (18 or 24 credits)**

(i) For students having A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or equivalent:

STAT1301.	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302.	Probability and Statistics II	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303.	Data Management	6
STAT1304.	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305.	Introduction to Demography	6

(ii) For students not meeting the pre-requisites in (i) above:

STAT0301.	Elementary Statistical Methods	6
STAT1301.	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302.	Probability and Statistics II	6

(STAT0301 and STAT1301 must be taken in the 1st semester of Year I)

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303.	Data Management	6
STAT1304.	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305.	Introduction to Demography	6

#### **b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

STAT2301.	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT3301.	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3302.	Multivariate Data Analysis	6
STAT3304.	Computer-aided Statistical Modelling	6

**Plus** at least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:

#### **List A:**

STAT2302.	Statistical Inference	6
STAT2303.	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2308.	Statistical Genetics	6
STAT2312.	Data Mining	6
STAT2313.	Marketing Engineering	6
STAT3305.	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3306.	Selected Topics in Statistics	6
STAT3308.	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316.	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317.	Computational Statistics	6



STAT3319.	Statistics Project	12 <sup>#</sup>
STAT3811.	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812.	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

**List B:**

STAT2304.	Design and Analysis of Experiments	6
STAT2305.	Quality Control and Management	6
STAT2306.	Business Logistics	6
STAT2307.	Statistics in Clinical Medicine & Bio-medical Research	6
STAT2309.	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310.	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2315.	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2801.	Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805.	Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT2806.	Financial Economics	6
STAT3810.	Risk Theory	6

**c. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- STAT2318. Directed Studies in Statistics 6
- STAT3319. Statistics Project 12<sup>#</sup>
- Internship (at least 64 hours) via the Department or CPEC (non-credit bearing)
- Student researcher (non-credit bearing)
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level statistics course (STAT2000 or STAT3000 level).

# 6 credits counted towards capstone requirement.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**Minors****1. Minor in Actuarial Studies**

Mathematics, Physics, Statistics, Economics, Finance, and other Science majors who are taking a lot of mathematics and had very strong Advanced Level Pure Mathematics grades are suitable for choosing this Minor.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36-42 credits (12-18 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Nil

<b><u>Required courses (36 or 42 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (12 or 18 credits)</b>	
For students majoring in Risk Management or Statistics (12 credits)	
STAT1305. Introduction to Demography	6
STAT1802. Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303. Probability Modelling	6
STAT2306. Business Logistics	6
For students minoring in Risk Management or Statistics (12 credits)	
STAT1302. Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801. Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802. Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303. Probability Modelling	6
For students not belonging to the above two categories (18 credits)	
STAT1301. Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302. Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801. Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802. Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303. Probability Modelling	6
<b>b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
At least 24 credits from the following courses:	
STAT2801. Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805. Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT2806. Financial Economics	6
STAT2807. Corporate Finance for Actuarial Science	6
STAT3810. Risk Theory	6
STAT3811. Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812. Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **2. Minor in Astronomy (for students admitted in 2007 or before)**

Have you ever enjoyed a beautiful starry night and wondered it came to be like that? The Minor in Astronomy is intended for students who would like to acquire some appreciation of the beauties of the universe. Students are offered the opportunity to receive training in both the theoretical and practical aspect of astronomy.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil <sup>1</sup>

Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Nil <sup>2</sup>

\* Refer to the Physics Department website <http://www.physics.hku.hk> for suggested curriculum.

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
PHYS0001. Nature of the Universe I: Introduction to Observational Astronomy and the Solar System	3
PHYS0002. Nature of the Universe II: Stars, Galaxies and Cosmology for Beginners	3
<b>Plus</b> at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics course (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level) <sup>3</sup>	

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000) level, out of which at least 12 credits are from the following courses:

PHYS2021. The Physical Universe	6
PHYS2022. Observational Astronomy	6
PHYS2023. Stellar Physics	6
PHYS2024. Introduction to Cosmology	6
PHYS3031. Astrophysics	6
PHYS3033. General Relativity	6
PHYS3034. Cosmology	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students without AL/AS Physics are strongly advised to take PHYS1413 to allow for maximum flexibility in selection of advanced level Physics courses. Students without HKCEE Physics are strongly advised to take PHYS0625 and PHYS1413 to allow for maximum flexibility in selection of advanced level Physics courses.

<sup>2</sup> For students having major/minor combination of Physics / Astronomy, or Materials Science / Astronomy, any single introductory or advanced level Physics course can be used to satisfy a major or minor requirement only once.

<sup>3</sup> Students are advised to take at least one of the following courses: PHYS1413, PHYS1414, or PHYS1415 to allow for maximum flexibility in selection for advanced level Physics courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**3. Minor in Biochemistry**

Biochemistry, strengthened with molecular biology, is a field with enormous applications to our daily lives. It also is a discipline of sublime fascination. Our understanding of the biochemical bases of various life processes has greatly improved human welfare, particularly the medical and nutritional aspects. Further advances in this rapidly expanding field of knowledge, including building and establishing new conceptual frameworks, development of novel methodologies and techniques, should pave way to even more spectacular insights into nature and lead to a better control of our destiny.

The Minor in Biochemistry offered by the Department of Biochemistry is designed to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in modern biochemistry and molecular biology. Our goal is to develop and equip students with enough critical thinking and analytical skills so that they can embark on a career in biochemical sciences.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AS Biology or AS Chemistry or a pass in CHEM0004.  
Fundamental Chemistry or equivalent  
Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
Impermissible Combination : Major in Biochemistry

**Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

BIOC1001. Basic Biochemistry	6
BIOC1003. Introduction to Molecular Genetics	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL2301. Protein Structure and Function	6
--	---

**Plus** at least 6 credits of BIOC2000 level courses and at least 12 credits of BIOC3000 level courses, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

#### 4. Minor in Biology

The discipline of biology applies to every aspect of our existence on Earth, and so an understanding of biological principles helps to enrich our appreciation of life and also act as a complementary subject to many other disciplines including the physical sciences and humanities.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Biology or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126. Fundamentals of Biology  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology

#### **Required courses (36 credits)** Credits

##### **a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

BIOL1122. Functional Biology 6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of the following courses:

BIOL0129. (BIOL1119.) Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL0602. (ECOL0036.) Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.) Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.) Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL1106. Genetics	3

(students are strongly recommended to take “BIOC1001. Basic Biochemistry or BIOL1125. Introduction to Biochemistry” as an elective)

##### **b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL2303. Introduction to Molecular Biology 6

**Plus** at least 18 credits of advanced level courses (BIOL2000 and BIOL3000 level) of which 6 credits at BIOL3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

#### 5. Minor in Biotechnology

Technology leads our future. Biotechnology is relevant to many business sectors and our daily life. Students who are interested in the developments of biological sciences are highly recommended to take this Minor. You will learn the scientific principles underlying current biotechnological advances and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Biology or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126. Fundamentals of Biology

Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biotechnology

**Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOC1001.	Basic Biochemistry <b>OR</b> BIOL1125. Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0129. (BIOL1119.)	Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL1106.	Genetics	3
BIOL1122.	Functional Biology	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL2303.	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
-----------	-----------------------------------	---

**Plus** at least 6 credits of the following courses:

BIOL3315.	Animal Biotechnology	6
BIOL3316.	Plant Biotechnology	6
BIOL3317.	Microbial Biotechnology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004.	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111.	Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2112.	Plant Physiology	6
BIOL2114.	Plant Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2116.	Genetics I	6
BIOL2203.	Reproduction & Reproductive Biotechnology	6
BIOL2205.	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2207.	Endocrinology	6
BIOL2209.	Developmental Biology	6
BIOL2215.	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2217.	General Parasitology	3
BIOL2302.	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2515.	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL3212.	Applied Immunology	6
BIOL3214.	General Virology	6
BIOL3307.	Biotechnology Industry	6
BIOL3522.	Nutri-genomics	3

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **6. Minor in Chemistry**

Why study Chemistry? Chemistry is both interesting and important. It is involved in almost everything you do. Chemistry occupies a central role in the natural sciences, it overlaps with other fields, and provides a fruitful source for important discoveries. For example, new discoveries in material sciences such as nanoscale materials cannot be realized without chemists. Astronomers now use results from chemical laboratories to search for new compounds in distant galaxies. Geologists analyse the structures of minerals and transformations between different forms of matter in the Earth's crust by using chemical principles of bonding and thermodynamics. Biologists try to understand the life process by chemical language in the field like molecular biology and chemical genetics.

Therefore, the Chemistry Department offers this Minor for those students who need a knowledge of chemistry for their major subjects or those who have an interest in studying chemistry at a higher level. Students are required to take introductory courses in general and analytical chemistry and one other chemistry course from selected areas. The advanced courses emphasize instrumental analysis and spectroscopic techniques. In addition, students may also choose specialized courses in different areas of chemistry such as organic, synthetic, materials, medicinal, environmental, or industrial chemistry as their electives in the second and third years. The Minor is essential to students who major in science-related subjects such as the biological, medical, materials and environmental sciences.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Chemistry or a pass in CHEM0004. Fundamental Chemistry or equivalent
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Chemistry

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

12 credits of the following courses:

CHEM1002. Chemistry: Principles and Concepts	6
CHEM1003. Chemistry: The Molecular World	6
CHEM1007. Basic Chemistry for Biological Sciences	6
CHEM1406. Basic Organic Chemistry	6

#### **b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **7. Minor in Earth Sciences**

To provide interested students an introduction to the different aspects of the discipline which may or may not be relevant to their major field of interest. Courses in physical geology and Earth history are offered in the first year followed by more advanced courses in the second and third year. A wide range of Earth Science courses are offered. A Minor in Earth Sciences is particularly suitable for students majoring in biochemistry, botany, chemistry, computing, ecology, economics, geography, mathematics, statistics, physics and zoology.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: Nil
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Earth Sciences

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

**Any** two of the following three courses:

EASC0105. Earth Through Time	6
EASC0118. Blue Planet	6
EASC0119. Solid Earth	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

Any 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC2000 or EASC3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**8. Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity**

Southeast Asia is extremely diverse in plants and animals, and Hong Kong has, for its size, a remarkable biodiversity. This Minor is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. Students will first learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region. They will then be able to build upon this basic knowledge by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil

Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection  
Minor in Environmental Protection

**Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

BIOL0601. (ECOL0020.) Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.) Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.) Evolutionary Diversity	6

The following is also recommended:

BIOL0605. (ECOL0042.) Ecology Field Course	3
--	---

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Plus** at least 24 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2606. (ECOL2004.) Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2607. (ECOL2005.) Fish Biology	6
BIOL2608. (ECOL2006.) Biometrics	6
BIOL2610. (ECOL2011.) Biological Oceanography	6
BIOL2611. (ECOL2013.) Systematics & Phylogenetics	6
BIOL2612. (ECOL2014.) Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2613. (ECOL2015.) Fungal Diversity	3
BIOL2615. (ECOL2023.) Freshwater Ecology	6
BIOL2616. (ECOL2024.) Plant Structure and Evolution	3
BIOL2617. (ECOL2028.) Coastal Ecology	6
BIOL2618. (ECOL2029.) How Humans Evolved	6
BIOL2619. (ECOL2032.) Terrestrial Ecology	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 9. Minor in Environmental Protection

Managing and conserving the environment is increasingly recognized as an important and necessary challenge for modern Society. Preserving biological diversity, whether species, genes, populations or ecosystems, requires an understanding of a range of exciting new areas in the life sciences. This Minor will provide students with an appreciation of the depth and breadth of this important developing field. The lectures are enhanced by valuable laboratory and practical experience that should be applicable to a wide range of careers, and contribute to a better understanding of the world we live in.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: Nil
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL0601. (ECOL0020.) Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.) Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.) Evolutionary Diversity	6
CHEM1007. Basic Chemistry for Biological Sciences	6

The following is also recommended:

BIOL0605. (ECOL0042.) Ecology Field Course	3
--	---

#### **b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL3622. (ECOL3027.) Environmental Impact Assessment	6
BIOL3624. (ECOL3034.) Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2606. (ECOL2004.) Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2608. (ECOL2006.) Biometrics	6
BIOL2612. (ECOL2014.) Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2614. (ECOL2016.) Environmental Toxicology	6
BIOL2619. (ECOL2032.) Terrestrial Ecology	6
CHEM2102. Environmental Chemistry	6
CHEM2202. Chemical Instrumentation	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 10. Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

This Minor is ideal for those who simply want to learn more about diet as part of their quest to promote personal health or for those who see knowledge in food and nutrition as complementary to their major study, be it biotechnology, chemistry, business or social science.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL / AS Biology and AL / AS Chemistry or equivalent; or a pass in BIOL0126. Fundamentals of Biology and CHEM0004. Fundamental Chemistry
---------------------------	---



Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Major in Food & Nutritional Science

**Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

BIOL0002.	Introduction to Food and Nutritional Science	3
BIOL1123.	Food Chemistry	3
BIOL1514.	Nutrition and Metabolism	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004.	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2215.	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2302.	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2501.	Food Processing and Preservation	6
BIOL2503.	Grain Production & Utilization	6
BIOL2505.	Food Safety and Quality Management	6
BIOL2507.	Meat and Dairy Science	6
BIOL2515.	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2517.	Food Analysis	3
BIOL2519.	Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods	6
BIOL2520.	Food Toxicology	3
BIOL2521.	Food Engineering	3
BIOL3516.	Nutrition and Brain Function	3
BIOL3522.	Nutrigenomics	3
BIOL3523.	Principles of Chinese medicated Diet	3
BIOL3524.	Diet and Disease	3
BIOL3525.	Food Product Development	3

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**11. Minor in General Science**

Science is an indispensable component of this modern world, with a significant impact to our daily lives. Be it the interaction between animals and their natural environment, the food in our daily diet, the synthesis of new materials (nanomaterials, polymeric and semiconducting materials), the mystery of the human gene, or the application of mathematics to solve problems. This Minor is suitable for non-Science students who are interested in exploring science and learning how scientists study the real world. The scientific knowledge, quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking and sense of numeracy will be useful in various fields of finance, business, social sciences, arts and education. Students have the flexibility to gather courses in any area of interest.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Nil (This Minor is only offered to non-Faculty of Science students.)

**Required courses (36 credits)****a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits of any introductory level Science courses (level 0 & 1), subject to prerequisite requirements.

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of any advanced level Science courses (level 2 & 3), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**12. Minor in Mathematics**

Mathematics has been referred to as "our invisible culture". Most people agree mathematics finds applications ranging from traditional ones in the physical sciences and engineering to more recent ones in the life sciences, economics, finance and management. Yet, many are dazzled by achievements mathematics helps to bring about that they forget about mathematics itself! A Minor in Mathematics provides an initiation into the subject and will nurture quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, problem-solving skill and innovative imagination.

Minimum Entry Requirement<sup>#</sup> : 1. HKCEE Additional Mathematics and AS Mathematics and Statistics; or  
 2. AL Pure Mathematics; or  
 3. a pass in MATH0201 (for those with HKCEE Math only) or a pass in MATH1804 (for those with AS Math & Stat only)

Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Mathematics

**Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)<sup>1</sup>**

MATH1111. Linear Algebra 6

**Plus** one of the following courses:

MATH1211. Multi-variable Calculus 6

MATH1805. University Mathematics B 6

MATH1813. Mathematical Methods for Actuarial Science 6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>#</sup> Students with different mathematics background must consult the Department of Mathematics for advice on the bridging courses.

<sup>1</sup> Students are strongly advised to take also MATH1001.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### 13. Minor in Physics

The Minor in Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a taste of the subject. The curriculum is designed with the flexibility for students with and without HKAL Physics/Pure Mathematics background. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; or a pass in PHYS00625. Physics by Inquiry
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Physics

\* Refer to the Physics Department website <http://www.physics.hku.hk> for suggested curriculum.

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	Credits
---	---------

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

PHYS1413. Physics in a Nutshell	6
---------------------------------	---

**Plus** at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics course (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level) <sup>1</sup>

**Or**

PHYS1414. General Physics I	6
PHYS1415. General Physics II	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students are strongly advised to take at least one of the following courses: PHYS1414 or PHYS1415 to allow for maximum flexibility in course selection for advanced level Physics courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### 14. Minor in Risk Management

The Minor in Risk Management enables students to gain exposure to financial and investment risks, and to various statistical techniques for modeling them. Specific attention is given to applications in financial and insurance problems.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: Nil
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Risk Management; Statistics Minor in Statistics

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	Credits
---	---------

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

STAT1301. Probability and Statistics I <b><u>OR</u></b>	6
STAT1306. Introductory Statistics <b><u>OR</u></b>	6
STAT0302. Business Statistics	6

**Plus**

STAT1302. Probability and Statistics II <b>OR</b>	6
STAT1303. Data Management <b>OR</b>	6
One of the advanced level courses listed below	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2309. The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310. Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2311. Computer-aided Data Analysis	6
STAT2312. Data Mining	6
STAT2314. Business Forecasting	6
STAT2315. Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806. Financial Economics	6
STAT3301. Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3305. Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3308. Financial Engineering	6
STAT3812. Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**15. Minor in Statistics**

The Minor in Statistics introduces to students important statistical concepts and provides them with exposure to applied statistical methodologies. A broad spectrum of courses is available for selection, covering topics which find applications in areas like business, finance, risk management, survey research, insurance, industry, medicine or computing.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: Nil
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Risk Management; Statistics Minor in Risk Management

**Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

One of the following courses:

STAT0301. Elementary Statistical Methods	6
STAT0302. Business Statistics	6
STAT1301. Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1306. Introductory Statistics	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1302. Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1303. Data Management	6
STAT1304. The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2301. Linear Statistical Analysis	6
---------------------------------------	---

STAT2302.	Statistical Inference	6
STAT2303.	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2304.	Design and Analysis of Experiments	6
STAT2305.	Quality Control and Management	6
STAT2306.	Business Logistics	6
STAT2307.	Statistics in Clinical Medicine & Bio-medical Research	6
STAT2308.	Statistical Genetics	6
STAT2309.	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310.	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2311.	Computer-aided Data Analysis	6
STAT2312.	Data Mining	6
STAT2313.	Marketing Engineering	6
STAT2314.	Business Forecasting	6
STAT2315.	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806.	Financial Economics	6
STAT3301.	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3302.	Multivariate Data Analysis	6
STAT3304.	Computer-aided Statistical Modelling	6
STAT3305.	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3306.	Selected Topics in Statistics	6
STAT3308.	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316.	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317.	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3811.	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812.	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

Note: The following combinations of courses are recommended for students interested in more focused areas:

- (i) Statistical theory and research methodology: STAT1301, STAT1302, STAT2301, STAT2302, STAT2303, STAT3316, STAT3301, STAT3302.
- (ii) Finance and investment: STAT1303, STAT2301, STAT2309, STAT2310, STAT2311, STAT2314, STAT2315, STAT2806, STAT3301, STAT3305, STAT3308, STAT3812.
- (iii) Business and management: STAT1303, STAT1304, STAT2301, STAT2305, STAT2306, STAT2311, STAT2312, STAT2313, STAT2314, STAT3302.
- (iv) Biological sciences: STAT1303, STAT2301, STAT2303, STAT2304, STAT2307, STAT2308, STAT2311, STAT3811.
- (v) Information technology: STAT1303, STAT2311, STAT2312, STAT3317, STAT3304, STAT3305.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF SCIENCE**

(for students admitted in academic year 2006 or before)

### **Majors**

#### **1. Major in Biochemistry**

Biochemistry, strengthened with molecular biology, is a field with enormous applications to our daily lives. It also is a discipline of sublime fascination. Our understanding of the biochemical bases of various life processes has greatly improved human welfare, particularly the medical and nutritional aspects. Further advances in this rapidly expanding field of knowledge, including building and

establishing new conceptual frameworks, development of novel methodologies and techniques, should pave way to even more spectacular insights into nature and lead to a better control of our destiny.

The Major in Biochemistry offered by the Department of Biochemistry is designed to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in modern biochemistry and molecular biology. Our goal is to develop and equip students with enough critical thinking and analytical skills so that they can embark on a career in biochemical sciences.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Chemistry or equivalent  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Minor in Biochemistry

<b><u>Required courses (72 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
BIOC1001. Basic Biochemistry	6
BIOC1003. Introduction to Molecular Genetics	6
CHEM1206. General and Analytical Chemistry <sup>1</sup> <b><u>OR</u></b>	
CHEM1301. Basic Inorganic Chemistry <sup>2</sup>	6
<b><u>Plus</u></b> one of the following courses:	
CHEM1401. Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry <sup>3</sup>	6
CHEM1406. Basic Organic Chemistry <sup>3</sup>	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
BIOC2601. Metabolism	6
BIOC2603. Principles of Molecular Genetics	6
BIOC2604. Essential Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOC3610. Advanced Biochemistry I	6
BIOC3611. Advanced Biochemistry II	6
BIOC3613. Molecular Biology of the Gene	6
BIOC3615. Advanced Techniques in Biochemistry & Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2301. Protein Structure and Function	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For students admitted in 2004 or 2005.

<sup>3</sup> CHEM1401 and CHEM1406 are mutually exclusive.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **2. Major in Biology**

Biology has developed into a broad and diverse field of study. This Major explores many aspects of the biological sciences, thereby providing a good general background in biology relevant for a wide range of job options. In their third year, students will be able to select from a range of interesting courses to suit their own interests.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Biology or equivalent  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biotechnology;  
Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection;  
Food & Nutritional Science  
Minor in Biology

**Required courses (72 credits)** Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of the following courses:

BIOL1106.	Genetics	3
BIOL1107.	Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction	3
BIOL1119.	Introductory Microbiology	6
BIOL1121.	Animal Form and Functions	3
BIOL1122.	Functional Biology	6
BIOL0601. (ECOL0020.)	Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605. (ECOL0042.)	Ecology Field Course	3

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2303.	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2606. (ECOL2004.)	Environmental Microbiology <sup>1</sup> <b><u>OR</u></b>	
ECOL2022.	Biodiversity <sup>2</sup>	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

BIOL2112.	Plant Physiology	6
BIOL2215.	Animal Physiology	6

**Plus** at least 30 credits of advanced level courses (BIOL2000, BIOL3000, ECOL2000 or ECOL3000 level) of which 12 credits at BIOL2000 or ECOL2000 level and 12 credits at BIOL3000 or ECOL3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2005 or 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For students admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### 3. Major in Biotechnology

As the 21<sup>st</sup> Century opens, advances in biotechnology are accelerating at a remarkable pace. There are many exciting discoveries that have improved modern society, in terms of health, nature and economic development. This Major will first equip you with a solid background in molecular biology, microbiology, biochemistry and cell biology. Based on your interests, you will then further acquire knowledge in the specialized fields of medicine, diagnostics, agriculture, aquaculture, etc, from the advanced courses. Employment opportunities in various sectors of industry and Government, including R&D, manufacturing, sales, and customer service, are available to our students.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Biology or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology;  
Food & Nutritional Science  
Minor in Biotechnology

**Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of the following courses:

BIOC1001.	Basic Biochemistry <b>OR</b> BIOL1125. Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0128.	Biological Techniques, Instrumentation and Data Processing	6
BIOL1106.	Genetics	3
BIOL1107.	Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction	3
BIOL1119.	Introductory Microbiology	6
BIOL1122.	Functional Biology	6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2115.	Cell Biology & Cell Technology	6
BIOL2301.	Protein Structure and Function	6
BIOL2303.	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL3315.	Animal Biotechnology	6
BIOL3316.	Plant Biotechnology	6
BIOL3317.	Microbial Biotechnology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004.	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111.	Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2114.	Plant Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2116.	Genetics I	6
BIOL2202.	General Parasitology <sup>1</sup>	6
BIOL2203.	Reproduction & Reproductive Biotechnology	6
BIOL2205.	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2207.	Endocrinology	6
BIOL2209.	Developmental Biology	6
BIOL2215.	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2217.	General Parasitology <sup>2</sup>	3
BIOL2302.	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2515.	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL3212.	Applied Immunology	6
BIOL3213.	Advanced Techniques and Instrumentation in Animal Biology	6
BIOL3214.	General Virology	6
BIOL3307.	Biotechnology Industry	6
BIOL3522.	Nutrigenomics	3

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2004, BIOL2202 will not be offered from 2006-07.<sup>2</sup> For students admitted in 2005 or 2006.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**4. Major in Chemistry**

The dictionary defines chemistry as “the scientific study of the structure of substances, how they react when combined or in contact with one another, and how they behave under different conditions”. How chemists actually do this to investigate the properties and reactions of matter vary widely and are constantly undergoing change as new methods are discovered, new equipment is invented, and new techniques are developed. Chemistry is a central science, which interacts with many other disciplines. The aim of this Major is to provide students with a solid training in the basic areas of chemistry such as physical, inorganic, organic, applied and analytical chemistry. Through a variety of training, the



Major can equip students with skills and experience in both theoretical and experimental investigations that are very important for their future career goals in the hi-tech and knowledge-based economy.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Chemistry or equivalent  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Minor in Chemistry

<b><u>Required courses (72 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
CHEM1206. General and Analytical Chemistry	6
CHEM1301. Basic Inorganic Chemistry	6
CHEM1406. Basic Organic Chemistry	6
CHEM1506. Basic Physical Chemistry	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
CHEM2202. Chemical Instrumentation	6
CHEM2302. Intermediate Inorganic Chemistry	9
CHEM2402. Intermediate Organic Chemistry	9
CHEM2503. Intermediate Physical Chemistry	9
CHEM2507. Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques <b><u>OR</u></b>	6
CHEM2510. Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques	6

**Plus** at least 9 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level) of which 6 credits must be at CHEM3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **5. Major in Earth Sciences**

In Earth Sciences, we study the nature and evolution of our planet. Geoscientists use their knowledge to increase our understanding of Earth processes and resources to improve the quality of human life. The Earth Science Major offers students an opportunity to learn about local and regional geological and environmental problems. The primary objective is to give students a robust training in the basics of Earth sciences as well as technical skills in certain specialized areas. Both theoretical and applied subjects such as mineralogy (the study of minerals), petrology (the study of rocks), geophysics, geochemistry, surficial processes, sedimentology, earth history, structural geology, fieldwork, regional geology, earth resources, environmental geology, hydrogeology and engineering geology are offered.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Minor in Earth Sciences

<b><u>Required courses (72 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
EASC0101. Maps, Mapping and Field Geology	6
EASC0105. Earth Through Time	6
EASC0116. Introduction to Physical Geology	6
EASC1106. Introduction to Petrology	6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

**Any** 48 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC2000 or EASC3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**6. Major in Ecology & Biodiversity**

Understanding biological diversity, the relationships between animals and their environments, and how humans interact with both is critical for conserving the social and economic benefits yielded by the natural world, without irreversibly destroying or degrading it. This Major introduces biodiversity at all levels, genes, species and ecosystems, provides a strong academic background for studying and researching in these topics. It also fosters an appreciation for the richness of local and regional biodiversity. There are many opportunities, both within Hong Kong and internationally, for graduates in this field.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Biology or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology;  
Environmental Protection  
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection

**Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL0601. (ECOL0020.) Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.) Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.) Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605. (ECOL0042.) Ecology Field Course	3

**Plus** at least 9 credits of the following courses:

BIOL0602. (ECOL0036.) Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
BIOL1119. Introductory Microbiology	6
CHEM1001. Chemical Principles for Earth and Life Sciences	6
EASC0105. Earth Through Time	6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2608. (ECOL2006.) Biometrics	6
BIOL2609. (ECOL2007.) Molecular Ecology	6
BIOL2611. (ECOL2013.) Systematics & Phylogenetics	6
BIOL2612. (ECOL2014.) Conservation Biology <sup>1</sup> <b>OR</b> ECOL2022. Biodiversity <sup>2</sup>	6

**Plus** 24 credits from one of the following options:

**Either** Ecology option:

BIOL2606. (ECOL2004.) Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2615. (ECOL2023.) Freshwater Ecology	6
BIOL2617. (ECOL2028.) Coastal Ecology	6
BIOL2619. (ECOL2032.) Terrestrial Ecology	6

**Or** **Marine Biology option:**

BIOL2607. (ECOL2005.) Fish Biology	6
BIOL2610. (ECOL2011.) Biological Oceanography	6
BIOL2617. (ECOL2028.) Coastal Ecology	6
BIOL3621. (ECOL3018.) Fisheries and Mariculture	6

**Or** **Microbiology option:**

BIOL2004. Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111. Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2515. Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2606. (ECOL2004.) Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2613. (ECOL2015.) Fungal Diversity	3
BIOL2614. (ECOL2016.) Environmental Toxicology	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2005 or 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For students admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 7. Major in Environmental Protection

Humans are responsible for modification and degradation of nature yet it is only by human actions that we can protect habitats, ecosystems and the organisms that they contain for future generations. This Major helps students understand the causes of environmental degradation, and the ways in which they can be reduced or mitigated, including topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology and bioremediation. Conservation biology and fisheries are also important components of this Major, which aims to provide the intellectual and practical skills needed for professionals working in environmental protection and related jobs.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Biology or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology;  
Ecology & Biodiversity  
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

#### **1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL0601. (ECOL0020.) Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603. (ECOL0040.) Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604. (ECOL0041.) Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605. (ECOL0042.) Ecology Field Course	3
BIOL1119. Introductory Microbiology	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

BIOL0602. (ECOL0036.) Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
CHEM1001. Chemical Principles for Earth and Life Sciences	6
EASC0105. Earth Through Time	6

## 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

At least 48 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2606. (ECOL2004.)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2608. (ECOL2006.)	Biometrics	6
BIOL2609. (ECOL2007.)	Molecular Ecology	6
BIOL2612. (ECOL2014.)	Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2614. (ECOL2016.)	Environmental Toxicology	6
BIOL3621. (ECOL3018.)	Fisheries and Mariculture	6
BIOL3622. (ECOL3027.)	Environmental Impact Assessment	6
BIOL3624. (ECOL3034.)	Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6
CHEM2002.	Instrumental Chemical Analysis	6
CHEM2102.	Environmental Chemistry	6
ECOL2022.	Biodiversity <sup>1</sup>	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 8. Major in Food & Nutritional Science

This is a challenging area of interdisciplinary study. The science of food and nutrition aims at improving the quality of life through the understanding of interactions among food, environment and the human body. This Major will appeal to those who have a genuine interest in the food system and/or nutrition. Beginning with a handful of core courses, you will be able to mix and match advanced courses that suit your personal interest, be it food product development and analysis, metabolism and body function or nutrient-gene interaction. In the era where food safety, and diet and health take up news headlines this Major has been extremely popular.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL / AS Biology and AL / AS Chemistry or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement : 75 credits (27 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology;  
Biotechnology  
Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

### Required courses (75 credits)

## Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (27 credits)**

BIOC1001.	Basic Biochemistry	<b><u>OR</u></b>	BIOL1125.	Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0002.	Introduction to Food and Nutritional Science				3
BIOL1122.	Functional Biology				6
BIOL1123.	Food Chemistry				3
BIOL1513.	Food Science Laboratory				3
BIOL1514.	Nutrition and Metabolism				6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2501.	Food Processing and Preservation	6
BIOL2505.	Food Safety and Quality Management	6
BIOL2515	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2517.	Food Analysis	3
BIOL2518.	Laboratory in Nutritional Science	3
BIOL2519.	Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods	6
BIOL3526.	Advanced Laboratory in Nutritional Science	3

**Plus** at least 15 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004.	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2202.	General Parasitology <sup>1</sup>	6
BIOL2205.	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2215.	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2217.	General Parasitology <sup>2</sup>	3
BIOL2302.	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2503.	Grain Production & Utilization	6
BIOL2507.	Meat and Dairy Science	6
BIOL2520.	Food Toxicology	3
BIOL2521.	Food Engineering	3
BIOL3516.	Nutrition and Brain Function	3
BIOL3522.	Nutrigenomics	3
BIOL3523.	Principles of Chinese Medicated Diet	3
BIOL3524.	Diet and Disease	3
BIOL3525.	Food Product Development	3

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2004, BIOL2202 will not be offered from 2006-07.

<sup>2</sup> For students admitted in 2005 or 2006.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 9. Major in Materials Science

In the past few decades, we have witnessed a rapid development in technology that has had a major impact on the way we live. For example, synthetic fabrics have revolutionized the clothing industry, and the on-board computers that helped guide the Apollo 11 mission to the moon were less powerful than the personal computers that sit on the desks in every office and in many homes today. All these changes were due to the fact that new materials were developed, which was the collective effort of scientists from many different areas. Materials science is an interdisciplinary subject that involves studies of the chemical and physical properties of materials. In this Major, students will be required to take basic courses in chemistry and physics. The chemistry of materials synthesis (e.g. organic and inorganic materials) and their physical properties (mechanical, electrical, and optical properties) will be introduced. In the second and third years, advanced courses will focus on polymeric materials, nanomaterials, semiconducting materials, and their characterization techniques. In addition, students are required to take advanced physics and chemistry courses as electives. The Major is designed for students who are interested in materials sciences and technology for postgraduate studies.

- Minimum Entry Requirement : 1. AL Chemistry; and  
 2. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
 3. HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or equivalent
- Minimum Credit Requirement : 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
- Impermissible Combination : Nil

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (24 credits)**

CHEM1206.	General and Analytical Chemistry	6
PHYS1314.	Modern Physics	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

CHEM1301. Basic Inorganic Chemistry	6
CHEM1406. Basic Organic Chemistry	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

PHYS1111. Introduction to Mechanics	6
PHYS1112. Electricity and Magnetism	6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

CHEM2109. Introduction to Materials Chemistry	6
CHEM2507. Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques <b>OR</b>	6
CHEM2510. Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques	6
CHEM3110. Advanced Materials	6
PHYS2225. Solid State Devices	6
PHYS2229. Thin Film Physics	6
PHYS2235. Physics of Nanomaterials	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

PHYS2221. Introductory Solid State Physics	6
PHYS2323. Introductory Quantum Mechanics	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: For students having major/major, or major/minor combinations of Materials Science / Chemistry, or Materials Science / Physics, a set of replacement courses from the Departments of Chemistry and Physics will be made available so that there will be no overlap with the core courses in this major.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 10. Major in Mathematics

Mathematics has been referred to as "our invisible culture". Most people agree mathematics finds applications ranging from traditional ones in the physical sciences and engineering to more recent ones in the life sciences, economics, finance and management. Yet, many are dazzled by achievements mathematics helps to bring about that they forget about mathematics itself! A Major in Mathematics provides a solid comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject and will nurture quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, problem-solving skill and innovative imagination.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Pure Mathematics or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement : 78 credits (30 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Minor in Mathematics

### **Required courses (78 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (30 credits)**

MATH1001. Fundamental Concepts of Mathematics <sup>1</sup> <b>OR</b>	6
MATH1800. Elements of Discrete Mathematics <sup>2</sup>	6
MATH1101. Linear Algebra I	6
MATH1102. Linear Algebra II	6
MATH1201. Calculus I	6
MATH1202. Calculus II	6

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

MATH2301. Algebra I	6
---------------------	---

MATH2401. Analysis I	6
----------------------	---

**Plus** at least 36 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For students admitted in 2004 or 2005.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**11. Major in Physics**

The Major in Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a well-rounded foundation on the subject. It covers a wide range of basic courses in theoretical and experimental physics to prepare students for future careers which require a professional knowledge in physics, such as the semiconductor industry, education, and research. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

Minimum Entry Requirement : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
 2. HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement : 78 credits (30 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Minor in Physics

**Required courses (78 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (30 credits)**

PHYS1111. Introduction to Mechanics	6
-------------------------------------	---

PHYS1112. Electricity and Magnetism	6
-------------------------------------	---

PHYS1113. Heat, Light and Waves	6
---------------------------------	---

PHYS1314. Modern Physics	6
--------------------------	---

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

PHYS1411. Introductory Experimental Physics	6
---	---

PHYS1412. Electronics	6
-----------------------	---

**b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

PHYS2321. Introductory Electromagnetism	6
---	---

PHYS2322. Statistical Mechanics and Thermodynamics	6
--	---

PHYS2323. Introductory Quantum Mechanics	6
--	---

PHYS2324. Classical Mechanics	6
-------------------------------	---

**Plus** at least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level) of which 12 credits must be at PHYS3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 12. Major in Risk Management (for students admitted in 2006)

The Major in Risk Management enables students to gain an intellectual understanding of both financial and investment risks. Exposure to various statistical techniques for risk modelling is provided, with specific applications to financial and insurance problems. Career opportunities are available in financial institutions and large corporations including banks and consulting firms.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Statistics Minor in Risk Management; Statistics

<b><u>Required courses (72 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
STAT1301. Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302. Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1303. Data Management	6
<b><u>Plus</u></b> at least 6 credits from the following courses:	
MATH0802. Basic Mathematics II	6
MATH1803. Basic Mathematics III	6
STAT1304. The Analysis of Sample Surveys <sup>1</sup>	6
STAT1305. Introduction to Demography <sup>1</sup>	6
<b>b. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
STAT2301. Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT2309. The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310. Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT3301. Time-series Analysis	6
<b><u>Plus</u></b> at least 24 credits from the following courses:	
STAT2303. Probability Modelling	6
STAT2315. Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806. Financial Economics	6
STAT3305. Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3308. Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316. Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317. Computational Statistics	6
STAT3812. Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> Only for students majoring in Mathematics.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 13. Major in Statistics

The Major in Statistics equips students with powerful mathematical, analytic and computational skills, which are in great demand in many practical areas. It establishes for students a strong background in



statistical concepts, and aims to provide a broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. Career opportunities are available in business, finance, industry, computing, marketing, communications, environmental protection, health organizations, as well as in scientific and academic research.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Risk Management Minor in Risk Management; Statistics

**Required courses (72 credits)** Credits

**1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)**

STAT1301.	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302.	Probability and Statistics II	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303.	Data Management	6
STAT1304.	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305.	Introduction to Demography	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses (for students not majoring in Mathematics):

MATH0802.	Basic Mathematics II	6
MATH1803.	Basic Mathematics III	6

**2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

STAT2301.	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT3301.	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3302.	Multivariate Data Analysis	6
STAT3304.	Computer-aided Statistical Modelling	6

**Plus** at least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:

**List A:**

STAT2302.	Statistical Inference	6
STAT2303.	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2308.	Statistical Genetics	6
STAT2312.	Data Mining	6
STAT2313.	Marketing Engineering	6
STAT3305.	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3306.	Selected Topics in Statistics	6
STAT3307.	Project in Statistics	6
STAT3308.	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316.	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317.	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3811.	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812.	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

**List B:**

STAT2304.	Design and Analysis of Experiments	6
STAT2305.	Quality Control and Management	6
STAT2306.	Business Logistics	6
STAT2307.	Statistics in Clinical Medicine & Bio-medical Research	6
STAT2309.	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6

STAT2310.	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2315.	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2801.	Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805.	Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT2806.	Financial Economics	6
STAT3810.	Risk Theory	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## Minors

### 1. Minor in Actuarial Studies (for students admitted in 2006)

Mathematics, Physics, Statistics, Economics, Finance, and other Science majors who are taking a lot of mathematics and had very strong Advanced Level Pure Mathematics grades are suitable for choosing this Minor.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent  
 Minimum Credit Requirement: 36-42 credits (12-18 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Nil

#### Required courses (36 or 42 credits) Credits

##### a. Introductory level courses (12 or 18 credits)

For students majoring in Risk Management or Statistics (12 credits)

STAT1305.	Introduction to Demography	6
STAT1802.	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303.	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2306.	Business Logistics	6

For students minoring in Risk Management or Statistics (12 credits)

STAT1302.	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801.	Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802.	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303.	Probability Modelling	6

For students not belonging to the above two categories (18 credits)

STAT1301.	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302.	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801.	Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802.	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303.	Probability Modelling	6

##### b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

At least 24 credits of the following courses:

STAT2801.	Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805.	Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT2806.	Financial Economics	6
STAT2807.	Corporate Finance for Actuarial Science	6
STAT3810.	Risk Theory	6
STAT3811.	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812.	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

---

## 2. Minor in Astronomy

Have you ever enjoyed a beautiful starry night and wondered it came to be like that? The Minor in Astronomy is intended for students who would like to acquire some appreciation of the beauties of the universe. Students are offered the opportunity to receive training in both the theoretical and practical aspect of astronomy.

Minimum Entry Requirement : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
2. HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Nil<sup>1</sup>

\* Refer to the Physics Department website <http://www.physics.hku.hk> for suggested curriculum.

### **Required courses (36 credits)** Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

PHYS0001.	Nature of the Universe I: Introduction to Observational Astronomy and the Solar System	3
PHYS0002.	Nature of the Universe II: Stars, Galaxies and Cosmology for Beginners	3

**Plus** at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics course (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level)<sup>2</sup>

#### **b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000) level, out of which at least 12 credits are from the following courses:

PHYS2021.	The Physical Universe	6
PHYS2022.	Observational Astronomy	6
PHYS2023.	Stellar Physics	6
PHYS2024.	Introduction to Cosmology	6
PHYS3031.	Astrophysics	6
PHYS3033.	General Relativity	6
PHYS3034.	Cosmology	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students having major/minor combination of Physics / Astronomy, or Material Science / Astronomy, any single introductory or advanced level Physics course can be used to satisfy a major or minor requirement only once.

<sup>2</sup> Students are strongly advised to take at least one of the following courses: PHYS1111, PHYS1112, and PHYS1314 to allow for maximum flexibility in selection for advanced level Physics courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### 3. Minor in Biochemistry

Biochemistry, strengthened with molecular biology, is a field with enormous applications to our daily lives. It also is a discipline of sublime fascination. Our understanding of the biochemical bases of various life processes has greatly improved human welfare, particularly the medical and nutritional aspects. Further advances in this rapidly expanding field of knowledge, including building and establishing new conceptual frameworks, development of novel methodologies and techniques, should pave way to even more spectacular insights into nature and lead to a better control of our destiny.

The Minor in Biochemistry offered by the Department of Biochemistry is designed to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in modern biochemistry and molecular biology. Our goal is to develop and equip students with enough critical thinking and analytical skills so that they can embark on a career in biochemical sciences.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AS Biology or AS Chemistry or equivalent  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Major in Biochemistry

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
BIOC1001. Basic Biochemistry	6
BIOC1003. Introduction to Molecular Genetics	6
<b>b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
BIOL2301. Protein Structure and Function	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of BIOC2000 level courses and at least 12 credits of BIOC3000 level courses, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### 4. Minor in Biology

What is biology and why is it important? This Minor provides students with a foundation in the biological sciences. Students are offered a broad range of options that should suit all interests, from genetics to microbiology, ecology to morphology and biodiversity to physiology. This is a good choice for a non-scientist who wants to know what biology is all about, as well as for non-biological scientists to explore the living side of science.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL Biology or equivalent  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Major in Biology

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
At least 12 credits of the following courses:	
BIOL1106. Genetics	3

BIOL1107. Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction	3
BIOL1119. Introductory Microbiology	6
BIOL1121. Animal Form and Functions	3
BIOL1122. Functional Biology <b>OR</b> BIOL0126. Fundamentals of Biology	6
ECOL0020. Ecology of Hong Kong	3
ECOL0040. Ecology and Evolution	3
ECOL0041. Evolutionary Diversity	6
ECOL0042. Ecology Field Course	3

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2112. Plant Physiology <b>OR</b> BIOL2215. Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2115. Cell Biology & Cell Technology	6
BIOL2303. Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
ECOL2004. Environmental Microbiology <sup>1</sup> <b>OR</b> ECOL2022. Biodiversity <sup>2</sup>	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of advanced level courses (BIOL2000, BIOL3000, ECOL2000 or ECOL3000 level) of which 6 credits at BIOL3000 or ECOL3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2005 or 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For students admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 5. Minor in Biotechnology

Technology leads our future. Biotechnology is relevant to many business sectors and our daily life. Students who are interested in the developments of biological sciences are highly recommended to take this Minor. You will learn the scientific principles underlying current biotechnological advances and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Biology or equivalent
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Biotechnology

### **Required courses (36 credits)** Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

BIOL1122. Functional Biology	6
------------------------------	---

**Plus** at least 6 credits of the following courses:

BIOC1001. Basic Biochemistry <b>OR</b> BIOL1125. Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0128. Biological Techniques, Instrumentation and Data Processing	6
BIOL1106. Genetics	3
BIOL1107. Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction	3
BIOL1119. Introductory Microbiology	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL2303. Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
---	---

**Plus** at least 6 credits of the following courses:

BIOL3315. Animal Biotechnology	6
BIOL3316. Plant Biotechnology	6
BIOL3317. Microbial Biotechnology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004. Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111. Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2115. Cell Biology & Cell Technology	6
BIOL2205. Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2209. Developmental Biology	6
BIOL2301. Protein Structure and Function	6
BIOL2302. Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2515. Food Microbiology	6
BIOL3213. Advanced Techniques and Instrumentation in Animal Biology	6
BIOL3214. General Virology	6
BIOL3307. Biotechnology Industry	6
BIOL3522. Nutrigenomics	3

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 6. Minor in Chemistry

Why study Chemistry? Chemistry is both interesting and important. It is involved in almost everything you do. Chemistry occupies a central role in the natural sciences, it overlaps with other fields, and provides a fruitful source for important discoveries. For example, new discoveries in material sciences such as nanoscale materials cannot be realized without chemists. Astronomers now use results from chemical laboratories to search for new compounds in distant galaxies. Geologists analyse the structures of minerals and transformations between different forms of matter in the Earth's crust by using chemical principles of bonding and thermodynamics. Biologists try to understand the life process by chemical language in the field like molecular biology and chemical genetics. Therefore, the Chemistry Department offers this Minor for those students who need a knowledge of chemistry for their major subjects or those who have an interest in studying chemistry at a higher level. Students are required to take introductory courses in general and analytical chemistry and one other chemistry course from selected areas. The advanced courses emphasize instrumental analysis and spectroscopic techniques. In addition, students may also choose specialized courses in different areas of chemistry such as organic, synthetic, materials, medicinal, environmental, or industrial chemistry as their electives in the second and third years. The Minor is essential to students who major in science-related subjects such as the biological, medical, material and environmental sciences.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Chemistry or equivalent
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Chemistry

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

CHEM1206. General and Analytical Chemistry	6
--	---

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

CHEM1001. Chemical Principles for Earth and Life Sciences	6
---	---

CHEM1301. Basic Inorganic Chemistry	6
CHEM1401. Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry <sup>1</sup>	6
CHEM1406. Basic Organic Chemistry <sup>1</sup>	6
CHEM1506. Basic Physical Chemistry	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> CHEM1401 and CHEM1406 are mutually exclusive.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 7. Minor in Earth Sciences

To provide interested students an introduction to the different aspects of the discipline which may or may not be relevant to their major field of interest. Courses in physical geology and Earth history are offered in the first year followed by more advanced courses in the second and third year. A wide range of Earth Science courses are offered. A Minor in Earth Sciences is particularly suitable for students majoring in biochemistry, botany, chemistry, computing, ecology, economics, geography, mathematics, statistics, physics and zoology.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil

Minimum Credit Requirement: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Earth Sciences

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	Credits
---	---------

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

EASC0116. Introduction to Physical Geology	6
--	---

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

EASC0001. Earth's Past and Future	6
EASC0105. Earth Through Time	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC2000 or EASC3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 8. Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

Southeast Asia is extremely diverse in plants and animals, and Hong Kong has, for its size, a remarkable biodiversity. This Minor is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. Students will first learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region. They will then be able to build upon this basic knowledge by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: Nil
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection Minor in Environmental Protection

**Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

ECOL0020. Ecology of Hong Kong	3
ECOL0040. Ecology and Evolution	3
ECOL0041. Evolutionary Diversity	6

The following is also recommended:

ECOL0042. Ecology Field Course	3
--------------------------------	---

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)****Plus** at least 24 credits of the following courses:

ECOL2004. Environmental Microbiology	6
ECOL2005. Fish Biology	6
ECOL2007. Molecular Ecology	6
ECOL2011. Biological Oceanography	6
ECOL2013. Systematics & Phylogenetics	6
ECOL2014. Conservation Biology	6
ECOL2015. Fungal Diversity	3
ECOL2022. Biodiversity <sup>1</sup>	6
ECOL2023. Freshwater Ecology	6
ECOL2024. Plant Structure and Evolution	3
ECOL2029. How Humans Evolved	6
ECOL2032. Terrestrial Ecology	6
ECOL3033. Biogeography	3

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2004 or before.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**9. Minor in Environmental Protection**

Managing and conserving the environment is increasingly recognized as an important and necessary challenge for modern Society. Preserving biological diversity, whether species, genes, populations or ecosystems, requires an understanding of a range of exciting new areas in the life sciences. This Minor will provide students with an appreciation of the depth and breadth of this important developing field. The lectures are enhanced by valuable laboratory and practical experience that should be applicable to a wide range of careers, and contribute to a better understanding of the world we live in.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: AL Biology or equivalent
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity



<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
ECOL0020. Ecology of Hong Kong	3
ECOL0040. Ecology and Evolution	3
ECOL0041. Evolutionary Diversity	6
The following is also recommended:	
ECOL0042. Ecology Field Course	3
<b>b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
ECOL3027. Environmental Impact Assessment	6
ECOL3034. Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6
<b><u>Plus</u></b> at least 12 credits of the following courses:	
ECOL2004. Environmental Microbiology	6
ECOL2006. Biometrics	6
ECOL2014. Conservation Biology	6
ECOL2016. Environmental Toxicology	6
ECOL2032. Terrestrial Ecology <sup>1</sup> <b><u>OR</u></b> ECOL2022. Biodiversity <sup>2</sup>	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For students admitted in 2005 or 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For students admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## **10. Minor in Food & Nutritional Science**

This Minor is ideal for those who simply want to learn more about diet as part of their quest to promote personal health or for those who see knowledge in food and nutrition as complementary to their major study, be it biotechnology, chemistry, business or social science.

Minimum Entry Requirement : AL / AS Biology\* and AL / AS Chemistry or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Food & Nutritional Science

\* *Students without AL / AS Biology must take BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology as a qualifying course.*

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
BIOL0002. Introduction to Food and Nutritional Science	3
BIOL1123. Food Chemistry	3
BIOL1514. Nutrition and Metabolism	6
<b>b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
At least 24 credits of the following courses:	
BIOL2004. Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2215. Animal Physiology	6

BIOL2302. Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2501. Food Processing and Preservation	6
BIOL2503. Grain Production & Utilization	6
BIOL2505. Food Safety and Quality Management	6
BIOL2507. Meat and Dairy Science	6
BIOL2515. Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2517. Food Analysis	3
BIOL2519. Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods	6
BIOL2520. Food Toxicology	3
BIOL2521. Food Engineering	3
BIOL3516. Nutrition and Brain Function	3
BIOL3522. Nutrigenomics	3
BIOL3523. Principles of Chinese medicated Diet	3
BIOL3524. Diet and Disease	3
BIOL3525. Food Product Development	3

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 11. Minor in General Science

Science is an indispensable component of this modern world, with a significant impact to our daily lives. Be it the interaction between animals and their natural environment, the food in our daily diet, the synthesis of new materials (nanomaterials, polymeric and semiconducting materials), the mystery of the human gene, or the application of mathematics to solve problems. This Minor is suitable for non-Science students who are interested in exploring science and learning how scientists study the real world. The scientific knowledge, quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking and sense of numeracy will be useful in various fields of finance, business, social sciences, arts and education. Students have the flexibility to gather courses in any area of interest.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: Nil
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Nil (This Minor is only offered to non-Faculty of Science students.)

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

#### **a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits of any introductory level Science courses (level 0 & 1), subject to prerequisite requirements.

#### **b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of any advanced level Science courses (level 2 & 3), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 12. Minor in Mathematics

Mathematics has been referred to as "our invisible culture". Most people agree mathematics finds applications ranging from traditional ones in the physical sciences and engineering to more recent ones in the life sciences, economics, finance and management. Yet, many are dazzled by achievements mathematics helps to bring about that they forget about mathematics itself! A Minor in Mathematics provides an initiation into the subject and will nurture quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, problem-solving skill and innovative imagination.

Minimum Entry Requirement : HKCEE Mathematics or AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent

Minimum Credit Requirement: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

Impermissible Combination : Major in Mathematics

### Required courses (36 credits) Credits

#### **a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

##### Either

MATH0801. Basic Mathematics I 6

MATH0802. Basic Mathematics II 6

##### Or

MATH1803. Basic Mathematics III 6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of Mathematics course

##### Or

MATH1811. Mathematics I 6

MATH1812. Mathematics II 6

##### Or

MATH1813. Mathematical Methods for Actuarial Science 6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of Mathematics course

##### Or

MATH1201. Calculus I <sup>1</sup> 6

MATH1202. Calculus II <sup>1</sup> 6

#### **b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students selecting this option are strongly advised to take also MATH1101 and MATH1102.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## 13. Minor in Physics

The Minor in Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a taste of the subject. The curriculum is designed with the flexibility for students with and without HKAL Physics/Pure Mathematics background. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

Minimum Entry Requirement : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
 2. HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or equivalent  
 Minimum Credit Requirement: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Major in Physics

\* Refer to the Physics Department website <http://www.physics.hku.hk> for suggested curriculum.

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
PHYS1314. Modern Physics	6
<b><u>Plus</u></b> at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics course (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level) <sup>1</sup>	
<b>b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
<b><u>Any</u></b> 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.	

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students are strongly advised to take at least one of the following courses: PHYS1111, PHYS1112 and PHYS1113 to allow for maximum flexibility in course selection for advanced level Physics courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

#### **14. Minor in Risk Management**

The Minor in Risk Management enables students to gain exposure to financial and investment risks, and to various statistical techniques for modeling them. Specific attention is given to applications in financial and insurance problems.

Minimum Entry Requirement : Nil  
 Minimum Credit Requirement : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
 Impermissible Combination : Major in Risk Management; Statistics  
 Minor in Statistics

<b><u>Required courses (36 credits)</u></b>	<b>Credits</b>
<b>a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
STAT1301. Probability and Statistics I <b><u>Or</u></b>	6
STAT1306. Introductory Statistics <b><u>Or</u></b>	6
STAT0302. Business Statistics	6
<b><u>Plus</u></b>	
STAT1302. Probability and Statistics II <b><u>Or</u></b>	6
STAT1303. Data Management <b><u>Or</u></b>	6
One of the advanced level courses listed below	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of the following courses:

STAT2309.	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310.	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2311.	Computer-aided Data Analysis	6
STAT2312.	Data Mining	6
STAT2314.	Business Forecasting	6
STAT2315.	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806.	Financial Economics	6
STAT3301.	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3305.	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3308.	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3812.	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**15. Minor in Statistics**

The Minor in Statistics introduces to students important statistical concepts and provides them with exposure to applied statistical methodologies. A broad spectrum of courses is available for selection, covering topics which find applications in areas like business, finance, risk management, survey research, insurance, industry, medicine or computing.

Minimum Entry Requirement	: Nil
Minimum Credit Requirement	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
Impermissible Combination	: Major in Risk Management; Statistics Minor in Risk Management

**Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

**a. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

One of the following courses:

STAT0301.	Elementary Statistical Methods	6
STAT1301.	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1306.	Introductory Statistics	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1302.	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1303.	Data Management	6
STAT1304.	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6

**b. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of the following courses:

STAT2301.	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT2302.	Statistical Inference	6
STAT2303.	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2304.	Design and Analysis of Experiments	6
STAT2305.	Quality Control and Management	6
STAT2306.	Business Logistics	6
STAT2307.	Statistics in Clinical Medicine & Bio-medical Research	6
STAT2308.	Statistical Genetics	6

STAT2309.	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310.	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2311.	Computer-aided Data Analysis	6
STAT2312.	Data Mining	6
STAT2313.	Marketing Engineering	6
STAT2314.	Business Forecasting	6
STAT2315.	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806.	Financial Economics	6
STAT3301.	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3302.	Multivariate Data Analysis	6
STAT3304.	Computer-aided Statistical Modelling	6
STAT3305.	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3306.	Selected Topics in Statistics	6
STAT3308.	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316.	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317.	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3811.	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812.	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

*For course details, please visit <http://www.hku.hk/student/uregcourse/>*

## **MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES**

A ‘major’ is defined as taking not less than 48 senior-level credits and not more than 78 credits of courses from a single core department.

A ‘minor’ is defined as taking not less than 24 senior-level credits unless otherwise specified in a single department / programme approved by the Faculty.

Candidates may select courses specified in the syllabuses to satisfy the requirements for the following major / minor programmes offered by the Faculty of Social Sciences:

### **Major or Minor**

Geography  
 Politics and Public Administration  
 Psychology  
 Sociology  
 Social Work and Social Administration  
 Criminal Justice  
 Global Studies  
 Media and Cultural Studies  
 Public and Social Administration

### **Minor**

Journalism and Media Studies  
 Family and Child Studies  
 Human Resources Management  
 International Business

## ***Majors and Minors***

### **1. Geography**

- I. (a) Candidates admitted in the academic year 2006-2007 who wish to major in Geography must successfully complete two junior level 6-credit 'core' courses as meeting the prerequisite requirement and at least 48 credits of senior level courses in Geography from the following list of which GEOG3028 is a 'required' course.
- (b) Candidates admitted in the academic year 2006-2007 who wish to minor in Geography must successfully complete one junior level 6-credit 'core' course as meeting the prerequisite requirement and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in Geography from the following list.
- (c) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2007-2008 who wish to major in Geography must successfully complete one junior level 6-credit 'core' course as meeting the prerequisite requirement and at least 48 credits of senior level courses in Geography from the following list of which GEOG3028 is a 'required' course.
- (d) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2007-2008 who wish to minor in Geography must successfully complete one junior level 6-credit 'core' course as meeting the prerequisite requirement and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in Geography from the following list.

II. All Geography courses are listed as below:

#### *Junior Level*

##### *Core Courses*

- GEOG1012. Economic and social development in an urbanizing world (6 credits)  
 GEOG1016. Nature conservation for sustainable societies (6 credits)  
 GEOG1017. Human geography in a globalizing world (6 credits)

##### *Elective Courses*

- GEOG1002. Hong Kong: land, people and resources (6 credits)  
 GEOG1003. Contemporary global environmental issues (6 credits)  
 GEOG1005. Map use, reading and interpretation (6 credits)  
 GEOG1014. Spatial distribution of hazards and disasters (3 credits)  
 GEOG1018. Hong Kong's environment: issues and policies (6 credits)  
 GEOG1019. Geography field camp (3 credits, not counted as prerequisite)

#### *Senior Level*

- GEOG2004. Atmospheric environment and global climate \* (6 credits)  
 GEOG2013. Sustainable development (6 credits)  
 GEOG2014. Countryside recreation and management (6 credits)  
 GEOG2015. Environmental monitoring and assessment # (6 credits)  
 GEOG2018. Transport geography (6 credits)  
 GEOG2019. Environmental GIS \* (6 credits)  
 GEOG2020. Geography of wine # (6 credits)  
 GEOG2021. Physical environment of China (6 credits)  
 GEOG2030. Global development (6 credits)  
 GEOG2038. Climate change and the environment # (6 credits)

GEOG2042.	Urban hydrology and water quality # (6 credits)
GEOG2045.	Retail location * (6 credits)
GEOG2048.	Environmental hazards * (6 credits)
GEOG2050.	Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations* (6 credits)
GEOG2051.	Port and airport development # (6 credits)
GEOG2054.	Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
GEOG2055.	Water resources and management * (6 credits)
GEOG2056.	Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)
GEOG2057.	Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)
GEOG2060.	An introduction to archaeology (6 credits)
GEOG2061.	Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)
GEOG2065.	Urban planning: principles and practices (6 credits)
GEOG2072.	Environmental management: impact assessment (6 credits)
GEOG2073.	Principles of environmental management * (6 credits)
GEOG2078.	Urban geography I: growth, function and pattern of cities (6 credits)
GEOG2079.	Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)
GEOG2080.	Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)
GEOG2081.	Sustainable urban transport (6 credits)
GEOG2082.	Economic development in rural China (6 credits)
GEOG2083.	Sustainable cities: theory and praxis # (6 credits)
GEOG2085.	North America * (6 credits)
GEOG2086.	China's tourism resources and management (6 credits)
GEOG2088.	China: environment and sustainable development (6 credits)
GEOG2089.	The Pearl River Delta: development and interaction with Hong Kong (6 credits)
GEOG2090.	Introduction to geographic information systems (6 credits)
GEOG2091.	Principles and practice of ecotourism (6 credits)
GEOG2092.	Freight transport management (6 credits)
GEOG2093.	Visitor management in parks, heritage sites, and recreation areas (6 credits)
GEOG2094.	Locational changes of global economic activities # (6 credits)
GEOG2095.	Globalizing China II: economy, society, and regional development * (6 credits)
GEOG2096.	Human impacts on ecosystems * (6 credits)
GEOG2097.	Global landforms * (6 credits)
GEOG2098.	Methods and techniques in spatial analysis (6 credits)
GEOG2099.	Sustainable use and management of soils * (6 credits)
GEOG2100.	People, society and the internet # (6 credits)
GEOG2101.	Globalizing China I: resources, politics, and population (6 credits)
GEOG2102.	Trees for green and liveable cities # (6 credits)
GEOG2103.	Climate change and social responses * (6 credits)
GEOG2104.	Introduction to GIS in health studies # (6 credits)
GEOG2105.	Strategies of transport and infrastructural development * (6 credits)
GEOG2106.	Globalizing greater China: politics, economy, and society (6 credits)
GEOG2107.	Geographical analysis of crime (6 credits)
GEOG2108.	Land economy, administration and resource management (6 credits)
GEOG2109.	Changing population structure in modern society (6 credits)
GEOG2110.	Tourism policy and planning (6 credits)
GEOG2111.	Transnationalism, global citizenship and social cohesion (6 credits)
GEOG2112.	Cultural and social geography (6 credits)
GEOG3009.	Honours dissertation (12 credits)
GEOG3027.	Directed project (6 credits)
GEOG3028.	Overseas field trip (6 credits - required)
GEOG3035.	Advanced urban survey (6 credits)

# Courses are normally offered on alternate odd year basis, i.e. in 2007-08, and 2009-10.

\* Courses are normally offered on alternate biennial even year basis, i.e. in 2008-09, and 2010-11.



## 2. Politics and Public Administration

I. Candidates who wish to major in Politics and Public Administration (PPA) must successfully complete

a) the following compulsory courses:

- in semester I or II: POLI1003 Making sense of politics (6 credits) (pre-requisite for majors)
- in semester III to IV: POLI0062 Political analysis (6 credits) plus one of –
  - POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
  - POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
  - POLI0015. Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)
  - POLI0067. Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)
  - POLI0071. International political theory (6 credits)

b) the following major options are available for choice:

- i) standard PPA major:
  - fulfill requirement in a), and
  - take at least 36 credits of senior level Politics and Public Administration courses
- ii) PPA major with a specialist stream:
  - fulfill requirement in a), and
  - take 24 credits of senior level Politics and Public Administration courses in a chosen specialist stream, and
  - take another 12 credits of senior level PPA courses
- iii) Public and Social Administration (details please refer to “Multi-disciplinary Majors within the General Stream”)

c) the specialist streams of PPA are:

- i) Comparative Politics
- ii) International Politics
- iii) Political Theory
- iv) Public Administration

(Courses affiliated to individual specialist streams are listed in the department’s handbook)

II. (a) Candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005 who wish to minor in Politics and Public Administration must successfully complete at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.

(b) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who wish to minor in Politics and Public Administration must successfully complete the pre-requisite course POLI1003 and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.

III. All PPA Courses are listed as below:

### *Junior Level*

\*POLI1002. Fundamentals of public administration (6 credits)

POLI1003. Making sense of politics (6 credits)

(\* this course is regarded as an elective course and not counted towards Major/Minor requirement)

### *Senior Level*

POLI0001. A special topic in political science (6 credits)

POLI0002. A special topic in political theory (6 credits)

POLI0003.	Approaches to foreign policy analysis (6 credits)
POLI0004.	Bureaucracy and the public (6 credits)
POLI0005.	Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
POLI0006.	China and Hong Kong: the politics of transition (6 credits)
POLI0009.	Comparative politics (6 credits)
POLI0010.	Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
POLI0012.	East Asian political economy (6 credits)
POLI0013.	Elections and representative democracy (6 credits)
POLI0015.	Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)
POLI0016.	Gender and development (6 credits)
POLI0017.	Government and business (6 credits)
POLI0018.	The Japanese way of politics (6 credits)
POLI0019.	Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)
POLI0020.	Hong Kong politics (6 credits)
POLI0021.	Understanding global issues (6 credits)
POLI0022.	Governing China (6 credits)
POLI0023.	Issues in contemporary Chinese politics (6 credits)
POLI0024.	Issues in public administration (6 credits)
POLI0025.	Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
POLI0027.	Public policy-making: theories and application (6 credits)
POLI0031.	Politics of economic reform in China (6 credits)
POLI0033.	Problems of the Third World (6 credits)
POLI0034.	Public administration in China (6 credits)
POLI0035.	Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)
POLI0037.	Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
POLI0038.	Public policy and democracy (6 credits)
POLI0039.	Public policy analysis (6 credits)
POLI0040.	Public sector management (6 credits)
POLI0041.	Research methods for politics and public administration (6 credits)
POLI0044.	American democracy (6 credits)
POLI0045.	The political economy of the European Union (6 credits)
POLI0046.	Thesis in politics or public administration (12 credits)
POLI0047.	United States foreign policy (6 credits)
POLI0050.	Women and politics (6 credits)
POLI0051.	Issues in Chinese political philosophy (6 credits)
POLI0052.	International relations of East Asia (6 credits)
POLI0058.	Managing the global economy (6 credits)
POLI0059.	China and the world (6 credits)
POLI0060.	Public financial management (6 credits)
POLI0061.	Hong Kong and South China: the political economy of regional development and cooperation (6 credits)
POLI0062.	Political analysis (6 credits)
POLI0063.	Performance and accountability in the public sector (6 credits)
POLI0064.	Governance and law (6 credits)
POLI0065.	Public organization and management (6 credits)
POLI0066.	Public administration and the public (6 credits)
POLI0067.	Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)
POLI0069.	Public policy, politics and social change (6 credits)
POLI0070.	Language and advice in politics and public administration (6 credits)
POLI0071.	International political theory (6 credits)
FOSS0003.	Human Security in the global context (6 credits)

Students who choose Politics and Public Administration as first major are not allowed to choose Public and Social Administration as their second major.

### 3. Psychology

I. Candidates who wish to major in Psychology must successfully complete:

*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2006-2007*

a) Junior level courses:

either

- i) PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits); and  
PSYC1004. Introduction to quantitative methods in psychology (6 credits)

or

- ii) PSYC1002. How the mind works: explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits); and  
PSYC1003. Psychology and life: personality and social influence (6 credits); and  
PSYC1004. Introduction to quantitative methods in psychology (6 credits)

Students who have taken PSYC1001 are not allowed to take either PSYC1002 or PSYC1003 and vice versa.

b) Senior level courses:

At least 48 credits of senior level courses in the Department of Psychology including the following:

- i) **Compulsory** course:

PSYC0060. Research and quantitative methods in psychology (taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> year)

and

Courses taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> year:

- ii) 2 courses from the **First Stream**:

PSYC0007. Cognitive psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0022. Biological psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0051. Perception (6 credits)

and

- iii) 3 courses from the **Second Stream**:

PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0010. History and issues in psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0019. Psychology of personality (6 credits)

PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0062. Introduction to Psychopathology (6 credits)

and

- iv) 1 advanced lab course from the **Third Stream**:

PSYC0008. Advanced cognitive Psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0052. Advanced social psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0053. Advanced research in I/O psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)

PSYC0061. Advanced issues in perception (6 credits)

PSYC0064. Advanced developmental psychology (6 credits)

*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2003-2004; and before 2006-2007*

a) either

PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits)

or

both PSYC1002. How the mind works: explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits)  
and PSYC1003. Psychology and life: personality and social influence (6 credits)

Students who have taken PSYC1001 are not allowed to take either PSYC1002 or PSYC1003 and vice versa.

- b) at least 48 credits of senior level courses in the Department of Psychology including the following:

2 **compulsory** courses:

Course taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> year:

PSYC0001. Research methods in psychology (6 credits); and

Course taken in 3<sup>rd</sup> year

either

PSYC3001. Thesis in psychology (6 credits)

or

PSYC3002. Advanced research methods in psychology (6 credits)

*(For candidates admitted in the academic year 2005-2006)*

*Note 1: Students have to take one of the following advanced lab courses as a co-requisite for PSYC3001 in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year or 3<sup>rd</sup> year.*

*Note 2: The 3<sup>rd</sup> year compulsory course requirement can also be fulfilled by one of these advanced lab courses, subject to approval by Department Head.*

*PSYC0008. Advanced cognitive Psychology (6 credits)*

*PSYC0052. Advanced social psychology (6 credits)*

*PSYC0053. Advanced research in I/O psychology (6 credits)*

*PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)*

*PSYC0061. Advanced issues in perception (6 credits) (formerly PSYC0030)*

*PSYC0064. Advanced developmental psychology (6 credits)*

2 courses from the **First Stream** (taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> year):

PSYC0007. Cognitive psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0022. Biological psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0051. Perception (6 credits)

PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)

and 3 courses from the **Second Stream** (taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> year):

PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0010. History and issues in psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0019. Psychology of personality (6 credits)

PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0062. Introduction to Psychopathology (6 credits) (formerly PSYC0034)

II. Candidates who wish to minor in Psychology must successfully complete at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.

III. The selection of courses and special topics in psychology available in a particular year is subject to the approval of the Head of the Department. In course registration, students should pay special attention to the prerequisite of courses as specified in the syllabuses. In exceptional cases these may be waived.

IV. All Psychology courses are listed as below:

#### *Junior Level*

PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits)

PSYC1002. How the mind works: explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits)

PSYC1003. Psychology and life: personality and social influence (6 credits)

PSYC1004. Introduction to quantitative methods in psychology (6 credits)

*Senior Level*

- PSYC0001. Research methods in psychology (6 credits) [For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2005-06]
- PSYC0002. Psychological testing and measurement (6 credits)
- PSYC0005. Introduction to counselling and therapeutic psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0007. Cognitive psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0008. Advanced cognitive psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0010. History and issues in psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0016. The psychology of stress and health (6 credits)
- PSYC0017. Motivation and achievement (6 credits)
- PSYC0019. Psychology of personality (6 credits)
- PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0022. Biological psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0023. Psychology of human communication (6 credits)
- PSYC0029. Cognitive development (6 credits)
- PSYC0032. Engineering psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0035. Introduction to educational psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0036. Special topics in psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0038. Psychology of language and bilingualism (6 credits)
- PSYC0040. Cross-cultural psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0041. Consumer psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0050. Knowing and acting in everyday life (6 credits)
- PSYC0051. Perception (6 credits)
- PSYC0052. Advanced social psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0053. Advanced research in industrial/organizational psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0055. Research internship in psychology I (3 credits)
- PSYC0056. Research internship in psychology II (3 credits)
- \*PSYC0057. Internship in applied child development (6 credits)
- PSYC0058. Cultural psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0059. Current issues in applied development psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0060. Research and quantitative methods in psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0061. Advanced issues in perception (6 credits)
- PSYC0062. Introduction to Psychopathology (6 credits)
- PSYC0063. Industrial/organizational psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0064. Advanced development psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0065. Health psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC3001. Thesis in psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC3002. Advanced research methods in psychology (6 credits) [For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2005-06]
- PSYC3006. Independent study in psychology (6 credits) [For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2006-07]

(\* this course is only available for students minor in the Applied Child Development)

#### **4. Social Work and Social Administration**

The Department of Social Work and Social Administration (SWSA) offers a range of courses which can be taken in conjunction with other units in the Faculty to make up the social sciences degree. The courses should be of interest to students who wish to learn about the needs and problems of people, the provision of social services in a society, and who may wish to pursue a career in management and administration, in the government or non-governmental organizations.

- I. Candidates who wish to in Social Work and Social Administration must successfully complete either SOWK1001 or SOWK1003 and at least 48 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.
- II. Candidates who wish to minor in Social Work and Social Administration must successfully complete either SOWK1001 or SOWK1003 and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.
- III. All SWSA courses are listed as below:

*Junior Level*

- SOWK1001. Introduction to social administration (6 credits)  
 \*SOWK1002. Introduction to social work (6 credits)  
 SOWK1003. Introduction to social welfare (6 credits)  
 (\* this course is regarded as an elective course and not counted towards Major/Minor requirement)

*Senior Level*

- SOWK0002. Working with children and families (6 credits)  
 SOWK0007. Working with families (6 credits)  
 SOWK0009. Issues and interventions in mental health settings (6 credits)  
 SOWK0011. Issues in health care and rehabilitation settings (6 credits)  
 SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)  
 SOWK0013. Social work practice with selected target groups or in specific settings (6 credits)  
 SOWK0014. Health administration (6 credits)  
 SOWK0020. Oncology, palliative and hospice care (6 credits)  
 SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 SOWK0028. Selected topics in social work practice (6 credits)  
 SOWK0029. Comparative social administration (6 credits)  
 SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)  
 SOWK0033. Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)  
 SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)  
 SOWK0037. Human sexuality (6 credits)  
 SOWK0044. Medical knowledge for social sciences students (3 credits)  
 SOWK0046. Socio-cultural context of aging (6 credits)  
 SOWK0050. Government and politics of social services in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 SOWK0051. Information and communication technology in human services (6 credits)  
 SOWK0053. Evaluation of social services (6 credits)  
 SOWK0054. Gender and society – a policy perspective (6 credits)  
 SOWK0055. Management in human service organizations (6 credits)  
 SOWK0057. Aging and society (6 credits)  
 SOWK0058. Managing people in human services (6 credits)  
 SOWK0060. Career skills training (6 credits)  
 SOWK0061. Financial development and management for social service organizations (6 credits)  
 SOWK0062. Special topics in policy study (6 credits)  
 SOWK0063. Special topics in administrative study (6 credits)  
 SOWK0064. Special topics in research study (6 credits)  
 SOWK0065. Understanding and working with young people (6 credits)  
 SOWK0066. Care management (6 credits)  
 SOWK0068. Social skills training for human service personnel (6 credits)  
 SOWK0069. Counselling in health care settings (6 credits)  
 SOWK0071. Religions and superstitions in everyday life (6 credits)  
 SOWK0074. Teachers as counsellors (6 credits)  
 SOWK0075. Violence in intimate relationships (6 credits)  
 SOWK0076. New age health care in community (6 credits)  
 SOWK0077. International perspective in human services (6 credits)

SOWK0084.	Theoretical foundations in social policy and planning (6 credits)
SOWK0085.	Social service research I: methodology (6 credits)
SOWK0086.	Social service research II: analysis and utilization (6 credits)
SOWK0087.	Social service research project (6 credits)
SOWK0088.	Body politics (6 credits)
SOWK0089.	Family and society – a policy perspective (6 credits)
SOWK0091.	Current welfare issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)
SOWK0092.	Adventure-based counselling: theory and practice (6 credits)
SOWK0093.	Generation Y: youth (sub) cultures (6 credits)
SOWK0094.	Human service development, promotion, and evaluation (6 credits)
SOWK0096.	Policy provisions for income protection (6 credits)
SOWK0097.	Information technology and society (6 credits)
SOWK0098.	Working with people with disabilities (6 credits)
SOWK0099.	Separation, divorce and remarriage (6 credits)
SOWK0100.	Medical aspect of psychiatric illness (6 credits)
SOWK0102.	Social work in school settings (6 credits)
SOWK0103.	Counseling in different contexts (6 credits)
SOWK0104.	Knowing ourselves, knowing our world (6 credits)
SOWK0098.	Working with people with disabilities (6 credits)
SOWK0099.	Separation, divorce and remarriage (6 credits)
SOWK0100.	Medical aspect of psychiatric illness (6 credits)
SOWK0102.	Social work in school settings (6 credits)
SOWK0103.	Counseling in different contexts (6 credits)
SOWK0104.	Knowing ourselves, knowing our world (6 credits)
SOWK2008.	Human behaviour and the social environment (II) (6 credits)
SOWK3005.	Field practicum/project report (12 credits)

---

## 5. Sociology

- I. (a) Candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005 who wish to major in Sociology must successfully complete at least 48 credits of senior level courses in Sociology from the following list of which SOCI0001 and SOCI0042 are compulsory.
- (b) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who wish to major in Sociology must successfully complete the pre-requisite course either SOCI1001 or SOCI1002 or SOCI1003 and at least 48 credits of senior level courses in Sociology from the following list of which SOCI0001 and SOCI0042 are compulsory.
- II. (a) Candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005 who wish to minor in Sociology must successfully complete at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department from the following list.
- (b) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who wish to minor in Sociology must successfully complete the pre-requisite course either SOCI1001 or SOCI1002 or SOCI1003 and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department from the following list.
- III. All Sociology courses are listed as below:

### *Junior Level*

SOCI1001.	Introduction to sociology (6 credits)
SOCI1002.	Discovering society (6 credits)
SOCI1003.	Introduction to anthropology (6 credits)

*Senior Level*

- SOCI0001. A history of social theory (6 credits)
- SOCI0002. Class, wealth and poverty: inequality and injustice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOCI0003. Contemporary Chinese society (6 credits)
- SOCI0006. Critical issues in media studies (6 credits)
- SOCI0007. Cultural studies: themes and perspectives (6 credits)
- SOCI0008. Culture and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0009. Economic development and social change (6 credits)
- SOCI0010. Education and teaching (6 credits)
- SOCI0011. Gender and crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0012. Gender and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0013. Gender in Chinese societies (6 credits)
- SOCI0014. Globalization, work and industry (6 credits)
- SOCI0015. Hong Kong popular culture (6 credits)
- SOCI0016. Hong Kong society (6 credits)
- SOCI0017. Japanese economic institutions (6 credits)
- SOCI0018. Japanese society (6 credits)
- SOCI0019. Life styles and modern culture (6 credits)
- SOCI0021. Marriage and the family (6 credits)
- SOCI0024. Modern social theory (6 credits)
- SOCI0027. Politics and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0028. Population and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0030. Quantitative sociological analysis (6 credits)
- SOCI0033. Research project (6 credits)
- SOCI0035. Selected topics in social and cultural anthropology (6 credits)
- SOCI0036. Social anthropology of Hong Kong and Guangdong (6 credits)
- SOCI0038. Social control (6 credits)
- SOCI0041. Social problems (6 credits)
- SOCI0042. Social research methods (6 credits)
- SOCI0043. Sociology of contemporary culture (6 credits)
- SOCI0044. Sociology of economic life (6 credits)
- SOCI0046. Sociology of law (6 credits)
- SOCI0047. Sociology of punishment (6 credits)
- SOCI0048. Sociology of sexuality (6 credits)
- SOCI0049. The body and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0052. Traditional Chinese society (6 credits)
- SOCI0053. Youth and youth culture (6 credits)
- SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0055. A cultural study of tourisms and tourists (6 credits)
- SOCI0056. Criminal justice: policy and practice (6 credits)
- SOCI0060. Fraud, corruption and computer crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0061. Life styles and religious practices (6 credits)
- SOCI0062. Media development and cultural change in contemporary China (6 credits)
- SOCI0063. Multicultural societies and modern identities (6 credits)
- SOCI0064. Globalization and the information society: myths, facts and emerging patterns (6 credits)
- SOCI0065. Understanding media studies (6 credits)
- SOCI0066. The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits)
- SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)
- SOCI0068. Religious movements: peace, nationalism and terrorism (6 credits)
- SOCI0069. Perspectives on crime and deviance (6 credits)
- SOCI0070. Chinese identities and global networks (6 credits)
- SOCI0071. Criminology (6 credits)
- SOCI0072. Policy, governance and training in cultural tourism (6 credits)
- SOCI0073. Global migration (6 credits)



- SOCI0074. Disappearing cultures and vanishing heritages (6 credits)  
 SOCI0075. Hong Kong: community and cultural policy in the global context (6 credits)  
 Special topic in Sociology

#### IV. Senior level multi-disciplinary courses:

The following multi-disciplinary courses can also be counted as Sociology courses for students intending to major or minor in Sociology.

- FOSS0001. Media, culture and communication in contemporary China (6 credits)  
 FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)  
 FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)  
 FOSS0011. Researching media and culture (6 credits)  
 FOSS0014. Cultural studies and modern societies (6 credits)  
 FOSS0015. Sexing culture and identity (6 credits)

Students who choose Sociology as first major are not allowed to choose Criminal Justice as their second major.

## 6. Criminal Justice

### I. Objectives

Crime and its control are among some of the oldest problems facing society. In comparison, criminal justice programme is a relatively recent development, though it is now a commonly accepted part of the university curriculum elsewhere. Criminal justice studies combines a concern for current problems and practices associated with crime control with an understanding of law and social sciences as they are related to criminal justice issues. Candidates will study topics such as criminology, the sociology of law, corrections, social policy, and social administration. The programme seeks to promote an understanding of not only 'how' the criminal justice system operates, but 'why' it should or should not continue to operate in the way it does, and is aimed for students who wish to assume a professional position in the criminal justice system and any one else having a general interest in crime and its control.

### II. Pre-enrolment requirement

Candidates who wish to major in this programme must have taken or have successfully completed one of the following junior level courses:

- SOWK1001. Introduction to social administration (6 credits)  
 SOWK1003. Introduction to social welfare (6 credits)  
 SOCI1001. Introduction to sociology (6 credits)  
 SOCI1002. Discovering society (6 credits)

Acceptance into the programme is conditional upon satisfactory completion of these courses in particular and subject to places available. Candidates who intend to select optional courses in Law during third and fourth semesters are encouraged to attend [LLAW1008. The legal system (6 credits)] in their first or second semester, in the Faculty of Law.

### III. Programme structure

Candidates who wish to major in this programme must successfully complete 48 credits of senior level courses from the following list.

- a) Compulsory courses  
 SOCI0071. Criminology (6 credits)

## b) Department of Sociology and Faculty

A minimum of 24 credits of senior level courses from the following list:

- SOCI0011. Gender and crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0033. Research project (6 credits)
- SOCI0038. Social control (6 credits)
- SOCI0041. Social problems (6 credits)
- SOCI0046. Sociology of law (6 credits)
- SOCI0047. Sociology of punishment (6 credits)
- SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0056. Criminal justice: policy and practice (6 credits)
- SOCI0060. Fraud, corruption and computer crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)
- SOCI0069. Perspectives on crime and deviance (6 credits)
- FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)
- FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)

Special topic in sociology (6 credits) (The topic covered in this course should be related to crime and criminal justice.)

Candidates who choose SOCI0033 Research project (6 credits) will be required to complete a small research project dealing with some aspects of criminal justice.

## c) Other Departments

A minimum of 12 credits of senior level courses from the following list:

*School of Economics and Finance*

- ECON0405. The economics of law (6 credits)

*Social Work and Social Administration*

- SOWK0028. Selected topics in social work practice (6 credits)
- SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0033. Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)
- SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)

*Department of Law (some law courses are available to BJ, BSocSc and BSW students only.)*

- LLAW2003. Criminal law I (6 credits)
- LLAW2004. Criminal law II (6 credits)
- LLAW3001. Introduction to legal theory (6 credits)
- LLAW3022. Human rights in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- LLAW3047. Hong Kong Basic Law (6 credits)
- LLAW3057. International criminal law (6 credits)
- LLAW3062. Human rights in China (6 credits)
- LLAW3090. Legal aspects of white collar crime (6 credits)
- LLAW3101. Cybercrime (6 credits)

Students who choose Sociology as first major are not allowed to choose Criminal Justice as their second major.

Candidates who minor in this programme are required to take 4 courses (24 credits) from the following list and which one or more must be from outside the Department of Sociology:

## a) Compulsory course

- SOCI0071. Criminology (6 credits)

## b) Elective courses (A maximum of 12 credits of courses to be chosen from the following list):

Department of Sociology

- SOCI0011. Gender and crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0038. Social control (6 credits)
- SOCI0041. Social problems (6 credits)
- SOCI0046. Sociology of law (6 credits)
- SOCI0047. Sociology of punishment (6 credits)
- SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0056. Criminal justice: policy and practice (6 credits)
- SOCI0060. Fraud, corruption and computer crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)
- SOCI0069. Perspectives on crime and deviance (6 credits)
- FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)
- FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)
- Special topic in sociology (6 credits) (the topic covered in this course should be related to crime and criminal justice.)

(A maximum of 12 credits of courses to be chosen from the following list, but some law courses are available to BJ, BSocSc and BSW students only):

- ECON0405. The economics of law (6 credits)
- SOWK0028. Selected topics in social work practice (6 credits)
- SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0033. Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)
- SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)
- LLAW2003. Criminal law I (6 credits)
- LLAW2004. Criminal law II (6 credits)
- LLAW3001. Introduction to legal theory (6 credits)
- LLAW3022. Human rights in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- LLAW3047. Hong Kong Basic Law (6 credits)
- LLAW3057. International criminal law (6 credits)
- LLAW3062. Human rights in China (6 credits)
- LLAW3090. Legal aspects of white collar crime (6 credits)
- LLAW3101. Cybercrime (6 credits)

*Candidates who minor in programmes of Family and Child Studies, Human Resources Management and International Business:*

- (a) *are required to take not less than four 6-credit courses in the courses listed under the programme;*
- (b) *are required to take courses from at least two departments; and*
- (c) *shall not take more than two courses from any single department.*

## **7. Public and Social Administration**

### **I. Objectives**

The programme is jointly co-ordinated by the Department of Politics and Public Administration and the Department of Social Work and Social Administration. It provides a structured and coherent course of study in the related fields of public and social administration. It seeks to provide the community with a pool of graduates with specialized knowledge in public administration and social administration to cope with the growing challenges of public sector work and developments in social welfare services.

### **II. Pre-enrolment requirement**

Candidates must have successfully completed the following junior level courses (6 credits each):

- a) POLI1002. Fundamentals of public administration (6 credits)
- or
- POLI1003. Making sense of politics (6 credits)

- b) SOWK1001. Introduction to social administration (6 credits)  
or  
SOWK1003. Introduction to social welfare (6 credits)
- c) STAT1301. Probability and Statistics I (6 credits)  
or  
STAT0301. Elementary statistical methods (6 credits)

### III. Programme structure

The programme comprises eight compulsory courses as follows:

#### a) Department of Politics and Public Administration

Any four courses from the following list:

- POLI0024. Issues in public administration (6 credits)
- POLI0025. Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI0027. Public policy-making: theories and application (6 credits)
- POLI0034. Public administration in China (6 credits)
- POLI0035. Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- POLI0037. Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI0038. Public policy and democracy (6 credits)
- POLI0039. Public policy analysis (6 credits)
- POLI0040. Public sector management (6 credits)
- POLI0060. Public financial management (6 credits)
- POLI0063. Performance and accountability in the public sector (6 credits)
- POLI0065. Public organization and management (6 credits)
- POLI0066. Public administration and the public (6 credits)
- POLI0069. Public policy, politics and social change (6 credits)

#### b) Department of Social Work and Social Administration

All courses from the following list:

- SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0084. Theoretical foundations in social policy and planning (6 credits)
- SOWK0085. Social service research I – methodology (6 credits)
- SOWK0086. Social service research II – analysis and utilization (6 credits)

In the interest of deepening understanding the subject matters taught in this programme, however, students are encouraged to select other senior level electives from the Department of Politics and Public Administration and the Department of Social Work and Social Administration. (For the electives on offer in particular years, please refer to the handbooks of the departments)

From the Department of Politics and Public Administration, students would in particular benefit from taking POLI0062 Political analysis and one of the following courses:

- POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
- POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
- POLI0015. Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)
- POLI0067. Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)

From the Department of Social Work and Social Administration:

- SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)
- SOWK0014. Health administration (6 credits)

- SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)
- SOWK0050. Government and politics of social services in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0051. Information and communication technology in human services (6 credits)
- SOWK0053. Evaluation of social services (6 credits)
- SOWK0055. Management in human service organizations (6 credits)

Students who choose Politics and Public Administration as first major are not allowed to choose Public and Social Administration as their second major.

#### IV. Minor

##### *Department of Politics and Public Administration (12 credits):*

- POLI0024. Issues in public administration (6 credits)
- POLI0025. Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI0027. Public policy-making: theories and application (6 credits)
- POLI0034. Public administration in China (6 credits)
- POLI0035. Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- POLI0037. Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI0038. Public policy and democracy (6 credits)
- POLI0039. Public policy analysis (6 credits)
- POLI0040. Public sector management (6 credits)
- POLI0060. Public financial management (6 credits)
- POLI0063. Performance and accountability in the public sector (6 credits)
- POLI0065. Public organization and management (6 credits)
- POLI0066. Public administration and the public (6 credits)
- POLI0069. Public policy, politics and social change (6 credits)

##### *Department of Social Work and Social Administration (12 credits):*

- SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)
- SOWK0014. Health administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)
- SOWK0050. Government and politics of social services in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0051. Information and communication technology in human services (6 credits)
- SOWK0053. Evaluation of social services (6 credits)
- SOWK0055. Management in human service organizations (6 credits)
- SOWK0084. Theoretical foundations in social policy and planning (6 credits)
- SOWK0085. Social service research I methodology (6 credits)
- SOWK0086. Social service research II analysis and utilization (6 credits)

## 8. Global Studies

### I. Objectives

The saying, "Think global, act local" has become part of our everyday vocabulary. Whether one is drinking a Coca-Cola, standing at an airport security check-point installed after "9/11", or simply contemplating global warming, it is impossible to ignore the impact of our unprecedented levels of global interdependence. How are we to comprehend the ways in which globalization affects our political, economic, social and personal lives? This multi-disciplinary programme of study is designed to help students better understand the multi-dimensional interconnectedness between individuals, societies, and countries that characterizes today's world. It represents a collaboration of core departments in the faculty and is intended to provide students with the foundation for examining

the impact of globalization on the world around us from a variety of theoretical perspectives. As this programme of study pays particular attention to issues of Asia and social change in the global context, it is highly relevant for students considering careers in the public and private sectors that require a regional or international focus.

## II. Programme Structure

### A) Pre-requisite requirement:

Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who major or minor in this programme should take one of the following junior-level courses (6 credits):

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| FOSS1002. | Appreciating social research (6 credits) |
| OR        |  |
| FOSS1003. | Masters in social thought (6 credits)    |

### B) Core Courses (12 credits)

Candidates who major or minor in this programme should take at least two courses (6 credits each) from the following lists in which one must be a FOSS course. Once the core requirements are filled, other courses from these lists may be taken to fulfill the elective requirement.:

<u>Course code</u>	<u>Course title</u>
--------------------	---------------------

**For the first course**, students must take one of these two courses:

- FOSS0013. Understanding global issues (6 credits) **or**  
 SOCI0064. Globalization and information society (6 credits)

**For the second course**, students can choose one of the four following courses.

- FOSS0003. Human security in the global context (6 credits)  
 FOSS0004. Gender and the global economy (6 credits)  
 SOCI0070. Chinese identities and global networks (6 credits)  
 URBP0001. Cities and globalization (6 credits)

### C) Elective Courses (major: 30 credits; minor: 12 credits)

Candidates who **major** in this programme should take at least 5 elective courses (6 credits each) from the course list below and no more than 2 from any single department. Candidates who **minor** in this programme should take at least 2 elective courses from the course list below and only 1 from any single department. The following courses are grouped by subject areas.

#### (i) Globalization and Economic Development

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| POLI0005. | Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)          |
| POLI0017. | Government and business (6 credits)                |
| POLI0058. | Managing the global economy (6 credits)            |
| PSYC0041. | Consumer psychology (6 credits)                    |
| PSYC0063. | Industrial/organization psychology (6 credits)     |
| SOCI0002. | Class, wealth and poverty (6 credits)              |
| SOCI0009. | Economic development and social change (6 credits) |
| SOCI0066. | The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits) |
| BUSI0022. | International marketing (6 credits)                |
| BUSI0026. | Employment and labor relations (6 credits)         |
| BUSI0044. | International business (6 credits)                 |
| ECON0501. | Economic development (6 credits)                   |
| ECON0503. | Urban economics (6 credits)                        |
| ECON0601. | Economic development of China (6 credits)          |

- ECON0602. Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)
- FINA0501. Asian financial institutions (6 credits)
- GEOG2030. Global development (6 credits)
- GEOG2045. Retail location (6 credits)
- GEOG2051. Port and airport development (6 credits)
- GEOG2081. Sustainable urban transport (6 credits)
- GEOG2082. Economic development in rural China (6 credits)
- GEOG2089. The Pearl River Delta: development and interaction with Hong Kong (6 credits)
- GEOG2092. Freight transport management (6 credits)
- GEOG2094. Locational changes of global economic activities (6 credits)
- GEOG2095. Globalizing China II: economy, society, and regional development (6 credits)
- GEOG2105. Strategies of transport and infrastructural development (6 credits)
- HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
- JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)

(ii) Globalization and Asian Politics and Policies

- FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)
- FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)
- POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
- POLI0019. Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)
- POLI0022. Governing China (6 credits)
- POLI0033. Problems of the Third World (6 credits)
- POLI0052. International relations of East Asia (6 credits)
- POLI0059. China and the world (6 credits)
- POLI0061. Hong Kong and South China: the political economy of regional development and cooperation (6 credits)
- SOWK0029. Comparative social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0062. Special topics in policy study (6 credits)
- GEOG2054. Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- GEOG2065. Urban planning: principles and practices (6 credits)
- GEOG2072. Environmental management: impact assessment (6 credits)
- GEOG2073. Principles of environmental management (6 credits)
- GEOG2078. Urban geography I: growth, function and pattern of cities (6 credits)
- GEOG2079. Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)
- GEOG2090. Introduction to geographic information systems (6 credits)
- GEOG2101. Globalizing China I: resources, politics, and population (6 credits)
- GEOG2104. Introduction to GIS in health studies (6 credits)
- HIST2009. Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)
- HIST2039. War and peace: conflicts and conflict resolutions since 1945 (6 credits)
- JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)
- JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)
- LLAW3062. Human rights in China (6 credits)
- LLAW3091. Ethnicity, human rights, & democracy (6 credits)

(iii) Globalization and Asian Cultures and Societies

- PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
- SOCI0003. Contemporary Chinese society (6 credits)
- SOCI0055. A cultural study of tourism and tourists (6 credits)
- SOCI0061. Lifestyles and religious practices (6 credits)
- SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)
- SOWK0057. Aging and society (6 credits)
- BCTC0002. Life and Buddhism (6 credits)
- CLIT2045. Colonialism/ postcolonialism (6 credits)

- CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)  
 ENGL2045. Travel writing.(6 credits)  
 ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)  
 FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)  
 FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)  
 FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)  
 HIST2064. Sweat and abacus: overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia (6 credits)  
 GEOG2013. Sustainable development (6 credits)  
 GEOG2014. Countryside recreation and management (6 credits)  
 GEOG2050. Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations (6 credits)  
 GEOG2056. Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)  
 GEOG2083. Sustainable cities: theory and praxis (6 credits)  
 GEOG2086. China's tourism resources and management (6 credits)  
 GEOG2088. China: environment and sustainable development (6 credits)  
 GEOG2089. The Pearl River Delta: development and interaction with Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 GEOG2096. Human impacts on ecosystems (6 credits)  
 GEOG2100. People, society and the internet (6 credits)  
 GEOG2102. Trees and green liveable cities (6 credits)  
 GEOG2103. Climate change and social responses (6 credits)  
 GEOG3035. Advanced urban survey (6 credits)  
 JAPN2035. Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)

D) Research project / Internship (6 credits) (For major only)

It is compulsory for all final year candidates who major in this programme to undertake either a year-long independent research project or an internship programme. It is designed to offer major students a chance to apply their theoretical training to a real world issue.

- FOSS3003. Research project in global studies (6 credits)  
 OR  
 FOSS3005. Internship in global studies (6 credits)

## 9. Media and Cultural Studies

(Candidates only be allowed to minor in either Media and Cultural Studies or Journalism and Media Studies.)

### I. Objectives

The media are central to our experience and identities in today's modern world. We find ourselves increasingly saturated by messages and ideas from television, radio, print media, advertisement, cinema and the internet. The media not only shape our education, politics, art and entertainment, constituting our worldviews, identities and fantasies, they also help to connect and divide communities locally, nationally, and globally. Their influences are further complicated by the rise of new information technology and the globalization of outlook and resources, posing us new demands and challenges. To what extent will those changes result in a multiplicity of lifestyles and identities? Are we getting more homogenized and westernized? Questions of this kind are under considerable discussion in the social sciences as it becomes clear that culture, life-styles, as well as class, gender and ethnic identities are the grounds on which economic, social, and political forces of the new era work themselves out. In this programme, the connections between individuals, their communities, and the world, mediated by culture and the media, are now being examined in relation to global versus local, modern versus tradition, diaspora versus nationalism, and culture versus market.



This multidisciplinary program of study represents the collaboration of the core departments in the Faculty and other departments in the University and is intended to provide students with the foundation for examining the role of media and culture in today's society from a variety of perspectives. It is principally concerned with developing informed and critical understanding and responses to the media and culture and considering the relationships between the two. It enables students to engage with issues concerning the relationship between culture and identity, forms of representation, and the role of media in shaping the ways we live in class discussion and project presentation. It also equips students with useful tools and analytical skills to researching media and culture.

## II. Programme Structure

### A) Pre-requisite requirement

Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who major or minor in this programme should take one of the following junior-level courses (6 credits):

FOSS1002. Appreciating social research (6 credits)

OR

FOSS1003. Masters in social thought (6 credits)

### B) Core Courses (12 credits)

Candidates who major or minor in this programme should take at least two core courses (6 credits each) from the following list in which one must be a FOSS course. They may take more than two courses from the list and the rest will be counted as elective course(s) for major/minor requirements.

Course Code	Course title
FOSS0001.	Media, culture, and communication in contemporary China (6 credits)
FOSS0011.	Researching media and culture (6 credits)
FOSS0014.	Cultural studies and modern societies (6 credits)
FOSS0015.	Sexing culture and identity (6 credits)
PSYC0058.	Cultural psychology (6 credits)
SOCI0065.	Understanding media studies (6 credits)

### C) Elective Courses (major: 30 credits; minor: 12 credits)

Candidates who major in this programme should take at least 5 elective courses (6 credits each) from the courses listed for the programme and no more than 2 from any single department. Those who minor in this programme should take at least 2 elective courses listed and only one from any single department. To facilitate students to make their choices, courses are grouped together under different themes:

#### (i) Culture and Identity

Course Code	Course title
PSYC0020.	Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
PSYC0050.	Knowing and acting in everyday life (6 credits)
SOCI0008.	Culture and society (6 credits)
SOCI0012.	Gender and society (6 credits)
SOCI0015.	Hong Kong popular culture (6 credits)
SOCI0019.	Life styles and modern culture (6 credits)
SOCI0055.	A cultural study of tourisms and tourists (6 credits)
SOCI0064.	Globalization and information Society (6 credits)
SOCI0072.	Policy, governance and training in cultural tourism (6 credits)
AMER2014.	A dream in the heart: Varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
CLIT2050.	Globalization and culture (6 credits)
CLIT2052.	Chinese urban culture (6 credits)
CLIT2069.	The making of modern masculinities (6 credits)

CLIT2076.	Fashioning femininities (6 credits)
ENGL2095.	The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)
ENGL2099.	Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)
EUST2010.	European identity (6 credits)
FINE2031.	The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)
FINE2033.	Cross-cultural interaction in the 19 <sup>th</sup> Century (6 credits)
GEOG2020.	Geography of wine (6 credits)
GEOG2050.	Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations (6 credits)
GEOG2056.	Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)
GEOG2057.	Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)
GEOG2060.	An introduction to archaeology (6 credits)
GEOG2061.	Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)
GEOG2080.	Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)
GEOG2083.	Sustainable cities: theory and praxis (6 credits)
GEOG2085.	North America (6 credits)
GEOG2091.	Principles and practice of ecotourism (6 credits)
GEOG2093.	Visitor management in parks, heritage sites, and recreation areas (6 credits)
GEOG2100.	People, society and the internet (6 credits)
GEOG2102.	Trees and green liveable cities (6 credits)
GEOG3035.	Advanced urban survey (6 credits)
HIST2046.	The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)
HIST2048.	The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)
HIST2062.	From Empire to EU: culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)
JAPN2011.	Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)
JAPN2018.	Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)
JAPN2035.	Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)

(ii) Media and Communication

PSYC0023.	Psychology of human communication (6 credits)
PSYC0041.	Consumer psychology (6 credits)
SOCI0006.	Critical issues in media studies (6 credits)
SOCI0067.	Crime and the media (6 credits)
AMER2022.	What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)
CLIT2007.	Film culture I (6 credits)
CLIT2008.	Film culture II (6 credits)
CLIT2074.	Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)
JAPN2029.	Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)
JAPN2031.	The media and Japan (6 credits)
JMSC0008.	Multi-media production (6 credits)
JMSC0019.	Media law and ethics (6 credits)
JMSC0025.	Journalism traditions (6 credits)
JMSC0027.	The press, politics and government (6 credits)
JMSC0034.	Covering China (6 credits)
LING2044.	Language and culture (6 credits)
MUSI2016.	Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)
MUSI2019.	Music in society (3 credits)
MUSI2044.	Film music (6 credits)
PHIL2610.	Philosophy of language (6 credits)

D) Research project/Internship (6 credits) (For major only)

It is compulsory for all final year candidates who major in this programme to undertake either a year-long independent research project or an internship programme. It is designed to offer major students a chance to apply their theoretical training to a real world issue.

FOSS3004. Research project in media and cultural studies (6 credits)

OR

FOSS3006. Internship in media and cultural studies (6 credits)

### ***Minors***

Please note that one course cannot be taken to fulfill both the requirements for a major and a minor.

#### **1. Journalism and Media Studies**

(Candidates only be allowed to minor in either Media and Cultural Studies or Journalism and Media Studies.)

Candidates who wish to minor in Journalism and Media Studies must successfully complete at least 24 credits of senior level courses from the following course list. As a pre-requisite, candidates must pass JMSC0101. 'Principles of journalism and the news media'.

- JMSC0002. News reporting and writing workshop (6 credits)
- JMSC0007. New media workshop (6 credits)
- JMSC0008. Multimedia production (6 credits)
- JMSC0017. Feature writing (6 credits)
- JMSC0018. Chinese news writing (6 credits)
- JMSC0019. Media law and ethics (6 credits)
- JMSC0025. Journalism traditions (6 credits)
- JMSC0026. Independent study (6 credits)
- JMSC0027. The press, politics and government (6 credits)
- JMSC0032. Cultural studies of the media (6 credits)
- JMSC0033. Literary journalism (6 credits)
- JMSC0034. Covering China (6 credits)
- JMSC0037. Advanced Chinese news writing (6 credits)
- JMSC0038. Visual journalism (6 credits)
- JMSC0042. International news (6 credits)
- JMSC0043. Reporting public health issues (6 credits)
- JMSC0044. Special topics in journalism I (6 credits)
- JMSC0045. Special topics in journalism II (6 credits)
- JMSC0046. Introduction to television (6 credits)
- JMSC0051. Television news writing (6 credits)
- JMSC0052. Television news production (6 credits)
- JMSC0053. Radio news production (6 credits)
- JMSC0054. Public affairs reporting (6 credits)
- JMSC0055. Specialised reporting (6 credits)
- JMSC0056. Business and financial reporting (6 credits)
- JMSC0057. Magazine writing (6 credits)
- JMSC0058. Impact of new media on society (6 credits)
- JMSC0059. Covering the environment (6 credits)

#### **2. Family and Child Studies (Department of Social Work and Social Administration)**

The programme aims to develop students' understanding of the development of children and young people from a psycho-social perspective. One emphasis is placed on how cultural factors, especially of the indigenous Chinese culture, influence their growth socially, cognitively and psychologically. With reference to these understandings, another focus of the programme is to teach students methods to work with children and young people with different problems and backgrounds. It is expected that after taking the programme, students will be equipped to work with children and young people in different settings more effectively.

PSYC0009.	Life-span development psychology (6 credits)
PSYC0035.	Introduction to educational psychology (6 credits)
SOCI0021.	Marriage and the family (6 credits)
SOCI0053.	Youth and youth culture (6 credits)
SOWK0002.	Working with children and families (6 credits)
SOWK0007.	Working with families (6 credits)
SOWK0033.	Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)
SOWK0065.	Understanding and working with young people (6 credits)
SOWK0075.	Violence in intimate relationships (6 credits)
SOWK0089.	Family and society - a policy perspective (6 credits)

---

### **3. Human Resources Management (Department of Psychology)**

Since the early 1980s, Hong Kong has witnessed a shift from manufacturing to a service industry in its economic structure. There is also a rapid pace of automatization and computerization in all sectors of our economy. These two major changes have resulted in the pressing needs for retraining, revised job design, better organization communication, better management of human resources, and engineering psychology. A recent survey reveals that there are 12 jobs available to every university student trained in the area of human resources management. This figure speaks to the huge demand for human resources professionals. This minor programme is designed to serve the above needs of the society.

ECON0103.	Economics of human resources (6 credits)
POLI0025.	Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
POLI0037.	Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
POLI0065.	Public organization and management (6 credits)
PSYC0002.	Psychological testing and measurement (6 credits)
PSYC0005.	Introduction to counseling and therapeutic psychology (6 credits)
PSYC0020.	Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
PSYC0032.	Engineering psychology (6 credits)
PSYC0063.	Industrial/organization psychology (6 credits)
PSYC0053.	Advanced research in industrial/organizational psychology (6 credits)
SOWK0058.	Managing people in human services (6 credits)
SOWK0068.	Social skills training for human service personnel (6 credits)

---

### **4. International Business (School of Economics and Finance)**

For business, the future is global. For business executives, a solid understanding of international business is of utmost importance in this increasingly global business environment. The complexity of a business transaction between two countries, for example, between Hong Kong and China, or between China and the United States, arises from the differences in accounting, banking, culture, currency, finance, governmental regulations, information systems, insurance, law, management, marketing, political systems, taxation, and transportation. It is impossible for one to understand contemporary events and market trends without a sound background in international business. It is essential, therefore, that our students possess an understanding of the operation of global financial systems and business.

The field of International Business is designed to meet the needs of students who look forward to specialized careers in corporate finance, financial counseling, investment management, or banking. Topics relevant to local and China economy are incorporated throughout all the courses.

As a field of study, International Business is broader in focus than international trade. It draws upon contributions from the traditional business disciplines of finance, banking, management, management information systems, and marketing. It also draws from anthropology, culture, economics, geography,

history, languages, law, politics, psychology, and sociology. Although it is offered as a standalone concentration, it is highly recommended as a secondary concentration to any other students outside the Faculty of Social Sciences.

ECON0301.	Theory of international trade (6 credits)
ECON0302.	International finance (6 credits)
FINA0103.	International banking (6 credits)
FINA0105.	International financial management (6 credits)
POLI0017.	Government and business (6 credits)
POLI0058.	Managing the global economy (6 credits)
SOCI0014.	Globalization, work and industry (6 credits)
SOCI0066.	The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits)
STAT2306. (old course STAT0106.)	Business logistics (6 credits)
STAT2314. (old course STAT0403.)	Business forecasting (6 credits)

*For course details, please visit <http://www.hku.hk/student/uregcourse/>*